





As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

 **Safety Labels** P. 93

## A Few Words About Safety


---

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You **WILL** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You **CAN** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You **CAN** be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

## **Event Data Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

## **Service Diagnostic Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.



This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the right-hand drive models.

## **Safe Driving P. 35**

For Safe Driving P. 36

Seat Belts P. 41

Airbags P. 54

## **Instrument Panel P. 95**

Indicators P. 96

Gauges and Displays P. 135

## **Controls P. 155**

Clock P. 156

Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 161

Opening and Closing the Windows P. 188

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 194

Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 232

## **Features P. 261**

Audio System\* P. 262

Audio System Basic Operation P. 268, 286, 308

Customized Features P. 341, 348

## **Driving P. 423**

Before Driving P. 424

Towing a Trailer P. 428

Off-road Guidelines P. 433

Parking Your Vehicle P. 492

Multi-View Rear Camera\* P. 497

## **Maintenance P. 503**

Before Performing Maintenance P. 504

Maintenance Schedule P. 507

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 539

Heating\* and Cooling System\*/Climate Control System\* Maintenance P. 555

## **Handling the Unexpected P. 565**

Tools P. 566

If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 568

Overheating P. 593

Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 595

## **Information P. 613**

Specifications P. 614

Identification Numbers P. 620

# Contents

Child Safety P. 67

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 92

Safety Labels P. 93

Opening and Closing the Tailgate P. 183

Panoramic Roof\* P. 191

Adjusting the Mirrors P. 218

Heating\* and Cooling System\* P. 245

Adjusting the Seats P. 222

Climate Control System\* P. 249

Security System P. 186

Audio Error Messages\* P. 335

General Information on the Audio System\* P. 337

Hands-Free Telephone System P. 361, 384, 405

When Driving P. 435

Refueling P. 499

Braking P. 477

Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions P. 501

Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 511

Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 543

Cleaning P. 557

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 526

Battery P. 549

Accessories and Modifications P. 562

Remote Transmitter Care P. 552

Engine Does Not Start P. 586

Fuses P. 600

Jump Starting P. 589

Emergency Towing P. 608

Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 592

When You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 611

Utility Compliance\* P. 621

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 35

Instrument Panel P. 95

Controls P. 155

Features P. 261

Driving P. 423

Maintenance P. 503

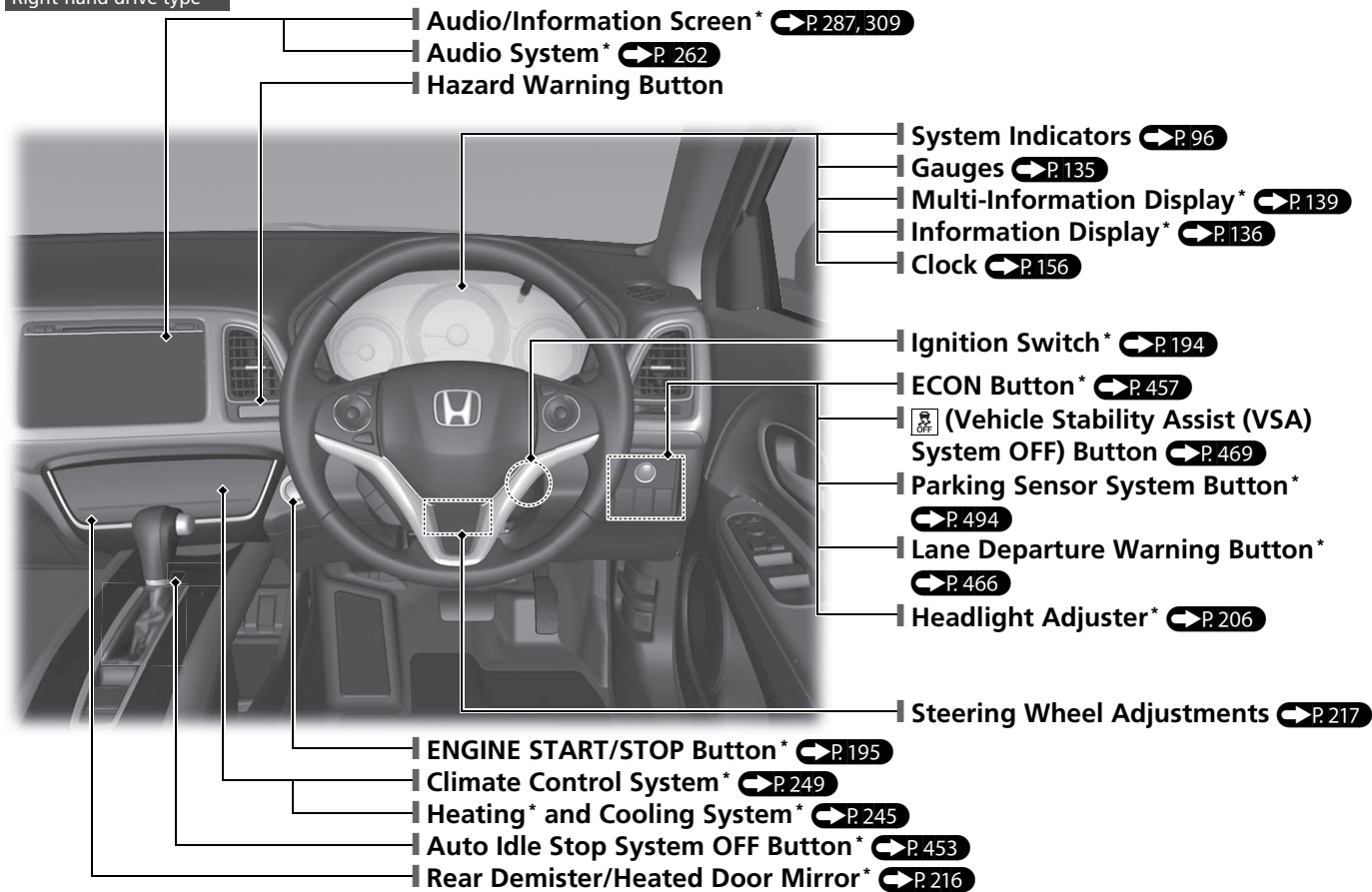
Handling the Unexpected P. 565

Information P. 613

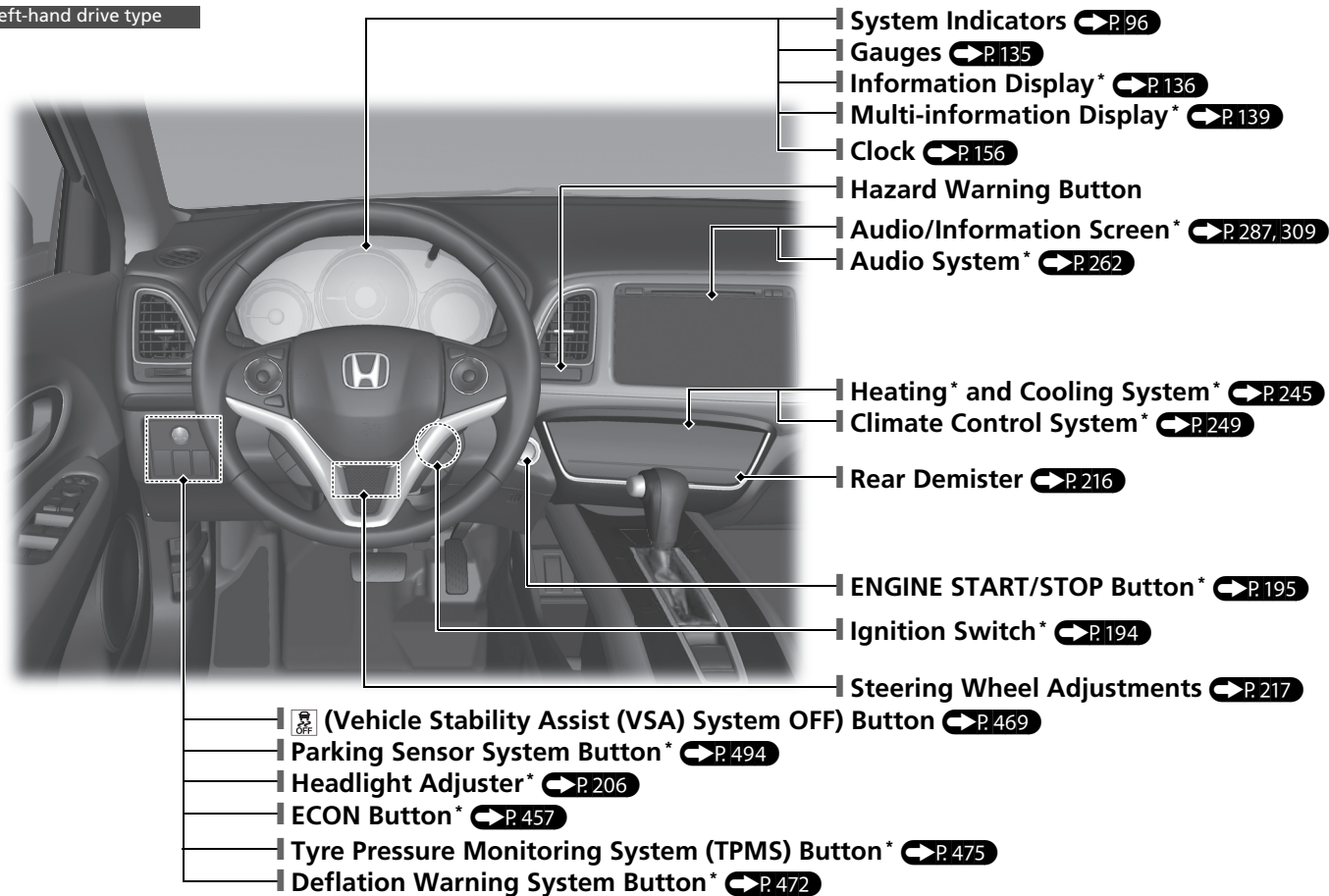
Index P. 625

# Visual Index

Right-hand drive type

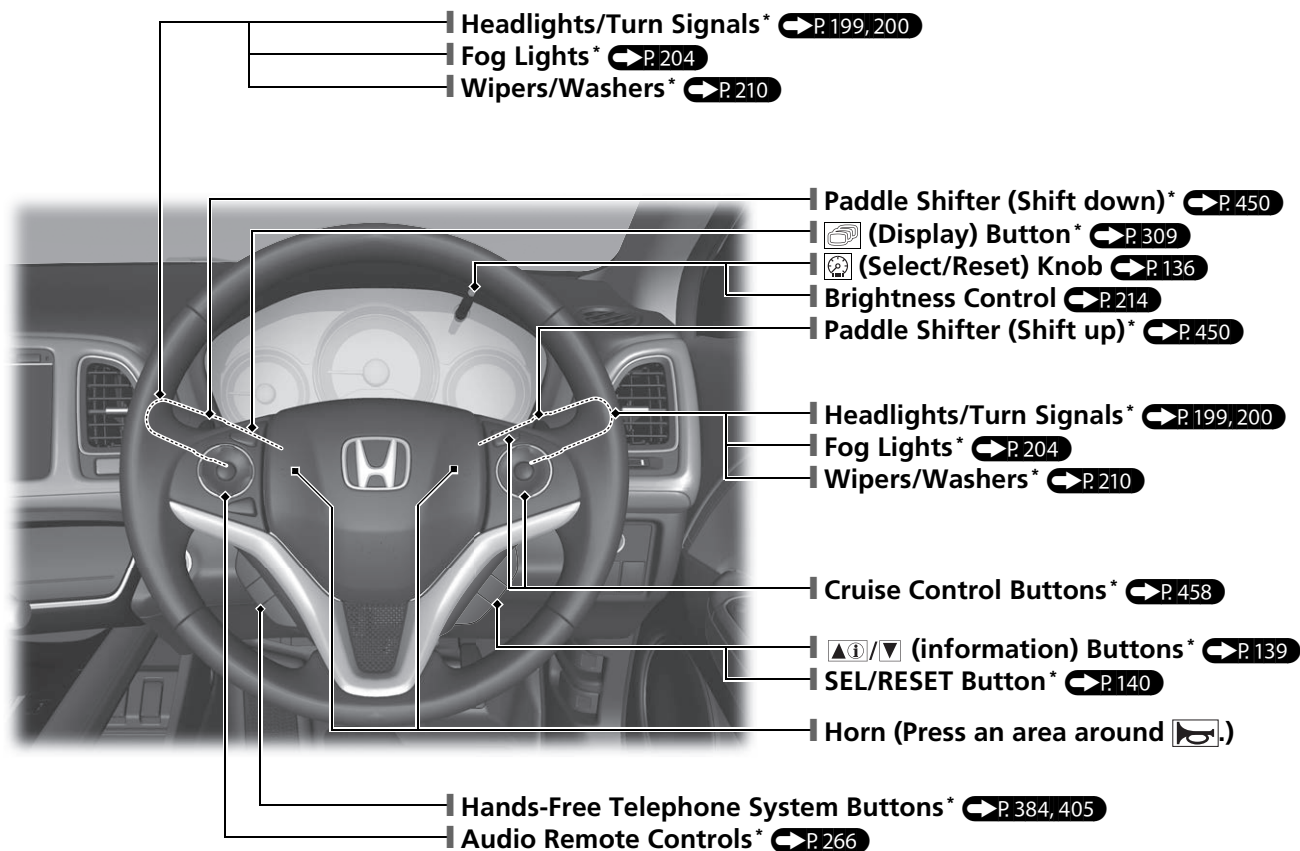


## Left-hand drive type

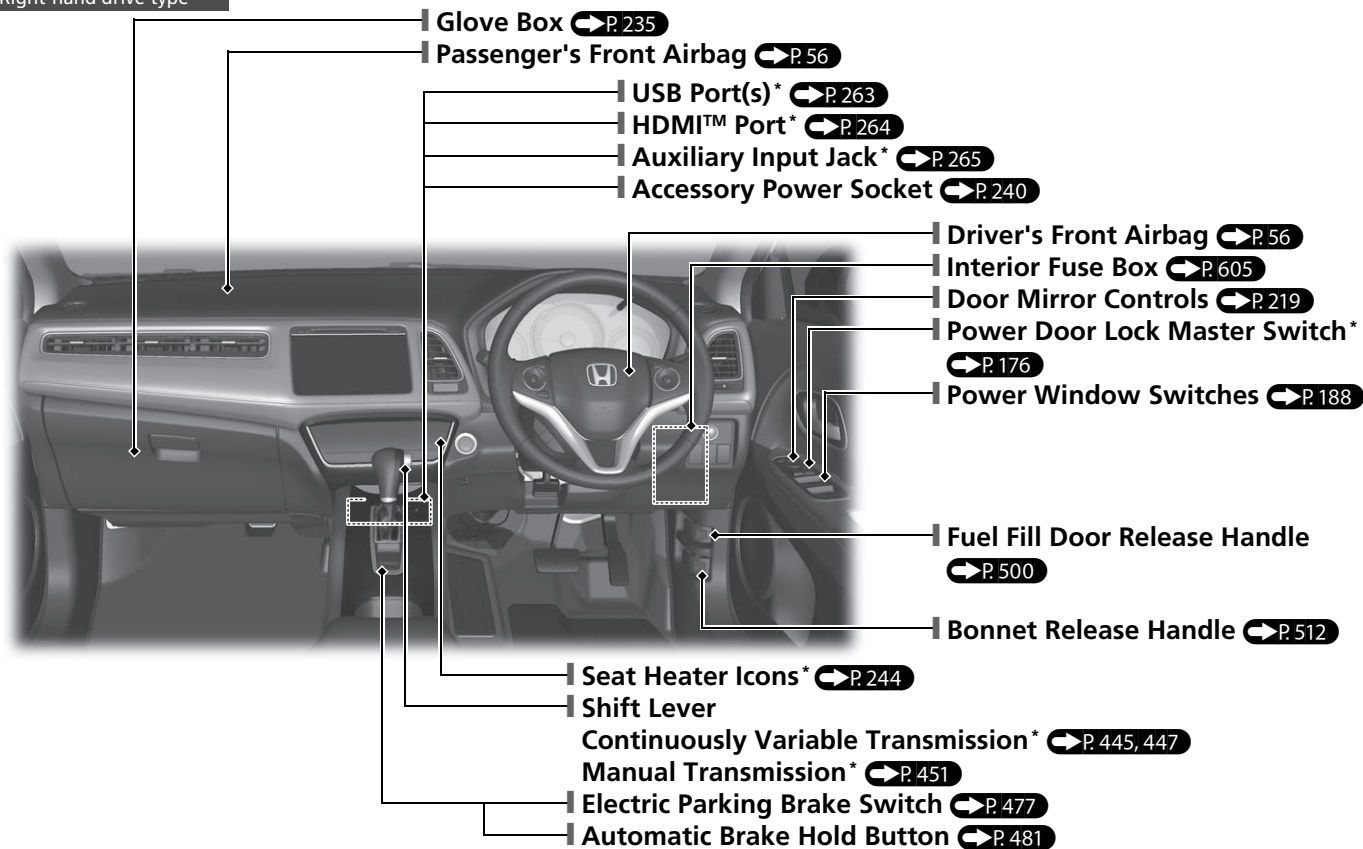


\* Not available on all models

# Visual Index



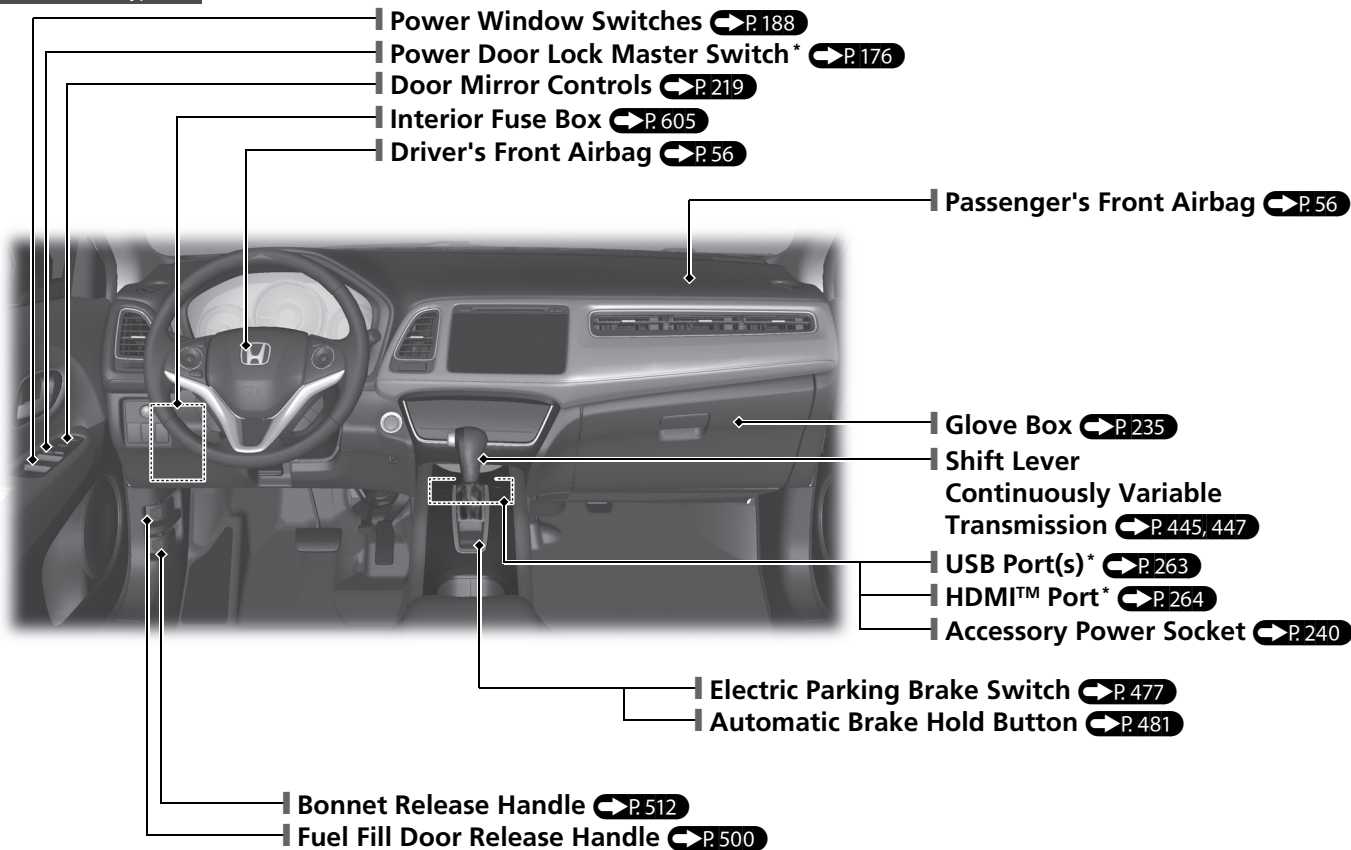
Right-hand drive type

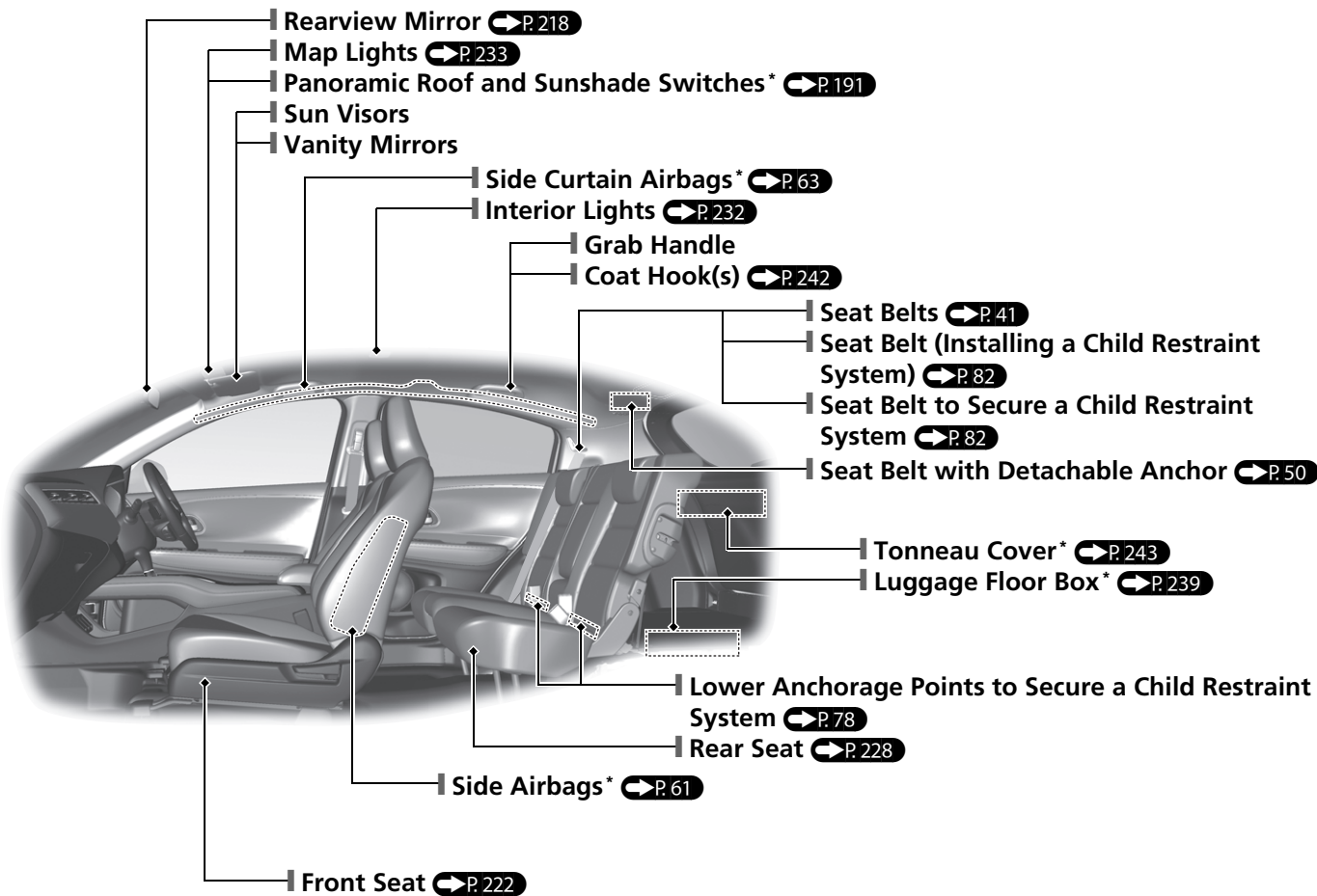


\* Not available on all models

# Visual Index

Left-hand drive type

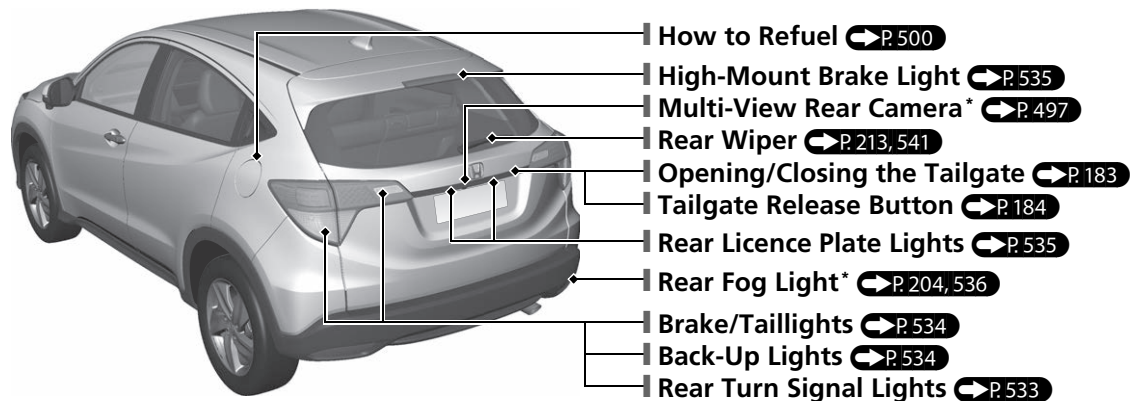
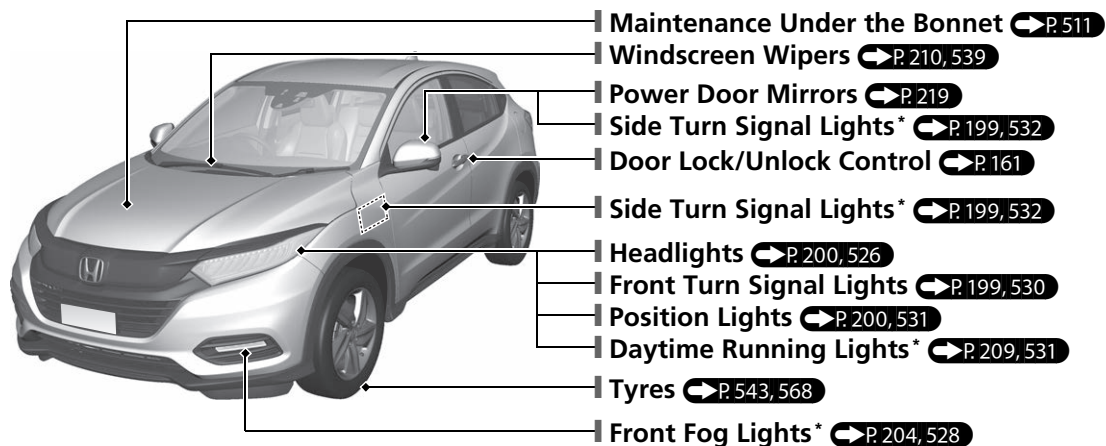




\* Not available on all models



# Visual Index



# Eco Assist System\*

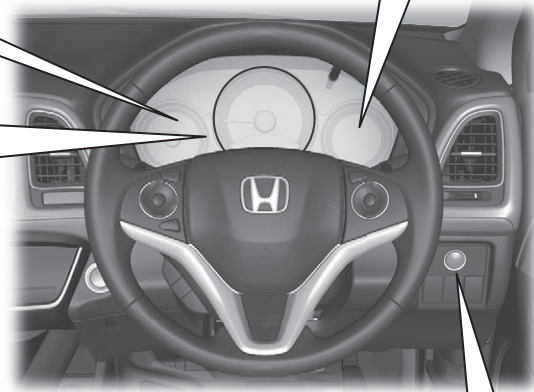
**ECON Mode Indicator\*** ➔ P.114  
Comes on when **ECON** button is pressed.



**Models with multi-information display**  
The message is displayed for a few seconds when the **ECON** button is pressed.




**Ambient Meter**  
The colour of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner.


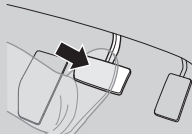


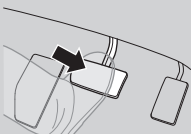
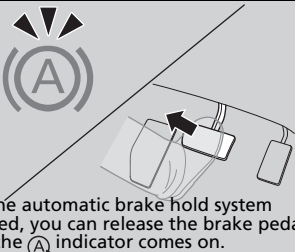

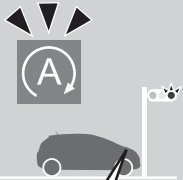
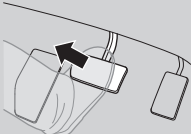
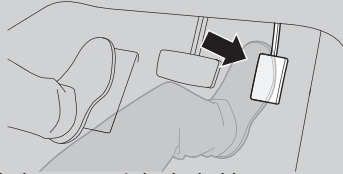
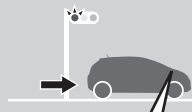


**ECON Button\*** ➔ P.457  
Helps to maximise fuel economy.



# Auto Idle Stop Function\*

To improve fuel economy, the engine stops and then restarts as detailed below. When Auto Idle Stop is on, the Auto Idle Stop indicator (green) comes on.  **P. 453**

At	Continuously variable transmission	Engine status
Deceleration  	 Stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal.	 <b>On</b>
Stop  	<div>  Keep the brake pedal depressed.         </div> <div>  With the automatic brake hold system activated, you can release the brake pedal when the  indicator comes on.         </div>	 <b>Off</b>
Start-up	<div>  Release the brake pedal.         </div> <div>  With the automatic brake hold system activated, depress the accelerator pedal.         </div>	 <b>Restarting</b>

# Safe Driving ➡ P.35

## Airbags ➡ P.54

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

## Child Safety ➡ P.67

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

## Exhaust Gas Hazard ➡ P.92

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

## Seat Belts ➡ P.41

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

## Before Driving Checklist ➡ P.40

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.


















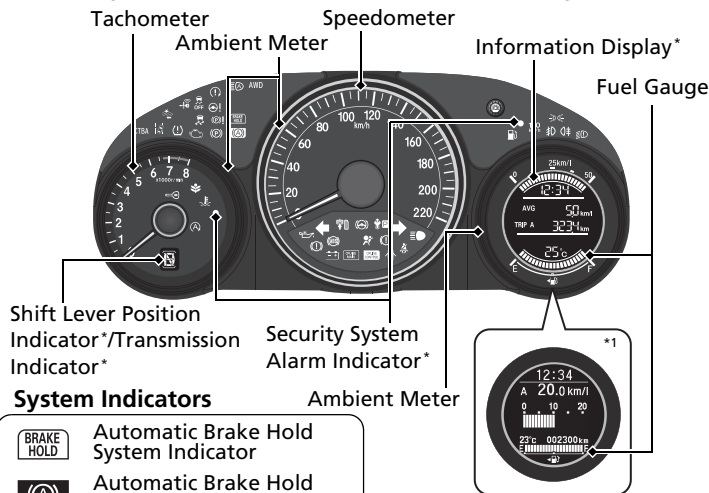
Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

# Instrument Panel P.95











Gauges  P.135 / Information Display\*  P.136 / Multi-Information Display\*  P.139 / System Indicators  P.96

## System Indicators











-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Charging System Indicator
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  High Temperature Indicator (Red)/Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)\*
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator
-  VSA **OFF** Indicator
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
-  System Message Indicator\*
-  Immobilizer System Indicator
-  Keyless Access System Indicator\*
-  ECON mode Indicator\*
-  **CRUISE MAIN** Indicator\*
-  **CRUISE CONTROL** Indicator\*
-  Lane Departure Warning Indicator\*
-  Forward Collision Warning Indicator\*
-  **CTBA** City-Brake Active System (CTBA) Indicator\*
-  **AWD** All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System Indicator\*






























## System Indicators

-  **BRAKE HOLD** Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator
-  **(A)** Automatic Brake Hold Indicator
-  **(P)!** Electric Parking Brake System Indicator
-  **(P)** Electric Parking Brake Indicator
-  **S** M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/shift Indicator\*
-   Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator\*
-   Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator\*
-  **120 km/h** Speed Alarm Indicator\*

## Lights Indicators

-   Lights On Indicator
-   High Beam Indicator
-   Front Fog Light Indicator\*
-   Rear Fog Light Indicator\*
-   Light Control Indicator\*

## System Indicators

-   Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
-   Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
-   Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
-   Door and Tailgate Open Indicator
-   Starter System Indicator\*
-   Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-   Brake System Indicator (Red)
-   Brake System Indicator (Amber)
-   Continuously variable transmission models Brake Depressing Indicator\*
-   Manual transmission models Brake Depressing Indicator\*
-   Low Fuel Indicator
-   Auto High-Beam Indicator\*
-   Shift to Park Indicator\*
-   Rotate Wheel Indicator\*
-   Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)\*/Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)\*

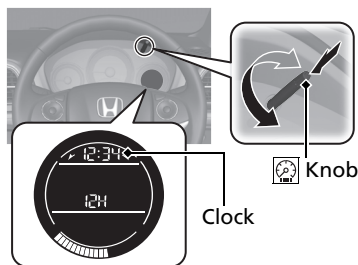
\*1: Models with multi-information display




# Controls P.155

## Clock P.156

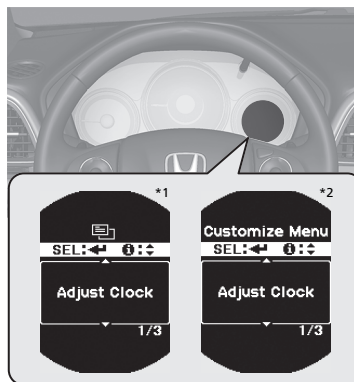
Models without colour audio system and display audio system



Models with information display



- 1 Press the  (select/reset) knob repeatedly to show the clock adjustment display.  
▶ The displayed time begins flashing.
- 2 Turn the  knob to adjust the time.
- 3 Press the  knob again to set the time.

Models with multi-information display



- 1 Press the  button to select  (Customize Settings)\*1/Clock & Vehicle Settings\*2.
- 2 Press the **SEL/RESET** button to select **Clock Setup**.
- 3 Press the **SEL/RESET** button to select **Adjust Clock**.
- 4 Adjust the time.

\*1: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models

\*2: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models






Models with colour audio system

Models with display audio system

The clock in the information display/multi-information display is automatically updated along with the audio system's clock display.

Models with colour audio system






- 1 Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- 2 Rotate  to change hour, then press .
- 3 Rotate  to change minute, then press .
- 4 Select **Set**, then press .

These indications are used to show how to operate the **LIST/SELECT** (List/Selector) knob.

- Rotate  to select.
- Press  to enter.

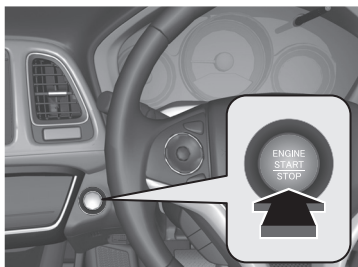
\* Not available on all models



- 1 Select the  (HOME) icon, then select **Settings**.
- 2 Select **System**, **Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
- 3 Touch the  /  icon to adjust the numbers up or down.
- 4 Select **OK**.

## ENGINE START/STOP Button\* ➡ P.195

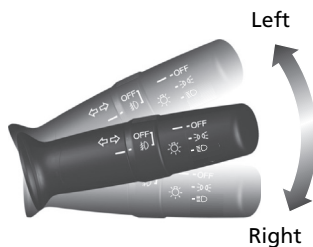
Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



## Turn Signals ➡ P.199

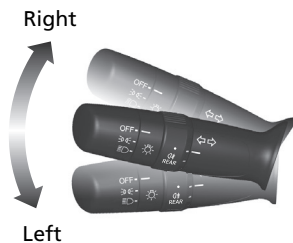
Turn Signal Control Lever

Right-hand drive type\*1



Left-hand drive type

Right-hand drive type\*2

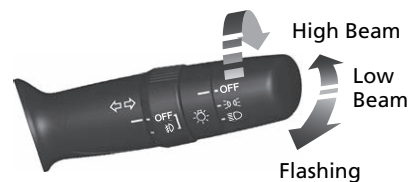


\*1: Except African right-hand drive models

\*2: African right-hand drive models

## Lights ➡ P.200

Light Control Switches



\* Not available on all models



## Wipers and Washers

➞ P.210

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

**MIST  
OFF**

**AUTO**<sup>\*1</sup>: Wiper speed varies automatically

**INT**<sup>\*2</sup>: Low speed with intermittent

**LO**: Low speed wipe

**HI**: High speed wipe

Pull towards you to spray washer fluid.



Adjustment Ring\*

—: Low Sensitivity<sup>\*1</sup>

—: Lower speed, fewer sweeps<sup>\*2</sup>

+: High Sensitivity<sup>\*1</sup>

+: Higher speed, more sweeps<sup>\*2</sup>

\*1: Models with automatic intermittent wipers

\*2: Models without automatic intermittent wipers

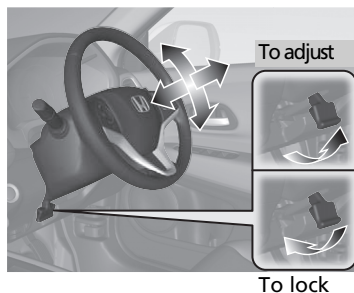
Models with automatic intermittent wipers

**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain

## Steering Wheel ➞ P.217

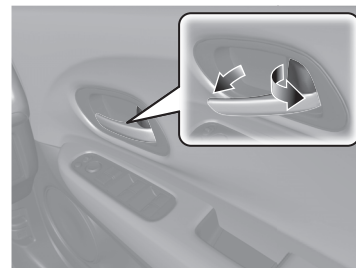
- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



## Unlocking the Driver's Door from the Inside

➞ P.174

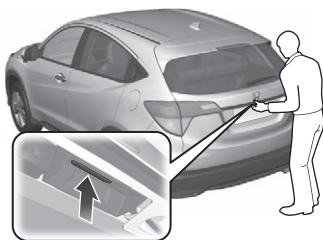
- Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it in one motion.



African right-hand drive and Latin American models

The front passenger's door also unlocks and opens in one motion.

## Tailgate ➡ P.183



### Models without keyless access system


- With all the doors unlocked, press the tailgate release button and lift open the tailgate.

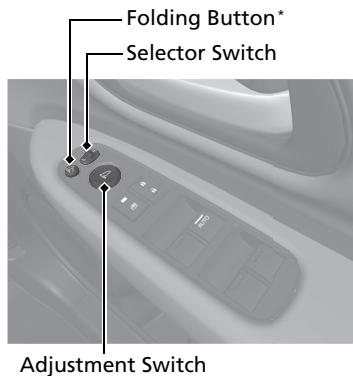
### Models with keyless access system

- Press the tailgate release button to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless remote.


## Power Door Mirrors

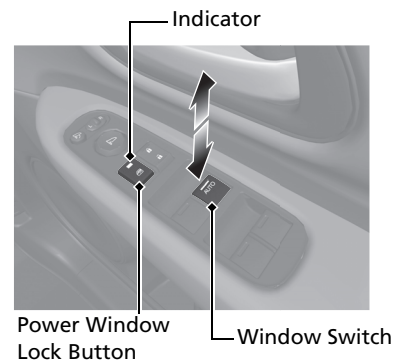
### ➡ P.219

- With the ignition switch in ON \*1, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button\* to fold in and out the door mirrors.









## Power Windows ➡ P.188

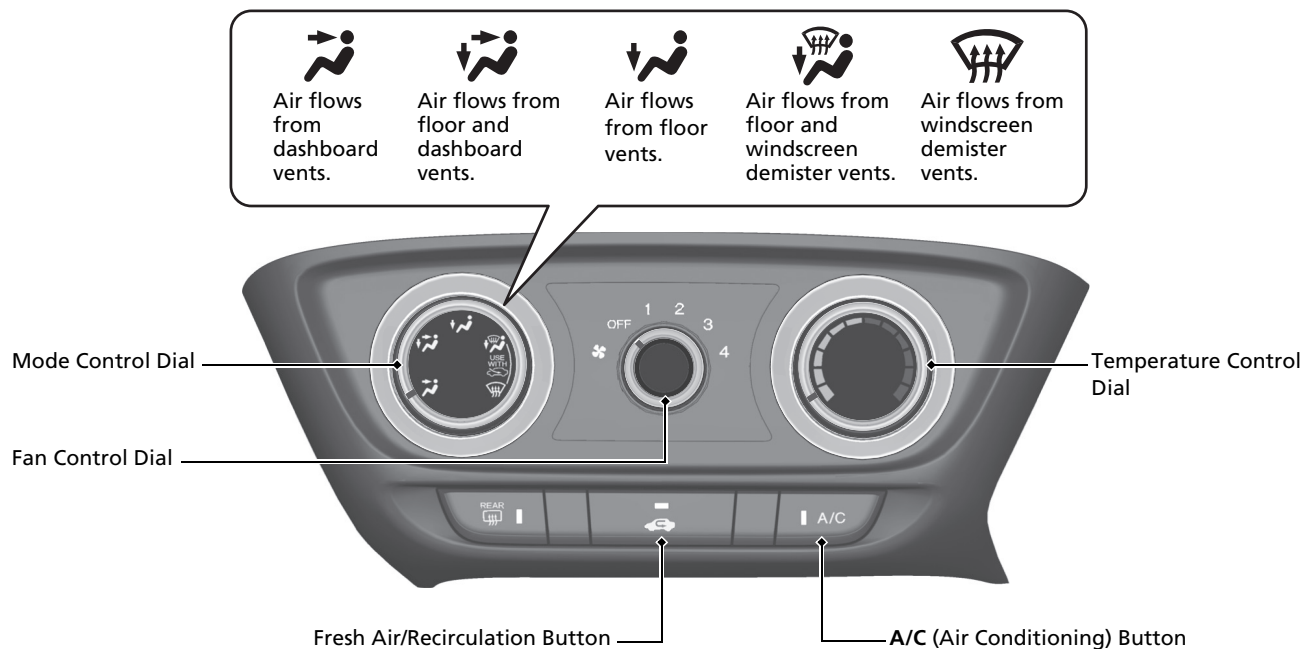
- With the ignition switch in ON \*1, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Heating\* and Cooling System\* ➞ P.245

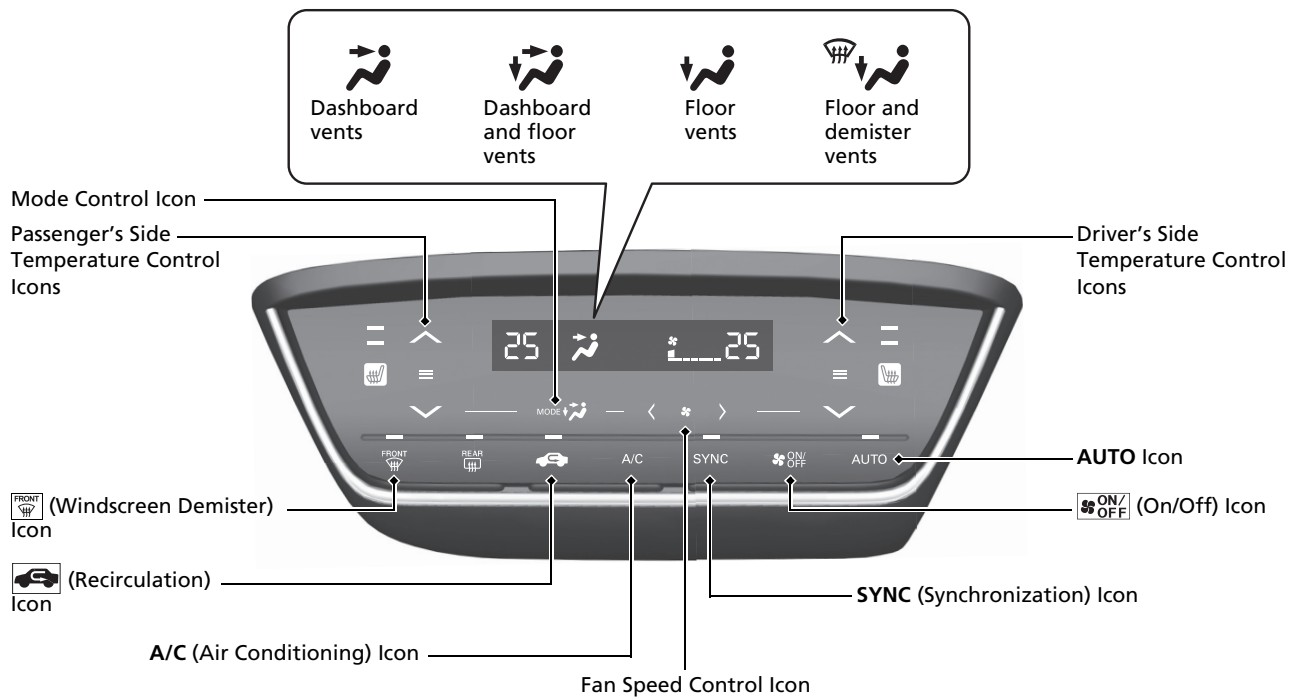
- Rotate the fan control dial to adjust the fan speed.
- Rotate the mode control dial (  /  /  /  /  ) to select the vents air flows from.
- Rotate the temperature control dial to adjust the temperature.
- Rotate the fan control dial to **OFF** to turn the system off.
- Rotate the mode control dial to  to defrost the windscreen.



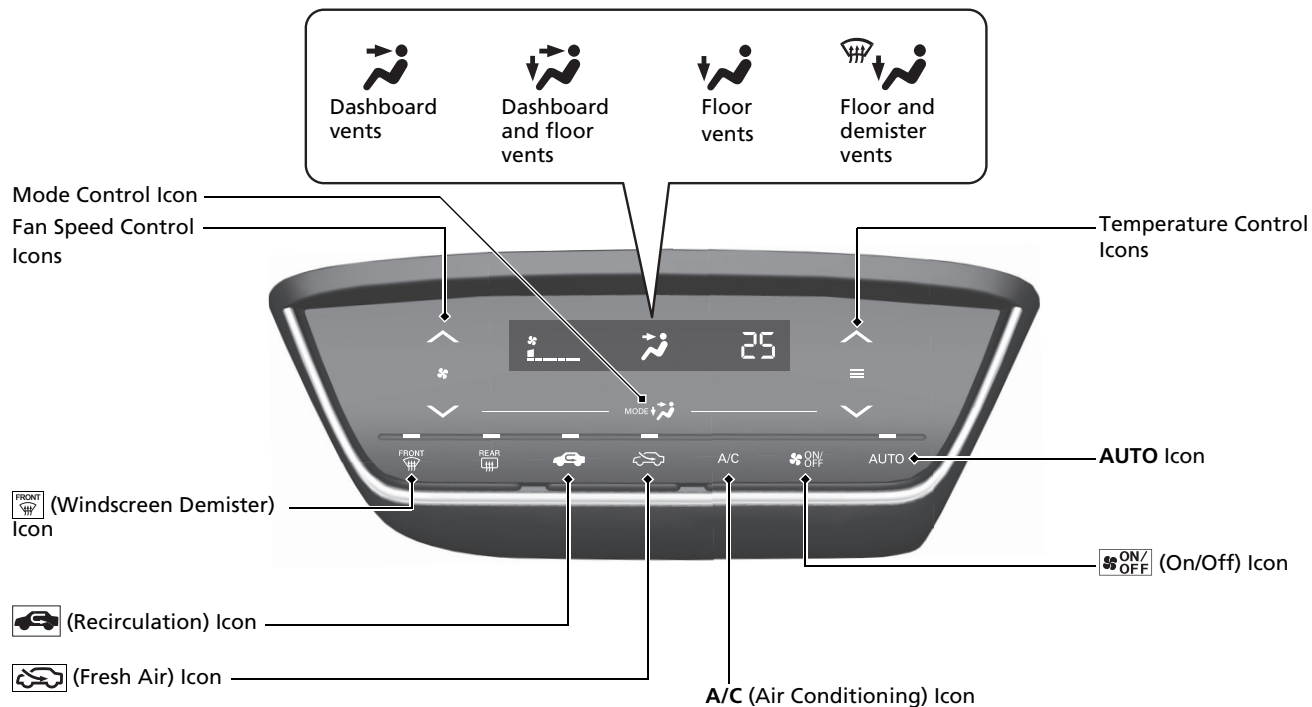
## Climate Control System\* ➔ P.249

- Select the **AUTO** icon to activate the climate control system.
- Select the **ON/OFF** icon to turn the system on or off.
- Select the **FRONT WIPER** icon to defrost the windscreen.

Models with **SYNC** icon



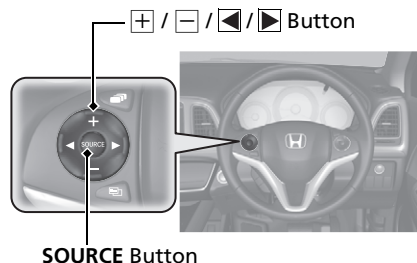
\* Not available on all models



# Features P. 261

## Audio Remote Controls\*

 P. 266

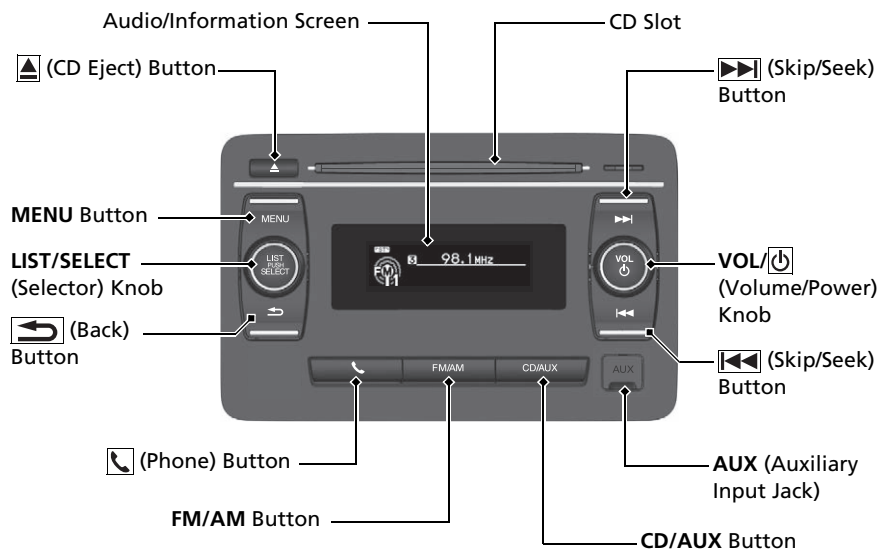


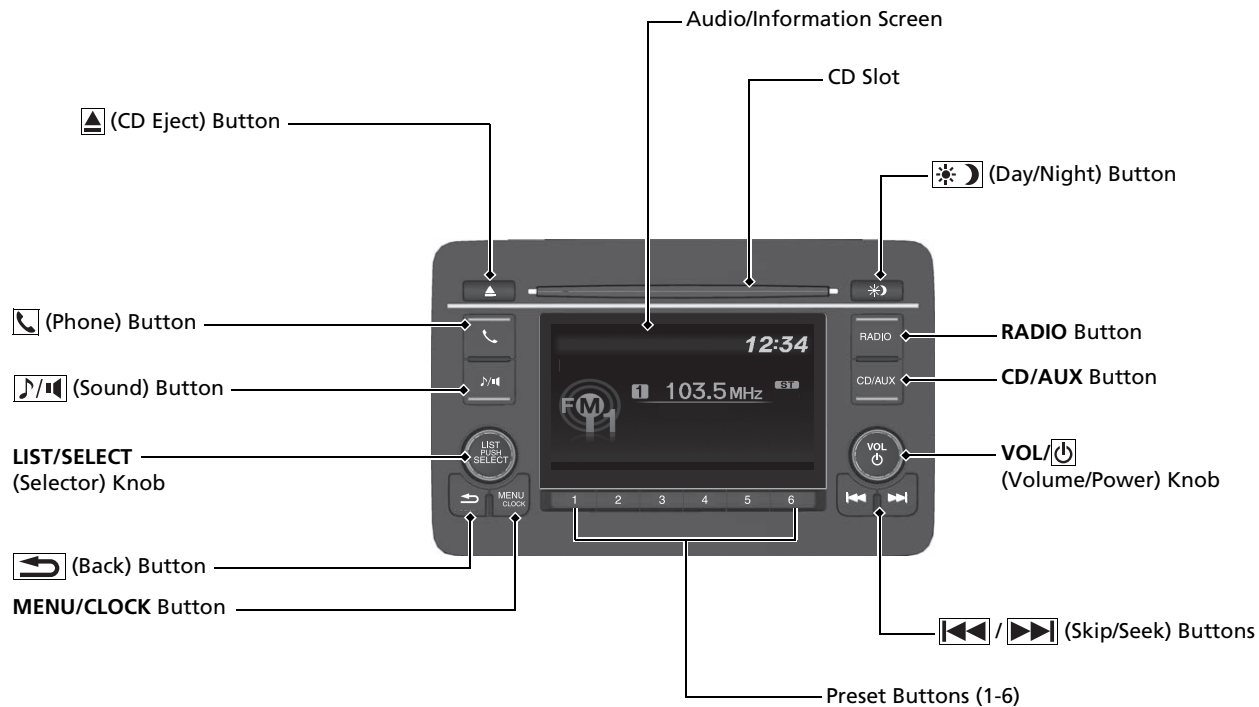
- **+ / - Button**  
Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- **SOURCE Button**  
Press to change the audio mode: FM/AM\*/ LW\*/MW\*/CD/USB/iPod/Apps\*/Bluetooth/ AUX\*/AUX HDMI™\*.
- **◀ / ▶ Button**  
Radio: Press to change the preset station. Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.  
CD/USB device:  
Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song. Press and hold to change a folder.

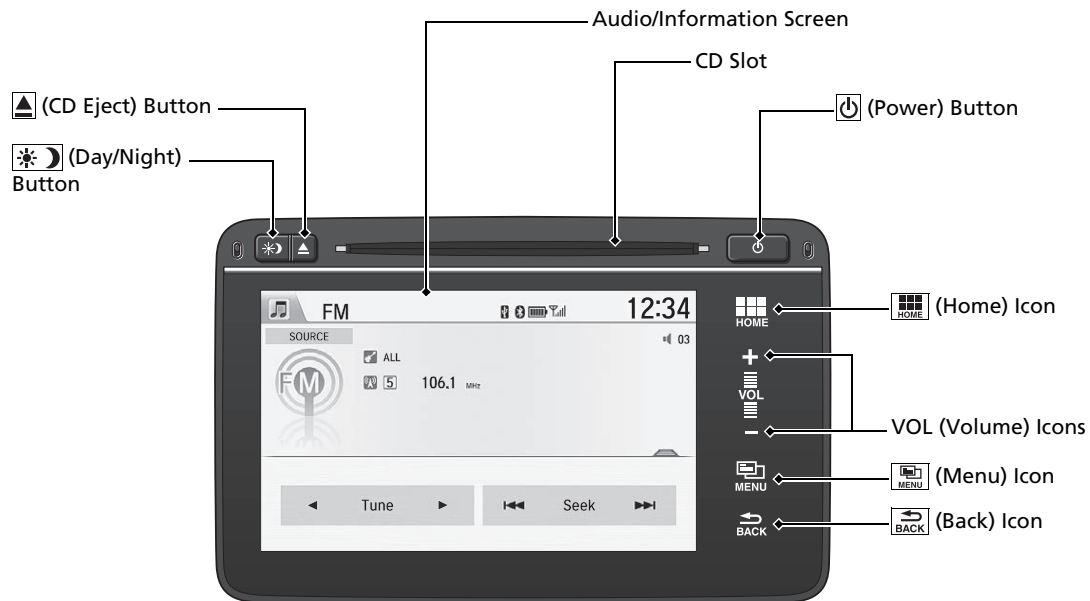
## Audio System\* P. 262

Models with monochrome audio system

 P. 268









# Driving

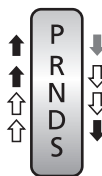
## Manual Transmission\*

## Continuously Variable Transmission\*

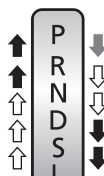
- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

### Shifting

Models with  
paddle shifter



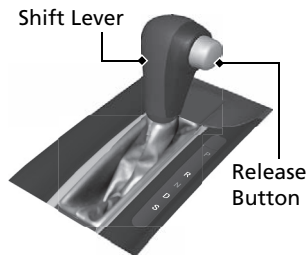
Models without  
paddle shifter



Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of **P**.

Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.

Press the release button to move the shift lever.



**P** **Park**  
Turn off or start the engine.  
Transmission is locked.

**R** **Reverse**  
Used when reversing.

**N** **Neutral**  
Transmission is not locked.

**D** **Drive**  
Normal driving.

On models with paddle shifter, 7-speed manual shift mode can be used temporarily.

Models with paddle shifter

**S** **S Position**  
7-speed manual shift mode can be used.

Models without paddle shifter

**S** **Drive (S)**

- Better acceleration
- Used to increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills

**L** **Low**

- Used to further increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills

## 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode\*

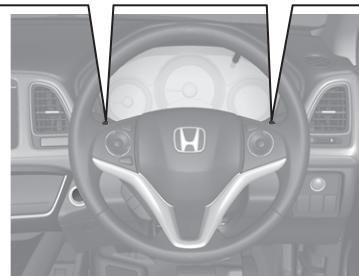
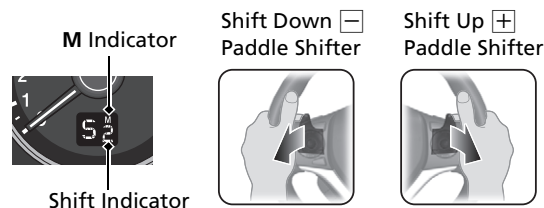
- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

### When the shift lever is in **S**

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

### When the shift lever is in **D**

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.



## VSA On and Off P. 468

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering, and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Cruise Control\* P. 458

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press the **—/SET** button once you have achieved the desired speed (above 40 km/h).

## Deflation Warning System (DWS)\* P. 470

The deflation warning system detects a change in tyre revolutions as a decrease in tyre pressure.

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)\* P. 473

The TPMS detects a change in tyre revolutions as a decrease in tyre pressure.

## Refueling P. 499

### Fuel recommendation:

Except Thai and Indonesian models

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

Thai models

**Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher**

Indonesian models

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 90 or higher**

### Fuel tank capacity:

1.5 L engine models

**40 L**

1.8 L engine models

**50 L**

- 1 Pull the fuel fill door release handle.
- 2 Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
- 3 Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
- 4 After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.

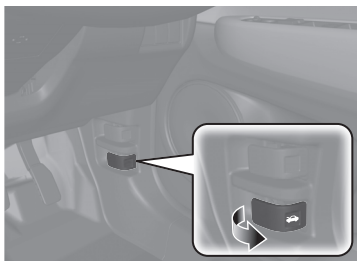


# Maintenance P. 503

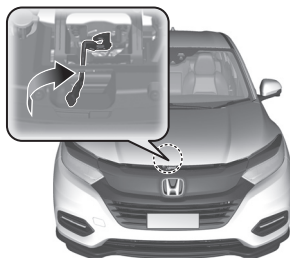
## Under the Bonnet P. 511

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

- 1 Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



- 2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3 When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

## Wiper Blades P. 539

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen.



## Tyres P. 543

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

## Lights P. 526

- Inspect all lights regularly.

# Handling the Unexpected ➡P.565

## Flat Tyre ➡P.568, 575

### Models with a spare tyre

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre in the luggage area.

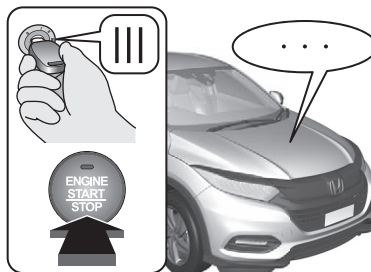
### Models with tyre repair kit

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.



## Engine Won't Start ➡P.586

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



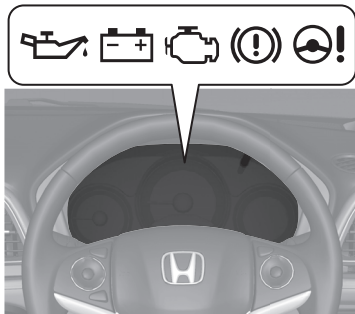
## Overheating ➡P.593

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



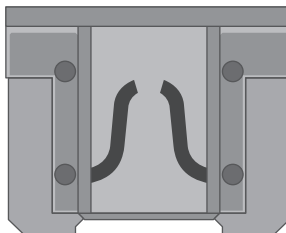
## Indicators Come On ➡P.595

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



## Blown Fuse ➡P.600

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



## Emergency Towing ➡P.608

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



# What to Do If

**Q** The ignition switch does not turn from **0** to **I**\*1. Why?

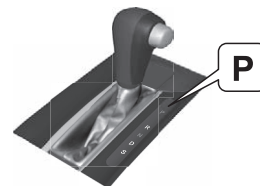
- A**
- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Models without keyless access system**
- Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key.
- Models with keyless access system**
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



**Q** **Models without keyless access system**  
The ignition switch does not turn from **I** to **0** and I cannot remove the key. Why?

**A** The shift lever should be moved to **P**.

**Models with keyless access system**  
The power mode does not change from **ACCESSORY** to **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)**. Why?



**Q** Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

**A** This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

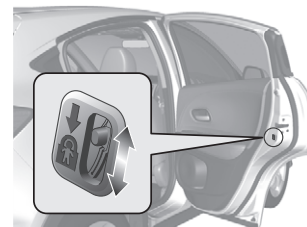
➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** ➡ P.484

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

---

**Q** The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

**A** Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



---

**Q** Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

**A** If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

---

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- The exterior lights are left on.

Models with Auto Idle Stop system

- The Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

Models without keyless access system

- The key is left in the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
-



Models with walk away auto lock system

**Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?**



The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.

☑ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)\* ➞ P.167



**Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**



The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.



**Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**



The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.



**Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?**



Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.



**Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?**



- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in **P** or **N**. If so, select any other position.

Q

Models with deflation warning system  
Models with tyre pressure monitoring system

**I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?**

A

Except Taiwanese models

The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

➤ Deflation Warning System\* ➡ P. 470

Taiwanese models

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

➤ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ➡ P. 473

Q

Pakistan models

**Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 87 or higher on this vehicle?**

A

Your vehicle is designed to operate on unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 87 or higher may be used temporarily.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.





# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

## For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions.....	36
Important Handling Information.....	38
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	39
Safety Checklist .....	40

## Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts .....	41
Fastening a Seat Belt .....	47
Seat Belt Inspection.....	52
Anchorage Points.....	53

## Airbags

Airbag System Components.....	54
Types of Airbags .....	56
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	56
Side Airbags* .....	61
Side Curtain Airbags* .....	63
Airbag System Indicators.....	64
Airbag Care .....	66

## Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers .....	67
Safety of Infants and Small Children.....	71
Safety of Larger Children .....	89

## Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	92
--------------------------	----

## Safety Labels

Label Locations .....	93
-----------------------	----

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

## Important Safety Precautions

### ■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

### ■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

### ■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### ■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

### ⌘ Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

**■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

**■ Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

**■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

**■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle**

Children left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which the children and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in injury or death.

Even if the heating\* and cooling system\*/climate control system\* is on, never leave children in the vehicle unattended as the heating\* and cooling system\*/climate control system\* can shut off at any time.

\* Not available on all models

## Important Handling Information

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-road driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a higher centre gravity making it more susceptible to tipping or roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

### ► Important Handling Information

For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read:

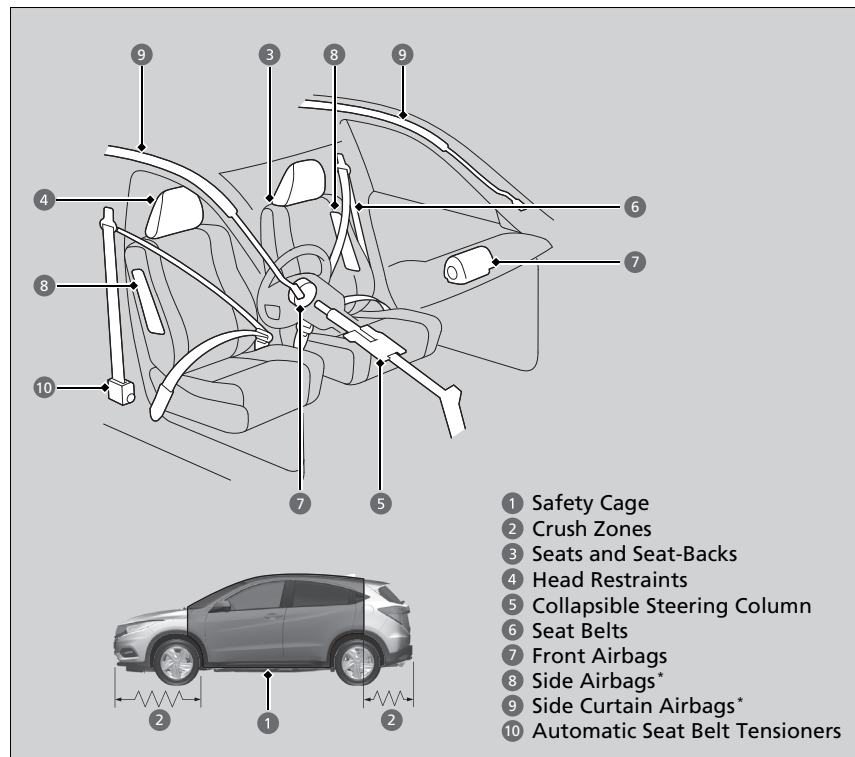
► **Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle**  
P. 442

► **Off-road Guidelines** P. 433

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

In many countries, the law prohibits off-road driving, e. g. driving in forests, trailblazing, etc. Please check your local laws and regulations before commencing any off-road driving activity.

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

\* Not available on all models

### ▣ Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

## Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.

🔧 **Adjusting the Seats** P. 222

- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

🔧 **Adjusting the Head Restraints** P. 225

- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

🔧 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 47

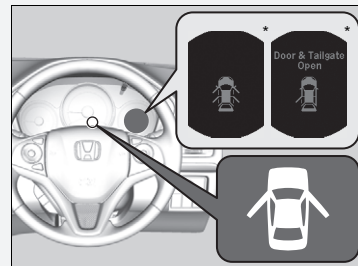
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.

🔧 **Child Safety** P. 67

### 🔧 Safety Checklist

If the door and tailgate open indicator is on, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the indicator goes off.

🔧 **Door and Tailgate Open Indicator** P. 107



## About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

### ⌘ About Your Seat Belts

#### **WARNING**

**Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.**

**Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.**

**WARNING:** Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

**WARNING:** Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

**WARNING:** Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

**WARNING:** Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.



## ■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

### Models with lockable retractor seat belts

The rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child restraint systems.

➔ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 82

## ► About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

## ■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

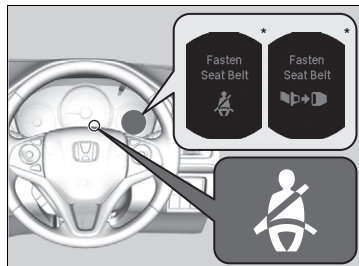
- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

### »» About Your Seat Belts

#### Models with lockable retractor seat belts


If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

## ■ Seat Belt Reminder



### ■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger\* or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>\*1</sup> and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper\* will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper\* will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.


The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ▶▶ Seat Belt Reminder

### Models with front passenger's seat belt reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

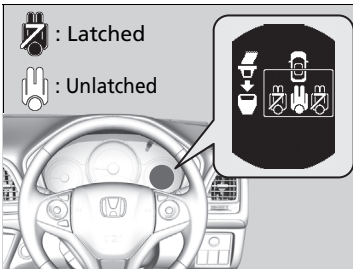
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor.

Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



#### Models with rear passenger's seat belt reminder

##### ■ Rear seats

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. A multi-information display notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are used.

The display appears when:

- A rear door is opened and closed.
- Any of the rear passenger latches or unlatches their seat belt.

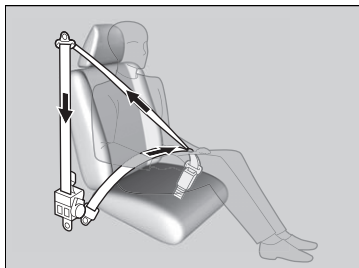
The beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unlatched while driving.

To see the display:

Press the  button repeatedly.

## ■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.



The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.

## ►► Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

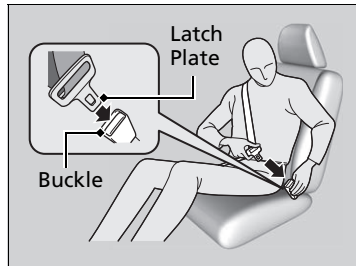
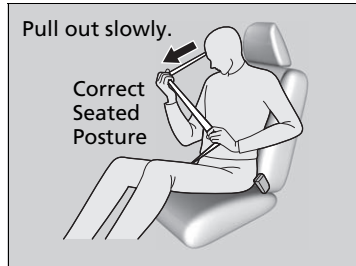
### Models with side curtain airbags

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

## Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

✎ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 222



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.

2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

► Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

### ✎ Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

► Fastening a Seat Belt

**⚠ WARNING**

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

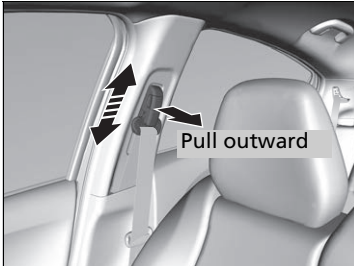
**Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.**

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

## ■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while pulling the release outward.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

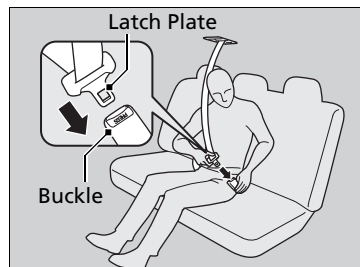
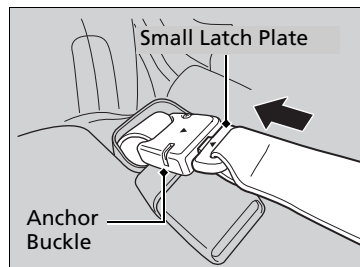
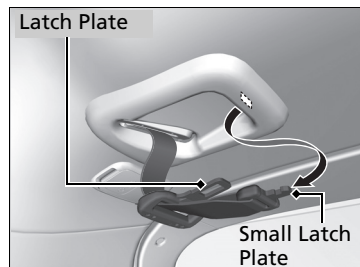
## ▣ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.



## ■ Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor



1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.

2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchor buckle.

3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

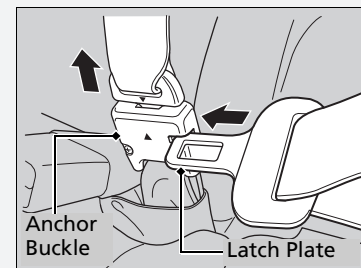
## ►► Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

### ⚠ WARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.



## Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

**Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.**



**Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.**

## Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

## Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

### ►► Seat Belt Inspection

#### **WARNING**

**Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.**

**Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.**

**WARNING:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

**WARNING:** It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

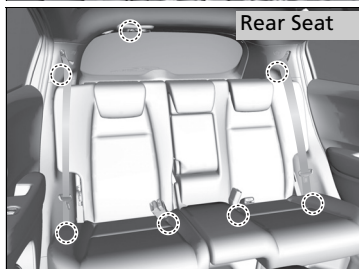
**WARNING:** Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

## Anchorage Points



Front Seat

When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



Rear Seat

The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

## Airbag System Components

The front, front side\*, and side curtain\* airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

### Models with side airbags

- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

### Models with side curtain airbags

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

- An electronic control unit that, when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup>, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
  - Automatic front seat belt tensioners.
  - Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side\* impact.
  - An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- ### Models with passenger front airbag off system
- An indicator near the shift lever that alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off.
  - Safing Sensor\*

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

### **Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.**

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

## ▣ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

## Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags\*:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags\*:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

### Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.


### Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

#### Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

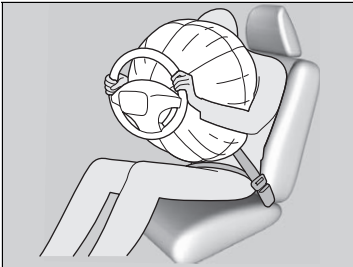
After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

## ■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## ■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.



## ■ When front airbags should not deploy

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags\* and side curtain airbags\* have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** Seat belts and side curtain airbags\* offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

## ■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

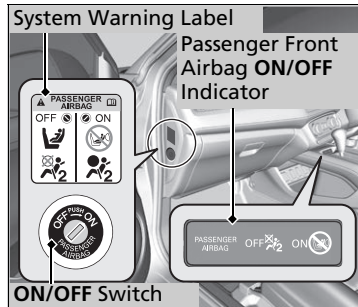
## ■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

## Passenger Front Airbag Off System \*

If it is unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually deactivate the passenger front airbag system, using the built-in key.

### Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch



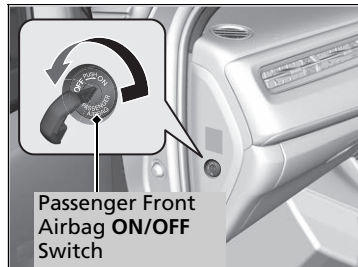
When the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch is in:

**OFF:** The passenger front airbag is deactivated. The passenger front airbag does not inflate during a frontal crash that inflates driver's front airbag.

The passenger front airbag off indicator stays on as a reminder.

**ON:** The passenger front airbag is activated. The passenger front airbag on indicator comes on and remains on for about 60 seconds.

### To deactivate the passenger front airbag system



1. Set the parking brake, and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Open the front passenger's door.
3. Insert the built-in key to the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch.
  - ▶ The switch is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.
4. Turn the key to **OFF**, and remove it from the switch.

## Passenger Front Airbag Off System \*

### ⚠ WARNING

The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.

### ⚠ WARNING

Make sure to turn on the passenger front airbag system when a rear-facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat.

Leaving the passenger front airbag system deactivated can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

\* Not available on all models

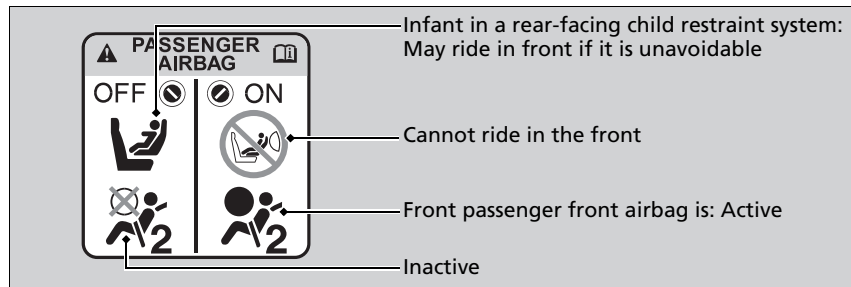
### ■ Passenger front airbag off indicator

When the passenger front airbag system is activated, the indicator goes off after a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON.

When the passenger front airbag system is deactivated, the indicator stays on, or goes off momentarily and comes back on.

### ■ Passenger front airbag off system label

The label is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.



### ►► Passenger Front Airbag Off System \*

#### NOTICE

- Use your vehicle's built-in key to turn the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. If you use a different key, the switch can be damaged, or the passenger front airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not close the door or apply excessive load on the built-in key while the key is in the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. The switch or the key can be damaged.

We strongly recommend that you do not install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

#### ► Protecting Infants P. 71

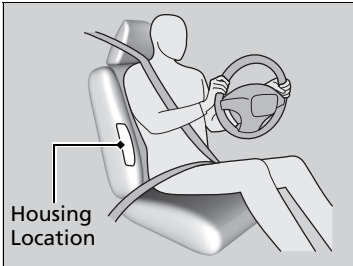
It is your responsibility to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to **OFF** when you put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, turn the system back on.

## Side Airbags\*

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

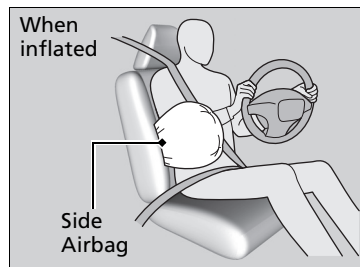
### Side Airbags\*

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

### ■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

### ■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

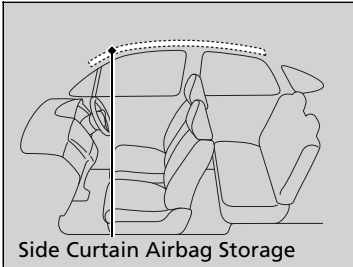
## ►► Side Airbags\*

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

## Side Curtain Airbags\*

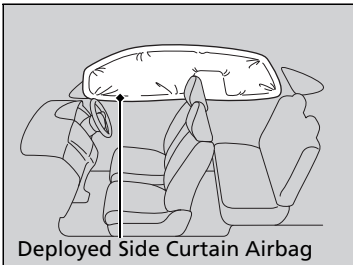
The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and any passengers during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

### Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

\* Not available on all models

### Side Curtain Airbags\*

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

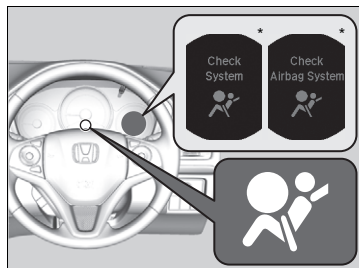
Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

## Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the multi-information display\*.

### ■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



#### ■ When the ignition switch is turned to ON \*1

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### ► Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

#### ⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

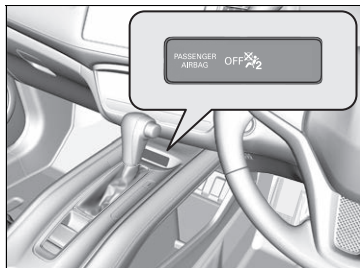
#### Models with passenger front airbag off system

#### ⚠ WARNING

Remove the rear-facing child restraint system immediately from the front passenger seat if the SRS indicator comes on. Even if the passenger front airbag has been deactivated, do not ignore the SRS indicator.

The SRS system may have a fault which could cause the passenger front airbag to be activated, causing serious injury or death.

## ■ Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator\*



### ■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator stays on while the passenger's front airbag system is deactivated.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, manually turn the system back on. The indicator should go off.

\* Not available on all models



## Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

### ■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

### ■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

#### » Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

## Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

### Protecting Child Passengers

#### **WARNING**

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirements.

#### Malaysian and Latin American models

Child restraint systems must meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129\*, or the regulations of the subject countries.

 **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 74

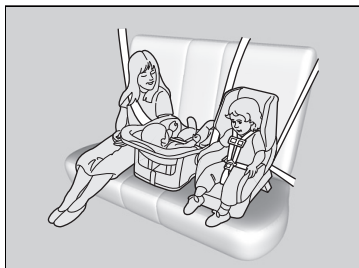
#### Except Malaysian and Latin American models

We recommend that child restraint systems meet UN Regulation No. 44 or the regulations of the subject countries.

 **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 74

\* Not available on all models

**Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat.** This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag\* can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

►► Protecting Child Passengers

Models with lockable retractor

**⚠ WARNING**

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.

#### ► Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

Except Taiwanese models

### ⚠ WARNING



**NEVER** use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

Taiwanese models



To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the sun visor. Please read and follow the instructions on the label.

► **Safety Labels** P. 93

Continued

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

#### ►► Protecting Child Passengers

##### Front Passenger's Doorjamb

For some models


### **WARNING**



#### **Extreme Hazard!**

**DO NOT** use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

**WARNING:** Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

 **Opening/Closing the Power Windows**  
P. 188

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

#### Models with lockable retractor seat belts

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

## Safety of Infants and Small Children

### ■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the infant reaches the restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



#### ■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.
- Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

### ►► Protecting Infants

#### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN Regulation No. 94:

#### ⚠ WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

#### ► Protecting Infants

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old, if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

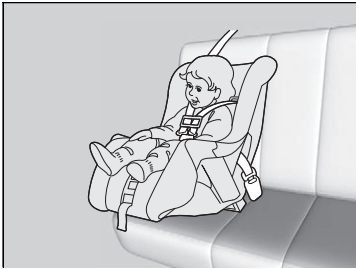
#### Models with passenger front airbag off system

If it is absolutely unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, manually turn off the passenger front airbag system.

**► Passenger Front Airbag Off System\* P. 59**

## ■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front facing child restraint system.



### ■ Front facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

## ►► Protecting Smaller Children

### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.



## ■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether\* for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISO FIX\* restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129\*, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

## ►► Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

We recommend to use the genuine rear-facing Honda BABYSAFE ISOFIX child restraint system for infants, and the genuine front facing Honda ISOFIX child restraint system for small children. Both are available at a dealer in some countries.

## ■ The Recommended Child Restraint Systems for Malaysia

Various types of child restraint systems are available. Not all types are suitable for your vehicle. Please refer to the table below to select which category of child restraint system can be used on each seating position.

Mass group		Seating position		
		Front Passenger	Rear passenger	
			Rear outboard	Rear centre
group 0	Up to 10 kg	X	U* <sup>1</sup>	U* <sup>1</sup>
group 0+	Up to 13 kg	X	IL (Honda BABY SAFE ISOFIX, Honda ISOFIX Neo) or U* <sup>1</sup>	U* <sup>1</sup>
group I	9 kg to 18 kg	UF* <sup>1,2</sup>	IUF (Size class A, B1, B) or U* <sup>1</sup>	U* <sup>1</sup>
group II	15 kg to 25 kg	UF* <sup>1,2</sup>	U* <sup>1</sup>	U* <sup>1</sup>
group III	22 kg to 36 kg	UF* <sup>1,2</sup>	U* <sup>1</sup>	U* <sup>1</sup>

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in this list.

IUF: Suitable for front facing ISOFIX child restraint system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

U: Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for front facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

\*1: Adjust the seat-back angle to the upright position (front most lock position).

\*2: Move the front seat to its rearmost position.

A size class is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the size class as indicated on the manufacturer’s instructions, package, and labels of the child restraint.

The particular child restraints in the table are Honda Genuine Parts. They are available from your dealer.

For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.

Latin American models

Information of Adaptability of the Child Restraint System in Several Seat Positions

Various types of child restraint systems are available. Not all types are suitable for your vehicle. Please refer to the table below to select which category of child restraint system can be used on each seating position.

Age group	Seating position in the vehicle			
	Front seat		Rear outer seat	Rear centre seat
	Passenger front airbag <b>ON/OFF</b> switch position			
	<b>OFF</b>	<b>ON</b>		
Up to 2 years old (~13 kg)	Baby-Safe Plus Original Honda*1, *5 or Universal*2, *5	Do not use it in front seat.	IL*3 (Baby-Safe Plus Original Honda*1) or Universal*2	Baby-Safe Plus Original Honda*1 or Universal*2
Older than 9 months up to 4 years old (from 9 to 18 kg)	Duo Plus Original Honda*1, *5 or Universal*2, *5	Duo Plus Original Honda*1, *5 or Front Facing Universal*2, *5	Duo Plus Original Honda*1 or IUF*4 or Universal*2	Duo Plus Original Honda*1 or Universal*2
Older than 4 years old up to 12 years old (from 15 to 36 kg)	Universal*2, *5	Front Facing Universal*2, *5	Universal*2	Universal*2

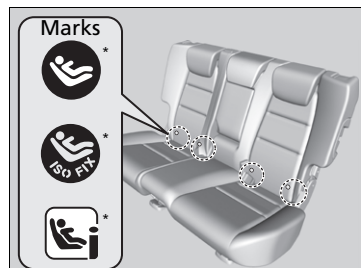
Description

- \*1: Available in some markets
- \*2: Universal    The system is suitable and approved to be used for children in respective ages.  
It can be used in the front or rear seat if installed according to manufacture's instructions, following traffic safety standards.  
NOTE: When securing the child restraint system using the seat belt, use the seat belt equipped in the vehicle only.
- \*3: IL            Suitable for particular ISO FIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in this table.
- \*4: IUF          Suitable for front facing ISO FIX child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this age group.
- \*5: Move the front seat to its rearmost position and adjust the front seat-back angle to the most upright position.

	Seating position in the vehicle		
	Front seat	Rear outer seat	Rear centre seat
i-Size child restraint system	X	i-U	X
Description			
X	Seating position not suitable for i-Size “universal” Child Restraint Systems.		
i-U	Suitable for i-Size “universal” Child Restraint Systems forward and rearward facing.		

## ■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



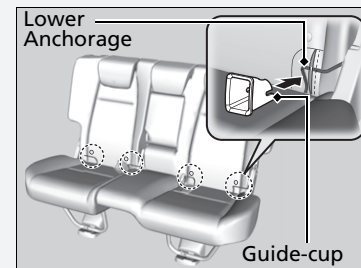
1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.
2. Make sure to lock the seat-back in the upright position.
3. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.

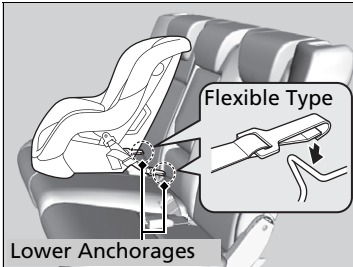
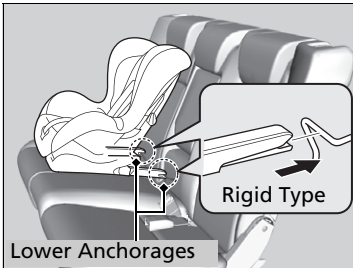
## ► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

### ⚠ WARNING

**Never attach two child restraint system to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.**

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.





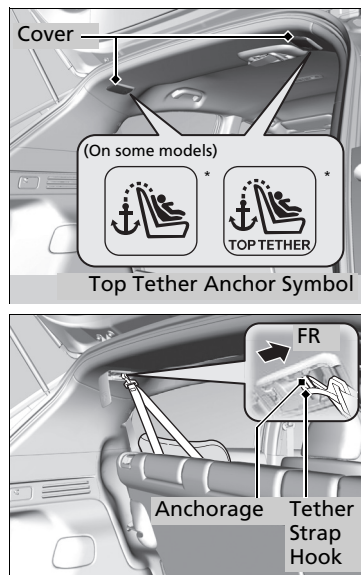
4. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

► When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

#### ✎ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

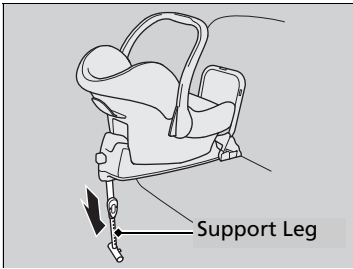


#### Child restraint system with tether strap

5. Open the tether anchorage cover.
6. Route the tether strap over the seat-back. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
7. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
8. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
9. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
10. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor\* is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

#### ►► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

**WARNING:** Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether anchor symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

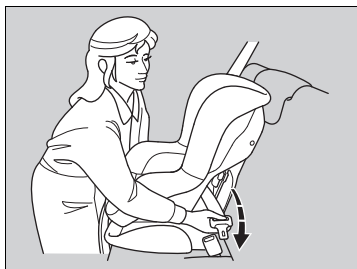


**Child restraint system with support leg**

5. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
  - Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support. If this is the case, move the seat forward or back so that the support leg is resting on a level section.
  - Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.



## ■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



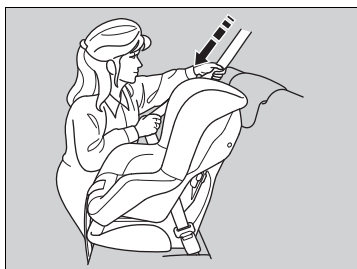
1. Make sure to lock the seat-back in the upright position.
2. **Except Australian and New Zealand models with 1.8 L engine**

Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.

3. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
4. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.  
► Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.

### **Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor**

5. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
6. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.

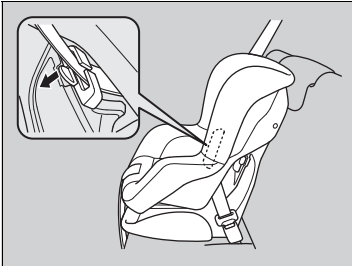


## ►► Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

To check if the lap/shoulder belt is equipped with the lockable retractor, pull the shoulder part of the lap/shoulder belt all the way out, let the belt retract slowly, then pull the belt again gently. If the belt is locked, the belt is equipped with the lockable retractor.

The seat belt with a lockable retractor has a label as shown in the image.





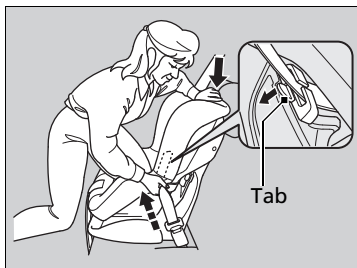
7. Let the seat belt retract a few centimetres and check that the retractor has switched modes by pulling on the webbing. It should not pull out again until it is reset by removing the latch plate from the buckle.
  - If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Slowly pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 5 – 6.
8. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
  - When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
9. Position the belt properly. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
  - While pulling down the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

#### ✕ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

##### Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor

After the child restraint system is installed properly, check if the lockable retractor is activated and the belt is fully retracted and locked. To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

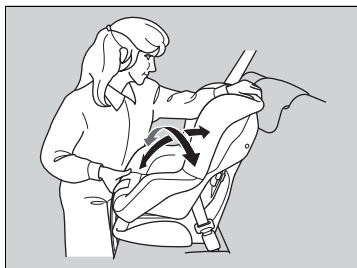


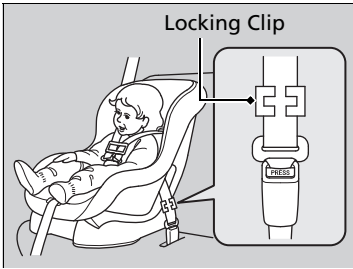
**Lap/shoulder seat belt without lockable retractor**

- 5.** Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
- 6.** Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
  - When doing this, place your weight on child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
- 7.** Position the belt properly. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
  - When pulling down the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.
- 8.** Go to step 10.

**All models**

- 10.** Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- 11.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.





**Lap/shoulder seat belt without lockable retractor**

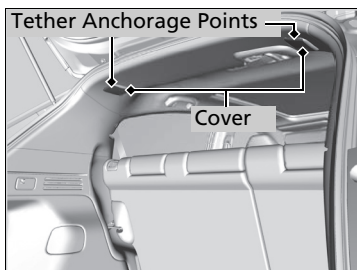
If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 4, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

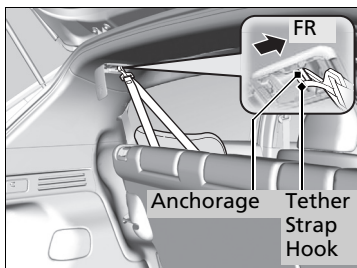
5. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
6. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
7. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 10 and 11.

Except Australian and New Zealand models with 1.8 L engine

## ■ Adding Security with a Tether



Two tether anchorage points are provided on the ceiling for rear outer seating positions. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.



1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.
2. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
3. Open the anchorage cover.
4. Route the tether strap over the seat-back. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
5. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
6. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

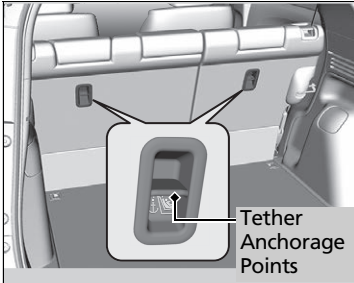
## ►► Adding Security with a Tether

**WARNING:** Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

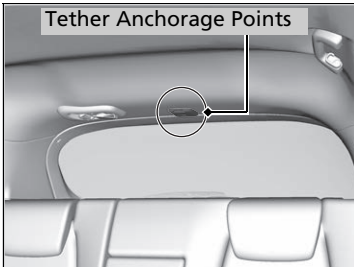
Always use a tether for forward facing child restraint systems when using the seat belt or lower anchors.

Australian and New Zealand models with 1.8 L engine

## ■ Adding Security with a Tether



Two tether anchorage points are provided behind the rear outer seating positions and one in the ceiling for the rear centre. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

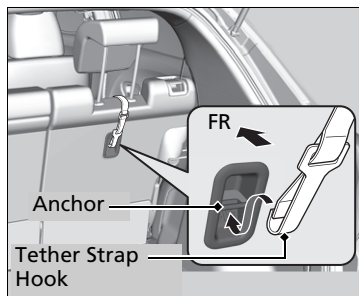


## » Adding Security with a Tether

**WARNING:** Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

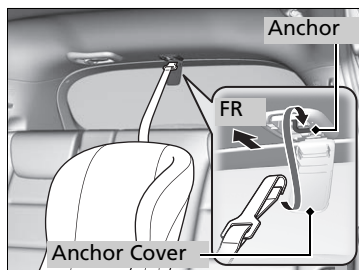
Always use a tether for forward facing child restraint systems when using the seat belt or lower anchors.

Continued



### ■ Using an outer anchor

1. Remove the tonneau cover.
  - **Tonneau Cover** P. 243
2. Put the outer head restraint to its upper most position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchor. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
4. Reinstall the tonneau cover.



### ■ Using the centre anchor

1. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
2. Open the tether anchor cover.
3. Route the tether strap over the head restraint. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

## Safety of Larger Children

### ■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

### ■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



#### ■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

### ►► Safety of Larger Children

#### ⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

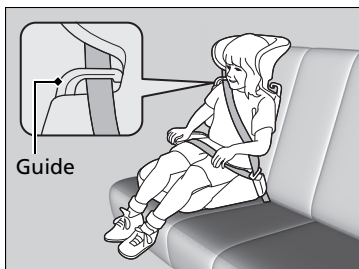
If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.



## Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

## Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

## ■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

## ■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.


## Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

### ■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the heating\* and cooling system\*/climate control system\* as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the heating\* and cooling system\*/climate control system\* in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

### Carbon Monoxide Gas

## WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

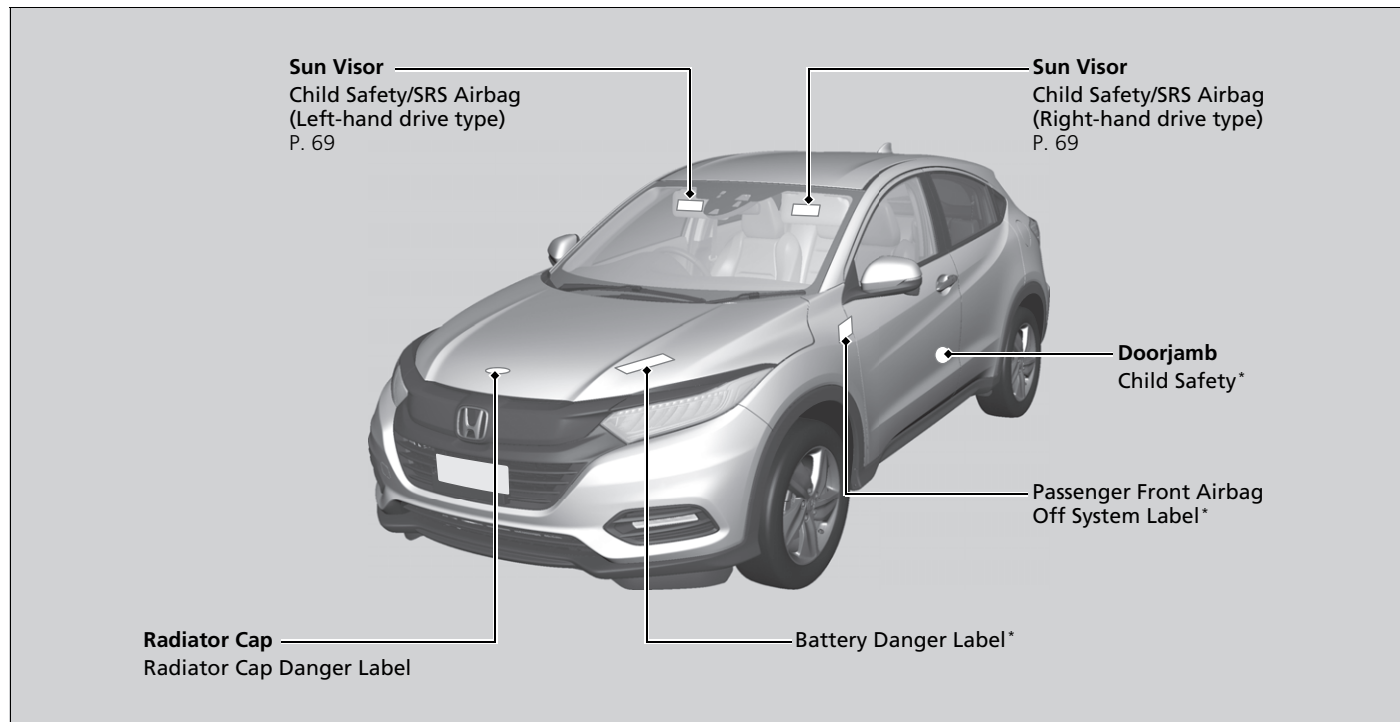
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.  
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed.  
Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

## Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



\* Not available on all models






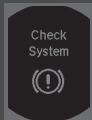



# Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



<b>Indicators</b> .....	96
Information Display Warning and Information Messages* .....	124
Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages* .....	125
<b>Gauges and Displays</b> .....	
Gauges .....	135
Information Display* .....	136
Multi-Information Display* .....	139













Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, *3
	Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Check the brake fluid level.   <b>What to do when the indicator comes on while driving</b> P. 596</li> <li><b>Comes on along with the ABS indicator</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.   <b>If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On</b> P. 596</li> </ul>	  *4 

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Models with multi-information display

\*3: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

\*4: Except Australian, New Zealand, African and Middle Eastern models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, *3
	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the automatic brake hold system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	<div> <div>Check System </div> <div>*4</div> <div>Check System </div> <div>*4</div> <div>Check System </div> <div>*4</div> <div>Check System </div> </div> <div> <div>Check Brake System </div> <div>*4</div> <div>Check Brake System </div> <div>*4</div> <div>Check Brake System </div> <div>*4</div> <div>Check Brake Hold System </div> </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the City-Brake Active system*.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on along with the CTBA indicator</b> - The City-Brake Active system does not activate. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.   <b>City-Brake Active system*</b>  P. 486</li> </ul>	<div>Check System </div> <div>CTBA</div>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.






\*2: Models with multi-information display

\*3: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models

\*4: Australian, New Zealand, African and Middle Eastern models

\* Not available on all models









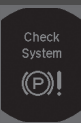
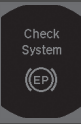



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, *3
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off when the engine starts.</li><li>• Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place.  <b>If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On</b> P. 595</li></ul>	 

\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2:Models with multi-information display

\*3:On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, *3
	Electric Parking Brake Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off if the parking brake has been released.</li> <li>Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks and the electric parking brake system indicator comes on at the same time</b> - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set.</li> </ul>	
			 <b>Parking Brake P. 477</b>	
	Electric Parking Brake System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>If the Electric Parking Brake System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 598</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<div> *4 </div> <div> *5 </div> <div>  </div>









\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2:Models with multi-information display

\*3:On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models














\*4:Except Australian, New Zealand, African and Middle Eastern models

\*5:Australian, New Zealand, African and Middle Eastern models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* <sup>2</sup>
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.</li> </ul>	 <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 481	
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.</li> </ul>	 <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 481	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Models with multi-information display







Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, *3
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off either when the engine starts or, after several seconds if the engine did not start.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.</li> <li>Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take your vehicle to a dealer.   <b>If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks</b>  P. 596</li> </ul>	<div>  </div> <div>  </div>
	Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on when the battery is not charging.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Turn off the heating* and cooling system*/climate control system* and rear demister to reduce electricity consumption.   <b>If the Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 595</li> </ul>	<div>  </div> <div>  </div>
	Shift Lever Position Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates the current shift lever position.</li> </ul>	 <b>Shifting</b> P. 445, 447	<div>  </div>

\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2:Models with multi-information display







\*3:On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*1, *2
	Transmission Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>	 
	<b>M</b> (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when 7-speed manual shift mode is applied.</li> </ul>	 <b>7-Speed Manual Shift Mode</b> P. 449	

\*1: Models with multi-information display

\*2: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, *3
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on and the beeper sounds* if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1.</li> <li>Blinks while driving if you have not fastened the seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you fasten the seat belt.</li> <li><b>Stays on after you have fastened the seat belt</b> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	<div> *4         </div> <div> *5         </div>
		<b>Models with front passenger's seat belt reminder</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on about a few seconds later.</li> <li>Blinks while driving if the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</li> </ul>	<b>Models with front passenger's seat belt reminder</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when the front passenger fastens their seat belt.</li> <li><b>Stays on after the front passenger has fastened the seat belt</b> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	<div> *4         </div> <div> *5         </div>





\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2:Models with multi-information display

\*3:On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models

\*4:Except Australian, New Zealand, African and Middle Eastern models










\*5:Australian, New Zealand, African and Middle Eastern models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, *3
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low. 1.5 ℓ engine models: approximately 5.3 Litres left 1.8 ℓ engine models for Thai models: approximately 7.9 Litres left 1.8 ℓ engine models except for Thai models: approximately 7.0 Litres left</li> <li>Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on</b> - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.</li> <li><b>Blinks</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	<div> <div>Fuel Low</div> <div>Low Fuel</div> <div>Check Fuel Gauge System</div> <div>Check Fuel Gauge System</div> </div>
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.  <b>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)</b> P. 484</li> </ul>	<div> <div>Check System</div> <div>Check ABS System</div> </div>

\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2:Models with multi-information display

\*3:On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models









Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, *3
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Supplemental restraint system</li> <li>Side airbag system*</li> <li>Side curtain airbag system*</li> <li>Seat belt tensioner</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	<div></div> <div></div>
ON  OFF  <sub>2</sub>	Passenger Front Airbag On/Off Indicators*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Both indicators come on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off after a system check up.</li> </ul> <p>When the passenger front airbag is active: The on indicator comes back on and remains on for about 60 seconds.</p> <p>When the passenger front airbag is inactive: The off indicator comes back on and stays on. This is a reminder that the passenger front airbag is deactivated.</p>	 <b>Passenger Front Airbag Off System*</b> P. 59	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Models with multi-information display

\*3: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models







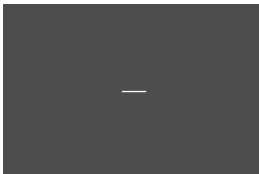






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, *3
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Blinks when VSA is active.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA or hill start assist system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System</b> P. 468</li> <li>➤ <b>Hill start assist system</b> P. 437, 441</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<div> <div>Check System </div> <div>Check VSA System </div> <div>Check System </div> <div>Check Hill Start Assist System </div> </div>
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) <b>OFF</b> Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when you deactivate VSA.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>VSA On and OFF</b> P. 469</li> </ul>	—

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Models with multi-information display

\*3: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models



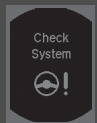







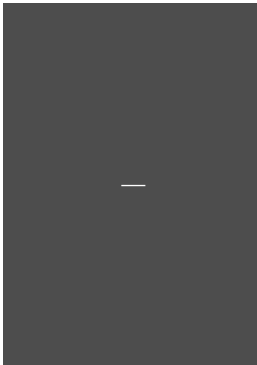
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, *3
	High Temperature Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Blinks when the engine coolant temperature goes up, and stays on if the temperature continues to rise.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Goes off, then comes on blue when the engine coolant temperature is low.</li> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Drive slowly to prevent overheating.</li> <li><b>Stays on while driving</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place and allow the engine to cool.  <b>Overheating</b> P. 593</li> </ul>	 
	Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the engine coolant temperature is low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the indicator stays on after the engine has reached normal operating temperature, there may be a problem with the temperature sensors. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
	Door and Tailgate Open Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed.</li> <li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if any door or the tailgate is opened while driving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Goes off when all doors and the tailgate are closed.</li> </ul>	 

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Models with multi-information display

\*3: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models






\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, *3
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  <b>► If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 597</b></li> </ul>	 
	System Message Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the multi-information display appears at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>While the indicator is on, press the /  (information) button to see the message again.</li> <li>Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the multi-information display. Take appropriate action for the message.</li> <li>The multi-information display does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the /  button is pressed.</li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.





\*2: Models with multi-information display

\*3: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models









Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* <sup>2</sup>
	<div>Except Taiwanese models</div> Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>May come on briefly if the ignition switch is turned to ON <sup>*1</sup> and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete.</li> <li>Comes on and stays on when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low.</li> <li>- The system has not been calibrated.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.</li> <li><b>Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures</b> - The system needs to be calibrated. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Deflation Warning System Calibration</b> P. 470</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system, or when a compact spare tyre* is temporarily installed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.</li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Models with multi-information display





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* <sup>1</sup>
	<div>Taiwanese models</div> Low Tyre Pressure/ TPMS Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete.</li> <li>Comes on and stays on when:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low.</li> <li>The system has not been calibrated.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.</li> <li><b>Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures</b> - The system needs to be calibrated.   <b>TPMS Calibration</b> P. 473</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS, or when a compact spare tyre is temporarily installed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.</li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* <sup>1</sup>
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever.</li> <li>Blink if you press the hazard warning button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Does not blink or blinks rapidly</b> - A turn signal light bulb has blown. Change the bulb immediately.   <b>Replacing Light Bulbs</b> P. 530, 532, 533</li> </ul>	—
		<div>Except Latin American models</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.</li> </ul>	 <b>Emergency Stop Signal</b> P. 491	
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.</li> </ul>	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on whenever the light switch is on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you remove the key from the ignition switch*, or set the power mode* to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.</li> </ul>	
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the front fog lights are on.</li> </ul>	—	—
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the rear fog light is on.</li> </ul>	—	—

\*1: Models with multi-information display

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks -</b>  <b>Models without keyless access system</b>                      You cannot start the engine. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK , pull the key out, and then insert the key and turn it to ON  again.  <b>Models with keyless access system</b>                      You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then select the ON mode again.                 </li> <li><b>Repeatedly blinks</b> - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.</li> </ul>	—

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Models with multi-information display














Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* <sup>1</sup>
 Indicator	Security System Alarm Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.</li> </ul>	<b>Security System Alarm*</b> P. 186	—
 Indicator				

\*1: Models with multi-information display

\*2: Left-hand drive type

\*3: Right-hand drive type











Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, *3
	ECON Mode Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when ECON mode is on.</li> </ul>	 <b>ECON Button</b> * P. 457	 
	<b>CRUISE MAIN</b> Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>CRUISE</b> button.</li> </ul>	 <b>Cruise Control</b> * P. 458	—
	<b>CRUISE CONTROL</b> Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if you have set a speed for cruise control.</li> </ul>	 <b>Cruise Control</b> * P. 458	—
	Keyless Access System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	 
	Light Control Indicator*	<div>Models with automatic lighting control</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system.</li> </ul> <div>Models with LED headlights</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the headlights.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Turn the lights on manually and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	—

\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2:Models with multi-information display

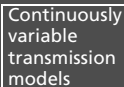




\*3:On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* <sup>2</sup>
	Starter System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on if the starter system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>As a temporary measure, press and hold the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button for 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	—
	Speed Alarm Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Blinks when your vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. A reminder tone sounds..</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This indicator keeps blinking while your vehicle speed is faster than 120 km/h.</li> </ul>	—
	Shift to Park Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in .</li> </ul> <div>Models with Auto Idle Stop system</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if you open the bonnet while Auto Idle Stop activates.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice after moving the shift lever to .</li> </ul> <p>If you want to start the engine, follow the normal procedure.</p> <p> <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 435, 438</p>	—
	Rotate Wheel Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the steering wheel is locked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button.</li> </ul>	—



\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2:Models with multi-information display








Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* <sup>2</sup>
 	Brake Depressing Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *<sup>1</sup>, then goes off.</li> </ul> <p><b>Models with Auto Idle Stop system</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when Auto Idle Stop does not activate as the brake pedal is not depressed fully.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Depress the brake pedal fully.</li> </ul>	—
		<p><b>Electric Parking Brake System</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.                              <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 477                         </li> </ul>	
		<p><b>Automatic Brake Hold System</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation.</li> <li>Blinks if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.                              <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 481                         </li> <li>Immediately depress the brake pedal.</li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Models with multi-information display




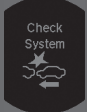




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* <sup>1</sup>
<div>Manual transmission models</div> 	Brake Depressing Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON , then goes off.</li> </ul> <div>Electric Parking Brake System</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➡ <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 477</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	—
		<div>Automatic Brake Hold System</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation.</li> <li>Blinks if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➡ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 481</li> </ul> </li> <li>Immediately depress the brake pedal.</li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message <sup>*2</sup>
	Auto High-Beam Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.</li> </ul>	 <b>Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)*</b> P. 207	—
	All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the AWD system.</li> <li>Blinks when the AWD system is overheated. The system is inactive.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - the engine drives only the front wheels only in this state. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - the engine drives the front wheels only in this state. Stop in a safe place, shift to , and idle the engine until the indicator goes off. If the indicator does not stop blinking, take your vehicle to a dealer.</li> </ul>  <b>REAL TIME AWD with Intelligent Control System*</b> P. 476	—

\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



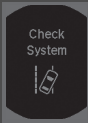




\*2:Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* <sup>2</sup>
	Forward Collision Warning Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when you have customized forward collision warning system to turn off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly without the system off</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	 
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.   <b>Automatic shutoff</b> P. 463</li> </ul>	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.   <b>Automatic shutoff</b> P. 463</li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.






\*2: Models with multi-information display

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* <sup>2</sup>
	Lane Departure Warning Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *<sup>1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the lane departure warning system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.   <b>☒ Lane Departure Warning Camera</b>  P. 466 </li> </ul>	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.   <b>☒ Lane Departure Warning Camera</b>  P. 466 </li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



\*2: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* <sup>2</sup>
CTBA	City-Brake Active System (CTBA) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> </ul>	—	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Goes off when you have customized the City-Brake Active system to turn on.</li> <li>Comes on when you have customized the City-Brake Active system to turn off.</li> </ul>	 <b>City-Brake Active system</b> * P. 486  <b>Customized Features</b> P. 143	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the area around the laser sensor, which is located in the upper part of the windscreen, is covered with obstacles, such as dirt, ice and frost.</li> <li>May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remove dirt or any obstacles using the washer and wipers.</li> <li>Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe away dirt or any obstacles covering the area around the laser sensor on the windscreen.</li> </ul>  <b>City-Brake Active system</b> * P. 486	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when snow is accumulated on the bonnet.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stop your vehicle in a safe place and remove snow from the bonnet.</li> </ul>	





\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Models with multi-information display



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*1
CTBA	City-Brake Active System (CTBA) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>May come on when the temperatures of the area around the laser sensor are high.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Use the climate control system to cool down the area around the laser sensor.</li><li>The system resumes when the temperatures of the area around the laser sensor go down.</li></ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on along with the brake system indicator (amber) if there is a problem with the system.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The system does not activate. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul>	

\*1:Models with multi-information display



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when Auto Idle Stop is in operation. The engine automatically shuts off.</li> </ul>	 <b>Auto Idle Stop*</b> P. 453	—
	Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the Auto Idle Stop system has been turned off by the Auto Idle Stop system <b>OFF</b> button.</li> <li>Blinks if there is a problem with the Auto Idle Stop system.</li> </ul>	 <b>Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF</b> P. 453	—
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	

\* Not available on all models


## Information Display Warning and Information Messages\*













The following messages appear only on the information display.

Models with keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
<b>NO KEY</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Disappears when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.</li></ul>
<b>KEY </b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the keyless remote's battery becomes weak.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Replace the battery as soon as possible.  <b>Replacing the Button Battery</b> P. 552</li></ul>

## Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages\*



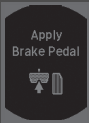

The following messages appear only on the multi-information display. Press the  (information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

Message*2	Condition	Explanation
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears while you are customizing the settings and the shift lever is moved out of <b>P</b>.</li> </ul>	 <b>Customized Features*</b> P. 143
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears once if the outside temperature is below 3°C while the ignition switch is in ON *1.</li> <li>There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.</li> </ul>	
 	<div>Models with rear passenger's seat belt reminder</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched, or either rear door is opened and closed.</li> </ul>	 <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 44
 	<div>Models with speed alarm</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the vehicle speed reaches the set speed. You can set two different speeds for the alarm.</li> </ul>	 <b>List of customizable options</b> P. 146

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

\* Not available on all models




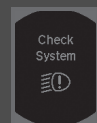



Message	Condition	Explanation
	<b>Models with LED headlights</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the headlights.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.</li> <li>Appears along with the battery charging system indicator when the battery is not charging.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Checking the Battery</b> P. 549</li> </ul> </li> <li>Turn off the climate control system and rear demister to reduce electricity consumption.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 595</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Immediately depress the brake pedal.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 481</li> </ul>

Message* <sup>1</sup>	Condition	Explanation
<p>To Enable Brake Hold: Seat Belt + Push</p> <p>To Enable Brake Hold: Seat Belt + Push</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fasten the driver's seat belt.  <b>➤ Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 481</li> </ul>
<p>To Disable Brake Hold: Brake + Push</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.  <b>➤ Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 481</li> </ul>
<p>Parking Brake Engaged</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>➤ Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 481</li> <li><b>➤ Parking Brake</b> P. 477</li> </ul>

\*1: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

\*2: Except Australian, New Zealand, African and Middle Eastern models

\*3: Australian, New Zealand, African and Middle Eastern models




Message*1	Condition	Explanation
<div>*2</div>  <div>*3</div>  	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you set the power mode to ON without fastening the driver's seat belt.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fasten the seat belt properly before you start to drive.  <b>► Shift Lever Operation</b> P. 446, 448</li> </ul>
 	<div>Models with automatic lighting control</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
 	<div>Models with auto high-beam</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when there is a problem with the auto high-beam.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manually operate the headlight switch.</li> <li>If you are driving with the high beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.  <b>► Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)*</b> P. 207</li> </ul>

\*1: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

\*2: Except Australian, New Zealand, African and Middle Eastern models






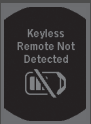

\*3: Australian, New Zealand, African and Middle Eastern models

Models without keyless access system



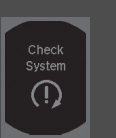
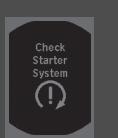



Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Return IGN Switch To (0) Position</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the ignition key is turned to ACCESSORY <b>I</b> from ON <b>II</b>. (The driver's door is closed.)</li> </ul>	—
 <p>Accessory (I) Position</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in ACCESSORY <b>I</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the ignition switch to LOCK <b>0</b>, then remove the key.</li> </ul>
 <p>Ignition Key</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in LOCK <b>0</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remove the key from the ignition switch.</li> </ul>






Models with keyless access system

Message* <sup>1</sup>	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.</li></ul>	 <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 438
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</li></ul>	—
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).</li></ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Disappears when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.  <b>Keyless Remote Reminder</b> P. 197</li></ul>







\* 1: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

Message* <sup>1</sup>	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the keyless remote battery becomes weak.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Replace the battery as soon as possible.  <b>► Replacing the Button Battery</b> P. 552</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the keyless remote battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. A beeper sounds six times.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>► If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 587</li> </ul>
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the starter system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>As a temporary measure, press and hold the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button for 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if you press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in <b>P</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice after moving the shift lever to <b>P</b>.</li> </ul>
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the steering wheel is locked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button.</li> </ul>

\*1: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models



Message*1	Condition	Explanation
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears if you press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button while the vehicle is moving.</li></ul>	 <b>Emergency Engine Stop</b> P. 588

Models with parking sensor system

Message*1	Condition	Explanation
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.</li></ul>
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>If there is a problem with any of the sensors, the appropriate sensor indicator(s) comes on.</li></ul>	
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears if there are obstacles around the sensors.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Check for obstacles near your vehicle to make sure it is safe to park.</li></ul>


\*1: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

Models with ECON button


Message* <sup>1</sup>	Condition	Explanation
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the ECON mode is turned off by pressing the ECON button.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>ECON Button</b>* P. 457</p>

\*<sup>1</sup>: On the left: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models, On the right: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

Models with forward collision warning



Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take the appropriate means to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)</li> </ul> <p>➤ <b>Forward Collision Warning</b>* P. 461</p>

Models with lane departure warning

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when your vehicle is too close to the traffic lane lines. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take appropriate action to keep your vehicle within the lane lines.</li> </ul> <p>➤ <b>Lane Departure Warning</b>* P. 465</p>


\* Not available on all models

Models with City-Brake Active system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. The beeper sounds.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead. The alert will disappear.</li><li>The system automatically applies the brake if a possible collision becomes likely unavoidable. ➤ <b>City-Brake Active system</b> * P. 486</li></ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Changes the display when your vehicle is stopped by the system. The beeper stops.</li></ul>	



Instrument Panel


## Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

### ■ Changing ambient meter colour

#### Models with information display

You can change colour while the vehicle is at a stop in ACCESSORY  or LOCK \*1 with the ambient meter on.

Press the  (select/reset) knob repeatedly; the colour changes from white, blue, purple, pink, red, amber to yellow.

#### Models with multi-information display

You can change the white to some colours.

 **Customized Features** P. 143

## ■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

## ■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.


\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Information Display\*

The information display shows the fuel gauge, odometer, trip meter, and other gauges.

### Switching the Display

Press the  (select/reset) knob to change the display.

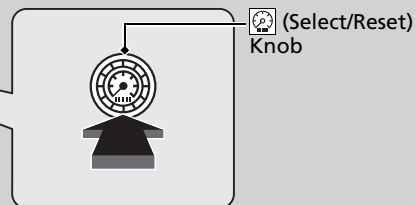
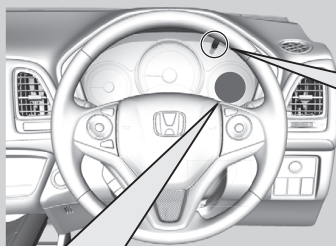
#### Switching the Display

Models without colour audio system and display audio system

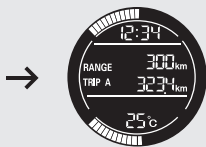
► **Adjusting the Clock** P. 158

Models with display audio system

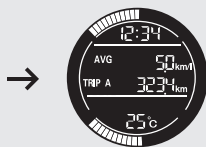
Some of the items on the information display also appear on the audio/information screen. They also change along with the information display changes while the fuel consumption is shown.



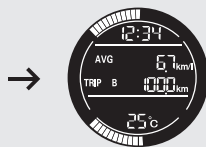
Instant Fuel Economy  
Clock  
Odometer  
Trip Meter A  
Outside Temperature\*  
Fuel Gauge



Instant Fuel Economy  
Clock  
Range  
Trip Meter A  
Outside Temperature\*  
Fuel Gauge



Instant Fuel Economy  
Clock  
Average Fuel Economy A  
Trip Meter A  
Outside Temperature\*  
Fuel Gauge



Instant Fuel Economy  
Clock  
Average Fuel Economy B  
Trip Meter B  
Outside Temperature\*  
Fuel Gauge



Clock Adjustment\*  
Fuel Gauge

## ■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or km/l.


## ■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

## ■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Trip A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### ■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the  knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.


## ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

## ■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km or km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.


### ►► Trip Meter

Switch between trip A and B by pressing the  knob.






## ■ Outside Temperature\*

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>\*1</sup>, the outside temperature indicator blinks for 10 seconds.

### ■ Adjusting the outside temperature indicator

Adjust the temperature reading up to  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>\*1</sup>.
2. Press and hold the  (select/reset) knob for 10 seconds or more while the outside temperature is shown on the information display.
  - The information display goes into temperature adjustment mode. The display starts showing from  $-3^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $+3^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
3. Release the  knob when the right adjustment amount is shown.
  - The adjustment is complete.

## ■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models


## » Outside Temperature\*

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

## » Fuel Gauge

### NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches . Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.


## Multi-Information Display\*

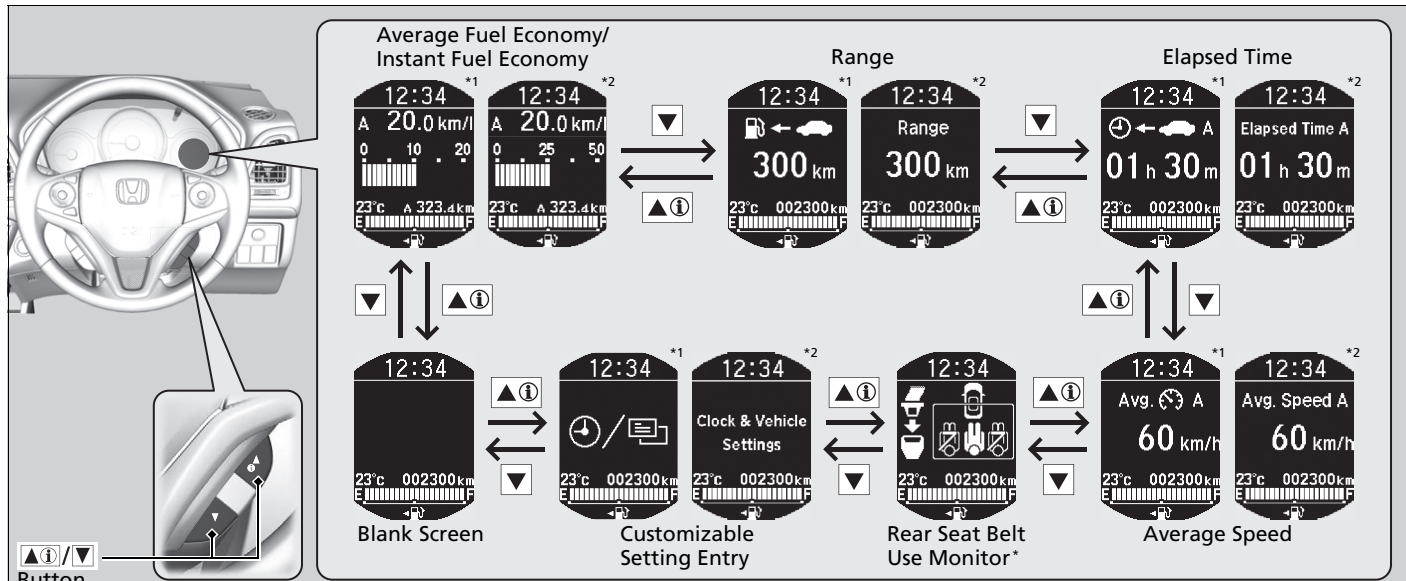
The multi-information display shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature\*, and other gauges.

It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

### Switching the Display

#### Main displays

Press the /▼ (information) button to change the display.



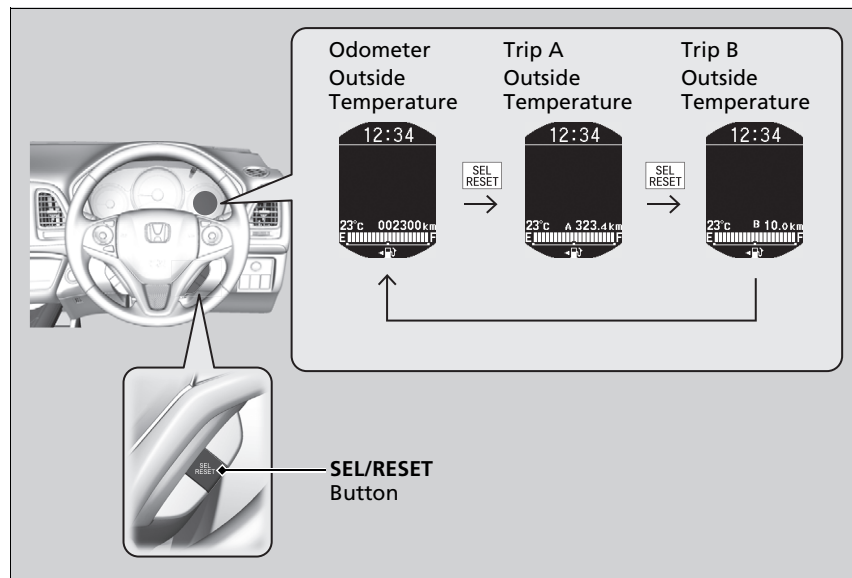
\*1: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

\*2: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Lower displays

Press the **SEL/RESET** button to change the display.



## ■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

## ■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Trip A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### ■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the **SEL/RESET** button. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

## ■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km or km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

## ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

## ■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since trip A or trip B was reset.

### ▣ Trip Meter

Switch between trip A and B by pressing the **SEL/RESET** button.

### ▣ Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 143

### ▣ Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 143

## ■ Average Speed


Shows the average speed in km/h since trip A or trip B was reset.

## ■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or km/l.

## ■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>1</sup>, the outside temperature indicator blinks for 10 seconds.

## ■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

## ■ Rear Seat Belt Use Monitor\*

Shows the rear seat belt use.

 **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 44

## ■ Fuel Gauge


Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### ⌘ Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.


 **Customized Features** P. 143

### ⌘ Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.


It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Use the multi-information display's customized features to correct the temperature.

 **Customized Features** P. 143

### ⌘ Fuel Gauge

#### NOTICE





You should refuel when the reading approaches . Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

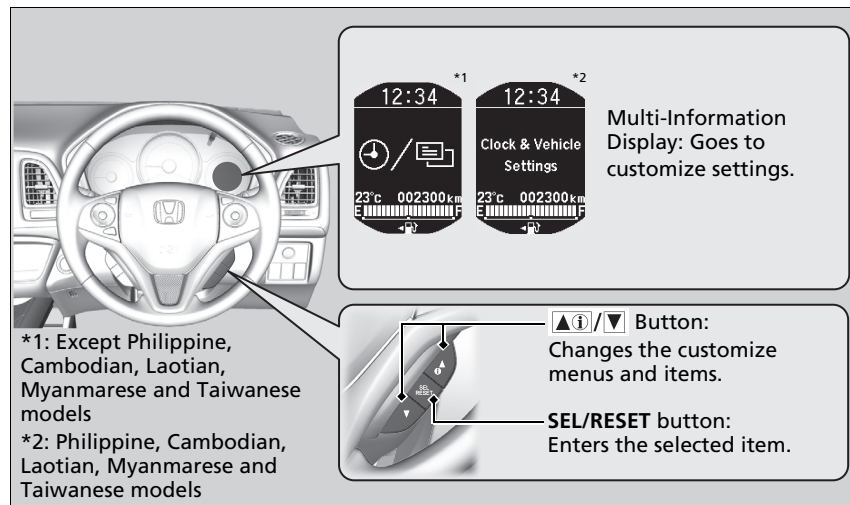
The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

## Customized Features

Use the multi-information display to customize certain features.

### How to customize

Select the  (Customize Settings)/**Clock & Vehicle Settings** screen by pressing the  button while the ignition switch is in ON \*, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift lever is in . Press the **SEL/RESET** button to enter the customizing mode.




\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models


Continued

## Customized Features

To customize other features, press the  button.

► **List of customizable options** P. 146

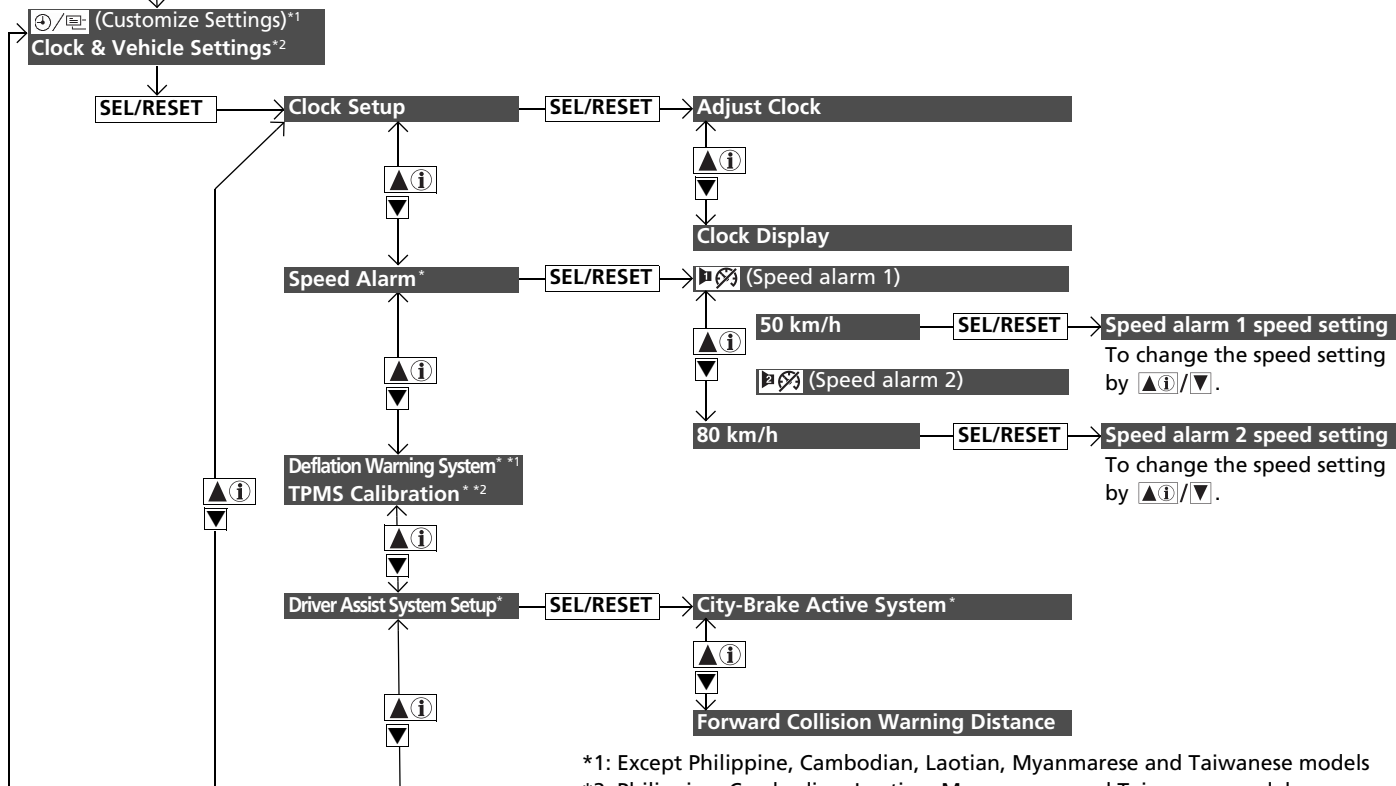
► **Example of customization settings** P. 152

When you customize settings, shift to .

## ■ Customization flow

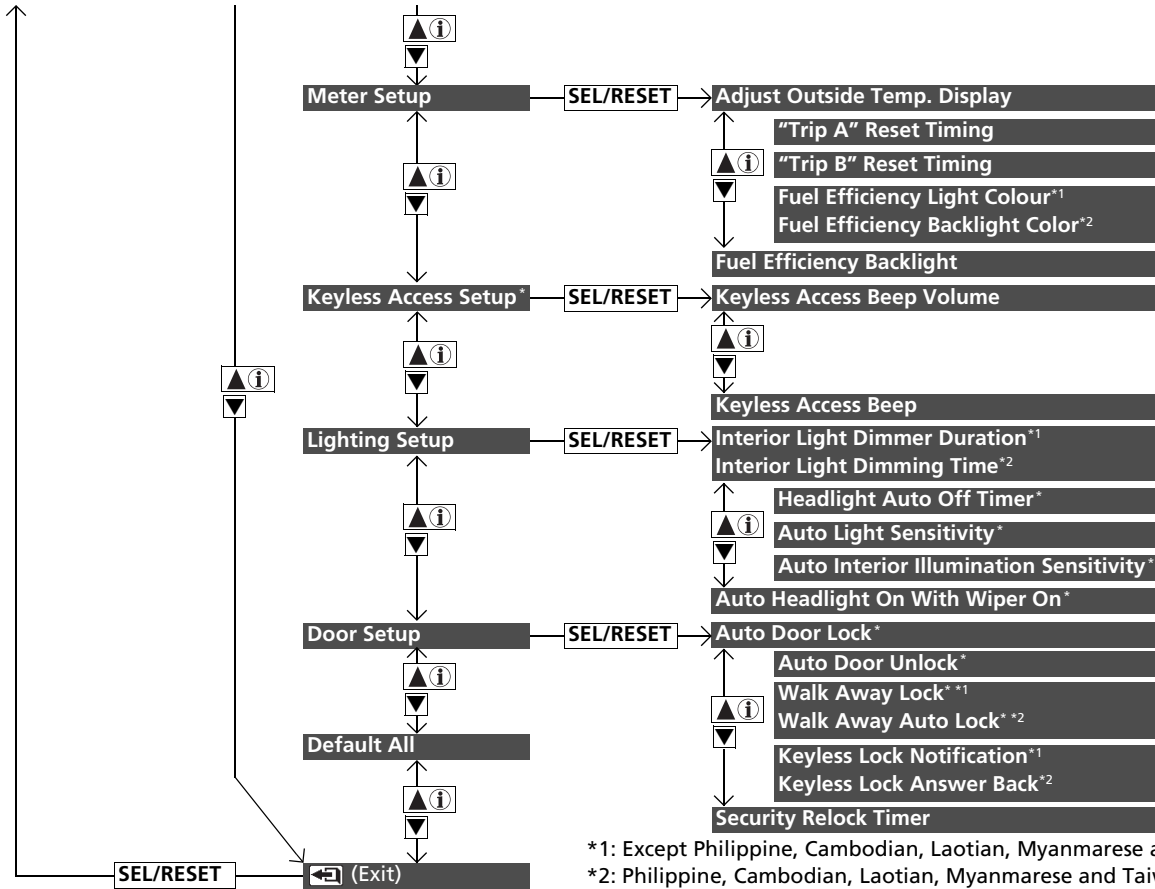
Press the /▼ button.

Instrument Panel



\*1: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models

\*2: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models



\*1: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models

\*2: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models

\* Not available on all models



■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Clock Setup	Adjust Clock	Adjusts the time. ▶ Adjusting the Clock P. 156	—
	Clock Display	Sets time display 12 hour, 24 hour or off.	24h/12h* <sup>1</sup> /OFF
Speed Alarm*	Speed alarm setting* <sup>2</sup>	Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.	Speed alarm 1 On (▶🚗🚦)/Off (▶🚗🚦)* <sup>1</sup> [50 km/h]
			Speed alarm 1 speed setting over 5 km/h with 5 km/h steps
			Speed alarm 2 On (▶🚗🚦)/Off (▶🚗🚦)* <sup>1</sup> [80 km/h]
			Speed alarm 2 speed setting over 5 km/h with 5 km/h steps

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:You can turn the speed alarm on or off while driving.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<div>Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models</div> <b>Deflation Warning System*</b> <div>Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models</div> <b>TPMS Calibration*</b>	—	Initialises the deflation warning system/TPMS.	<div>Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models</div> <b>Cancel/Initialise</b> <div>Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models</div> <b>Cancel/Calibrate</b>
<b>Driver Assist System Setup*</b>	<b>City-Brake Active System*</b>	Turns the City-Brake Active system feature on and off.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Forward Collision Warning Distance</b>	Changes at which distance forward collision warning alerts, or turns the system on and off.	<b>Far/Normal*<sup>1</sup>/Near/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	<b>Adjust Outside Temp. Display</b>	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	<b>-3°C ~ ±0°C*<sup>1</sup> ~ +3°C</b>
	<b>"Trip A" Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	<div>Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models</div> <b>When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset*<sup>1</sup></b> <div>Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models</div> <b>When Refueled/IGN Off/Manually Reset*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>"Trip B" Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	<div>Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models</div> <b>When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset*<sup>1</sup></b> <div>Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models</div> <b>When Refueled/IGN Off/Manually Reset*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<div>Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models</div> <b>Fuel Efficiency Light Colour</b> <div>Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models</div> <b>Fuel Efficiency Backlight Color</b>	Changes the ambient meter colour.	<b>White*<sup>1</sup>/Blue/Purple/Pink/Red/Amber/Yellow/Random</b>
	<b>Fuel Efficiency Backlight</b>	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Keyless Access Setup*</b>	<b>Keyless Access Beep Volume</b>	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	<b>High*<sup>1</sup>/Low</b>
	<b>Keyless Access Beep</b>	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>
<b>Lighting Setup</b>	Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models <b>Interior Light Dimmer Duration</b>	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	<b>60sec/30sec*<sup>1</sup>/15sec</b>
	Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models <b>Interior Light Dimming Time</b>		
	<b>Headlight Auto Off Timer*</b>	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	<b>60sec/30sec/15sec*<sup>1</sup>/0sec</b>
	<b>Auto Light Sensitivity*</b>	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	<b>Max/High/Mid*<sup>1</sup>/Low/Min</b>
	<b>Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity*</b>	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the <b>AUTO</b> position.	<b>Max/High/Mid*<sup>1</sup>/Low/Min</b>
	<b>Auto Headlight On With Wiper On*</b>	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the <b>AUTO</b> position.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Setup	<b>Auto Door Lock*</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	<b>With Vehicle Speed*<sup>1</sup>/Shift From P/OFF</b>
	<b>Auto Door Unlock*</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock.	<b>Shift To P*<sup>1</sup>/IGN OFF/OFF</b>
	Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models <b>Walk Away Lock*</b>	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	<b>ON/OFF*<sup>1</sup></b>
	Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models <b>Walk Away Auto Lock*</b>		
	Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models <b>Keyless Lock Notification</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK - The exterior lights flash.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>
	Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models <b>Keyless Lock Answer Back</b>		
	<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system* to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	<b>90sec/60sec/30sec*<sup>1</sup></b>

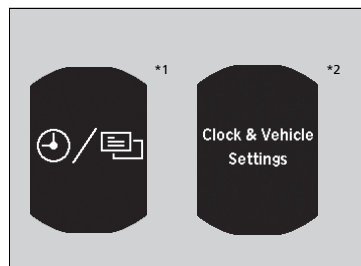
\*1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Default All</b>	—	Cancels/Resets all the customized settings as default.	<div>Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models</div> <div><b>Cancel/OK</b></div> <div>Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models</div> <div><b>Cancel/Set</b></div>

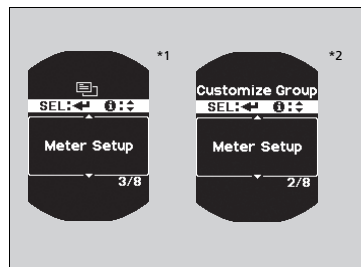
\*1:Default Setting

## ■ Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manual Reset/Manually Reset**.



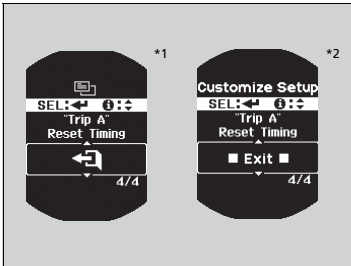
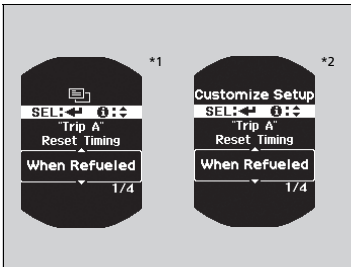
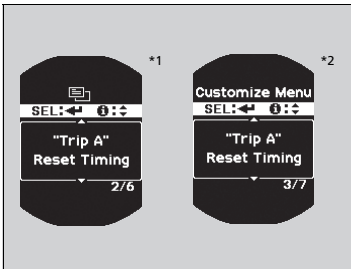
1. Press the button until (customize settings)/**Clock & Vehicle Settings** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.



2. Press the button until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.

\*1: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models

\*2: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Taiwanese models



4. Press the button until **"Trip A"** **Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

► The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Refueled**, **When Ignition Is Turned Off/IGN OFF**, **Manual Reset/Manually Reset**, or (Exit)/**Exit**.

5. Press the button and select **When Refueled**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

► The **When Refueled Setup** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

6. Press the button until (Exit)/**Exit** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

\*1: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

\*2: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models





# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

<b>Clock</b> .....	156
<b>Locking and Unlocking the Doors</b> .....	
Key Types and Functions .....	161
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength*.....	164
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside .....	165
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ..	174
Childproof Door Locks .....	177
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*.....	178
Customizing the Auto Door Locking/ Unlocking Setting* .....	179
<b>Opening and Closing the Tailgate</b> .....	183
<b>Security System</b> .....	
Immobilizer System .....	186
Security System Alarm* .....	186

<b>Opening and Closing the Windows</b> .....	188
<b>Panoramic Roof*</b> .....	191
<b>Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel</b> .....	
Models without keyless access system .....	194
Ignition Switch.....	194
Models with keyless access system .....	
ENGINE START/STOP Button .....	195
Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison....	198
Turn Signals .....	199
Light Switches .....	200
Fog Lights* .....	204
Headlight Adjuster*.....	206
Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)* ...	207
Daytime Running Lights* .....	209

Wipers and Washers.....	210
Brightness Control.....	214
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button.....	216
Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	217
<b>Adjusting the Mirrors</b> .....	
Interior Rearview Mirror.....	218
Power Door Mirrors .....	219
Prism Under Mirror* .....	221
<b>Adjusting the Seats</b> .....	
Front Seats .....	222
Rear Seats .....	228
<b>Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items</b> .....	232
<b>Heating* and Cooling System*</b> .....	245
<b>Climate Control System*</b> .....	249

\* Not available on all models

## Adjusting the Clock




You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch in ON \*1.

### Adjusting the Time

Models with display audio system

#### Using the settings menu on the audio/information screen




1. Select the  (HOME) icon, then select **Settings**.
2. Select **System, Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Adjust the hours and minutes by selecting  / .
4. Select **OK** to set the time.

### Adjusting the Clock


Models with display audio system

The clock in the information display or multi-information display is automatically adjusted along with the audio system's clock display.

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

 **Customized Features** P. 341

You can turn the clock display on and off.

 **Customized Features** P. 348

The clock is automatically updated when your smartphone is connected to the audio system.







 **Smartphone Connection** P. 331

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

# Models with colour audio system



## ■ Using the MENU/CLOCK button



1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.  
▶ **Adjust Clock** is selected.
2. Rotate  to change hour, then press .
3. Rotate  to change minute, then press .
4. To enter the selection, rotate  and select **Set**, then press .



## ▶▶ Adjusting the Time

### Models with colour audio system

These indications are used to show how to operate the **LIST/SELECT** (Selector) knob.  
Rotate  to select.  
Press  to enter.

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 341

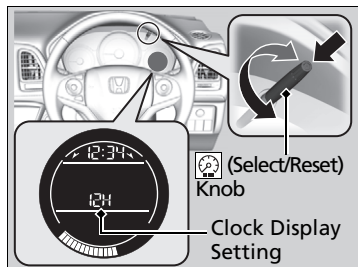
You can also select **Adjust Clock** by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.  
Rotate  to select **Adjust Clock**, then press .




The clock in the information display is automatically adjusted along with the audio system's clock display.

Models without colour audio system and display audio system





Models with information display

### ■ Using the knob in the information display



1. Press the  (select/reset) knob repeatedly to show the clock adjustment display.
  - The clock display begins to blink.
2. Turn the  knob to adjust the time.
  - Turn to the right to increase the minutes. The hour reading goes up by one after 59 is displayed.
  - Turn to the left to decrease the minutes. The hour reading goes down by one after 00 is displayed.
3. Press the  to set the time.

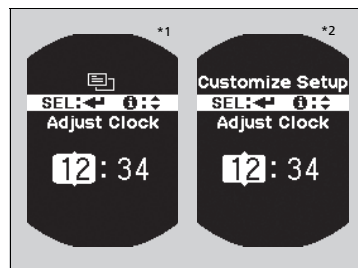
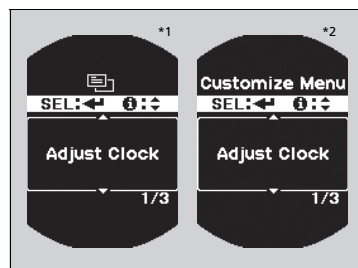
### ■ Changing the clock display

1. Press the  knob repeatedly to show the clock adjustment display.
2. Press and hold the  knob. The clock display setting changes.
  - Pressing the  knob changes the setting between **12h**, **24h** and **OFF**.
  - Select **OFF** to turn off the clock display in the information display.
3. Press the  knob to enter your selection.

Models without colour audio system and display audio system

Models with multi-information display

## ■ Using the customize settings on the multi-information display



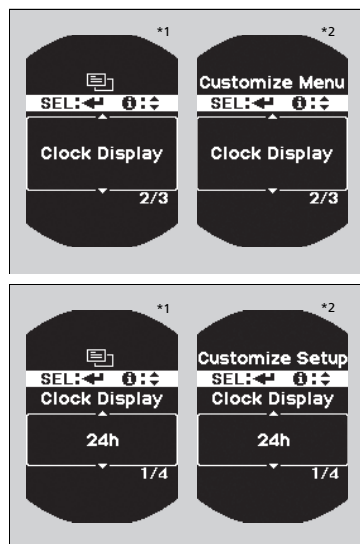
1. Press the / button to select (Customize Settings)\*<sup>1</sup>/Clock & Vehicle Settings\*<sup>2</sup> screen.
2. Press the **SEL/RESET** button to go into **Clock Setup** group.
3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button to go into **Adjust Clock** group.
4. Press the **SEL/RESET** button. The setting display appears.
  - ▶ The hour digits blink.
5. Press the / button to adjust the numbers up or down.
6. Press the **SEL/RESET** button to enter your selection.
  - ▶ The minute digits blink.
7. Press the / button to adjust the numbers up or down.
8. Press the **SEL/RESET** button to enter your selection.
  - ▶ The display will return to the menu display.

\*1: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

\*2: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

Continued

## ■ Changing the clock display



1. Follow the steps 1 and 2 on the previous page.
2. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
3. Press the **▲/▼** button to select **Clock Display** screen.
4. Press the **SEL/RESET** button. The setting display appears.
5. Press the **▲/▼** button to select the setting between **24h**, **12h** and **Off**.
  - Select **Off** to turn off the clock display on the multi-information display.
6. Press the **SEL/RESET** button to enter your selection.
  - The display will return to the menu display.

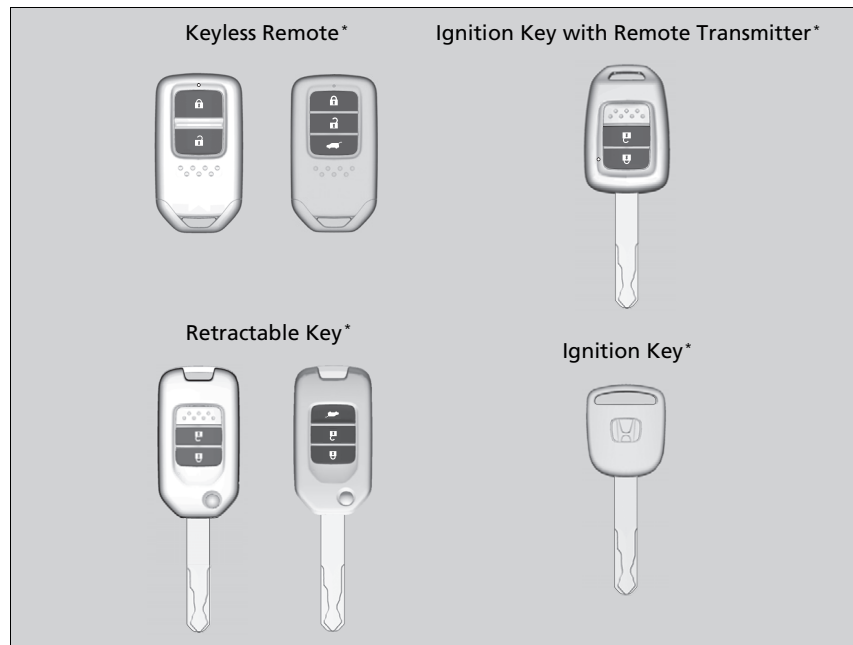
\*1: Except Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

\*2: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmarese and Taiwanese models

## Key Types and Functions

This vehicle comes with the following keys:

Use the key to start and stop the engine, and to lock all the doors and tailgate. You can also use the remote transmitter or keyless access system\* to lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.



\* Not available on all models

### Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

#### Immobilizer System P. 186

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

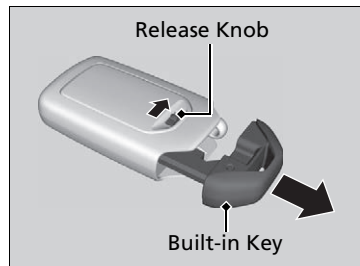
If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter/keyless access system\* may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

Continued



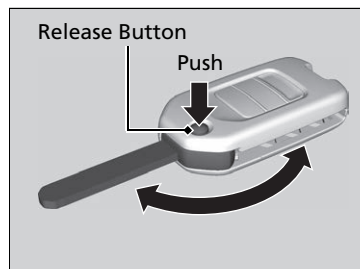
## ■ Built-in Key\*



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors and tailgate\* when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, pull it out while sliding the release knob. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

## ■ Retractable keys\*



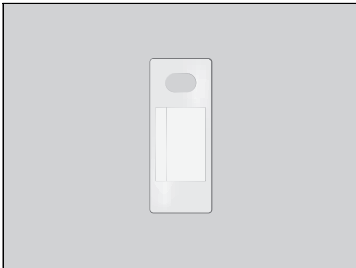
The key folds up inside the remote transmitter.

1. Press the release button to release the key out from the transmitter.  
► Make sure to fully extend the key.
2. To close the key, press the release button then push the key inside the transmitter until you hear a click.

## ▣ Retractable keys\*

If the key is not fully extended, the immobilizer system may not work properly, and the engine may not start. Avoid contact with the key whenever it extends or retracts.

## ■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

## ▣ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.  
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

## Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength\*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

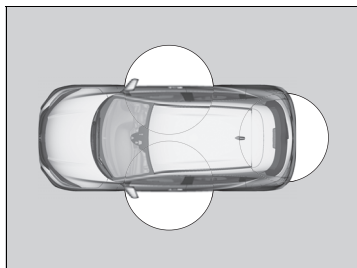
### Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength\*

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

### ■ Using the Keyless Access System \*



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate. You can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle or tailgate release button.

### ▣ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

▣ Interior Lights P. 232

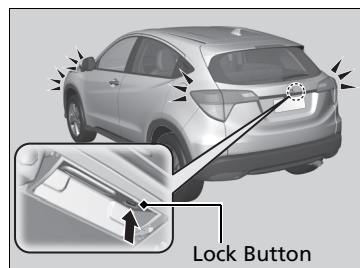
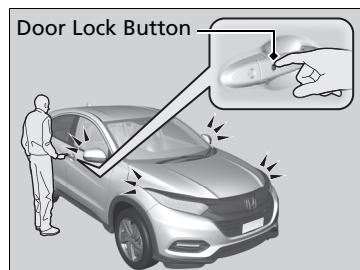
### ▣ Using the Keyless Access System \*

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.

\* Not available on all models



### ■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the door lock button on the front door or the tailgate.

- Some exterior lights flash three times; the beeper sounds three times; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system\* sets.

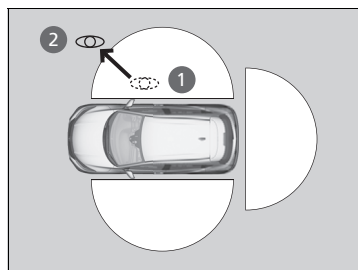
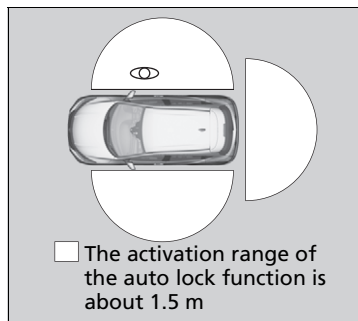
### ►► Using the Keyless Access System\*

- After locking the door, you have up to two seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least two seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

### Models with multi-information display

The beep setting can be customized using the multi-information display.

► Customized Features P. 143



### ■ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)\*

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors and tailgate are closed, and the keyless remote is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle.

Exit vehicle while carrying keyless remote and close door(s) and tailgate.

1. While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.

► The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

2. Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.

► Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and tailgate will then lock.

### ▣ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)\*

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the multi-information display.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the multi-information display, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

► **Customized Features** P. 143

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors and tailgate are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door or tailgate after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be delayed until all doors and tailgate are closed.

When all doors and tailgate have been closed and the keyless remote is inside the vehicle, or if the keyless remote is not detected within about 1.5 m of the vehicle, auto lock function will not be activated.

\* Not available on all models

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:  
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.  
► The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function
- Walk away at least more than about 1.5 m away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote.
- Open any door.

#### ► Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)\*

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

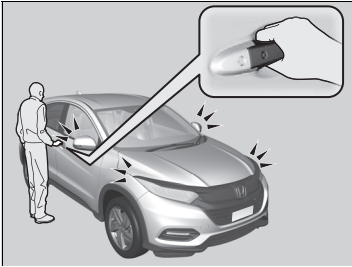
- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door, tailgate or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors and tailgate.

#### **Auto lock function operation stop beeper**

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote is put inside the tailgate.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.



## ■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

### Except African right-hand drive models

Grab the front door handle:

- All the doors and tailgate unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds.

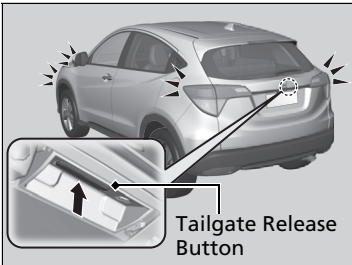
### African right-hand drive models

Grab the driver's door handle:

- The driver's door unlocks.
- Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds once.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

- All the doors and tailgate unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds once.



Press the tailgate release button:

### Except African right-hand drive models

- All the doors and tailgate unlock.

### African right-hand drive models

- The tailgate unlocks.

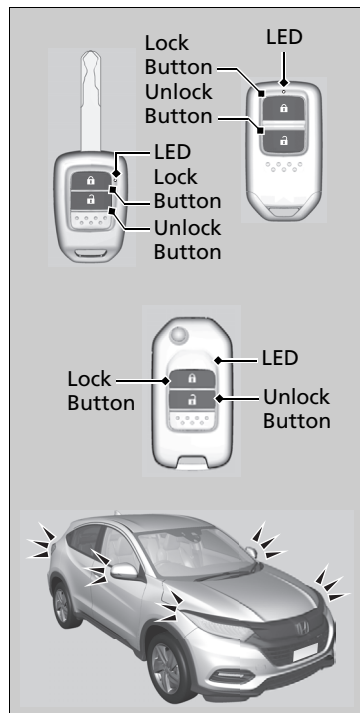
### All models

- Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds once.

🔑 **Using the Tailgate Release Button** P. 184



## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter



### ■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the lock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system\* sets.

### ▶▶ Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

#### Models with multi-information display

You can change the relock timer setting.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 143

## ■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

### Except African right-hand drive models

- Some exterior lights flash once, and all doors and the tailgate unlock.

### African right-hand drive models

#### Once:

- Some exterior lights flash once, and the driver's door unlock.

#### Twice:

- The remaining doors and tailgate unlock.

## » Using the Remote Transmitter

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

### Models without keyless access system

The remote transmitter will not work when the key is in the ignition switch.

### Models with keyless access system

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

### Except African right-hand drive models

The remote transmitter will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

### African right-hand drive models

The remote transmitter will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

### All models

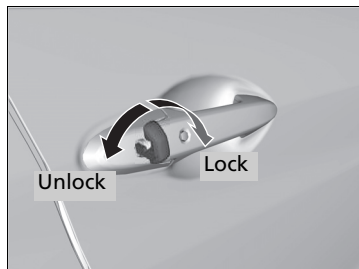
If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➤ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 552

## ■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the remote does not work, use the key instead.  
Fully insert the key and turn it.



## ► Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and the tailgate lock at the same time.

### Latin American models

When you unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and tailgate unlock at the same time.

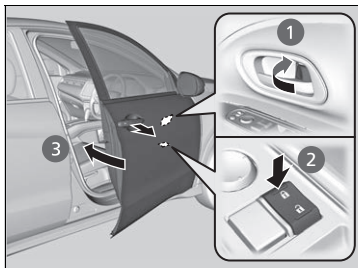
### Except Latin American models with security system alarm

Unlocking the doors with the key causes the security system to alarm. Always unlock the doors with the remote transmitter.

### Models with retractable key

If you are using the retractable key, make sure it is fully extended.

## ■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key



If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.

### ■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch\* in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

### ■ Locking the passengers' doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

## ■ Lockout prevention system

### Models without keyless access system

The doors and the tailgate cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch.

### Models with keyless access system

The doors and the tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

## ► Locking a Door Without Using a Key

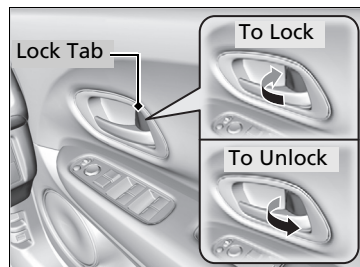
When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

\* Not available on all models

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

### ■ Using the Lock Tab



#### ■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

#### ■ Unlocking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

### »» Using the Lock Tab

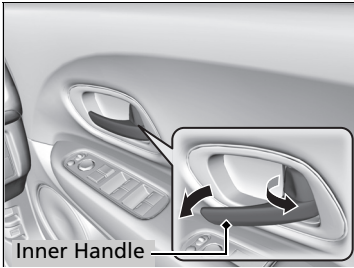
#### ■ Except African right-hand drive models

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

#### ■ African right-hand drive models

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the tailgate lock at the same time. When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

## ■ Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle



Pull the driver's door inner handle.

- The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

African right-hand drive and Latin American models

The front passenger's door also unlocks and opens in one motion.

## ► Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle

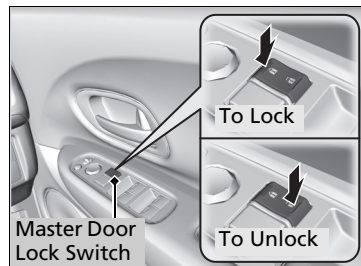
The driver's and front passenger's\* door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

► **Childproof Door Locks** P. 177

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch\*



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

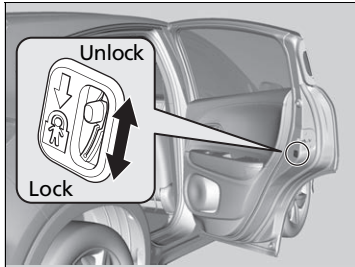
## ► Using the Master Door Lock Switch\*

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

## Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

### ■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

### ■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

### ⌘ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.



## Auto Door Locking/Unlocking\*

Your vehicle locks all doors or unlocks all doors/the driver's door automatically when a certain condition is met.

### ■ Auto Door Locking

#### ■ Drive lock mode

All doors and the tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

### ■ Auto Door Unlocking

Continuously variable transmission models

#### ■ Park unlock mode

Except African models

All doors and the tailgate unlock when the transmission is put into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

African models

The driver's door unlocks when the transmission is put into **P** with the brake pedal depressed. The setting can be changed to unlock all doors.

Manual transmission models

#### ■ Ignition switch unlock mode

All doors and the tailgate unlock when the ignition switch is moved out of ON **II**.

### ► Auto Door Locking/Unlocking\*

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the master door lock switch.

#### ► Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting\* P. 179

Models with multi-information display

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the multi-information display.

#### ► Customized Features P. 143

## Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting \*

You can customize the auto door locking/unlocking setting to your liking using the master door lock switch.

### List of the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Customizable Options

#### ■ Auto door locking

Mode	Description
<b>Drive Lock Mode</b> * <sup>1</sup>	All doors and the tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.
Continuously variable transmission models <b>Park Lock Mode</b>	All doors and the tailgate lock when the brake pedal is depressed and the transmission is taken out of <b>P</b> .
<b>Off</b>	The auto door locking is deactivated all the time.

#### ■ Auto door unlocking

Mode	Description
Continuously variable transmission models <b>Park Unlock Mode</b>	<div>Except African models</div> All doors and the tailgate unlock when the transmission is put into <b>P</b> with the brake pedal depressed* <sup>2</sup> . <div>African models</div> Driver's door unlocks* <sup>1</sup> /All doors and the tailgate unlock when the transmission is put into <b>P</b> with the brake pedal depressed.
<b>Ignition Switch Unlock Mode</b>	<div>Except African models</div> All doors and the tailgate unlock when the ignition switch is moved out of ON <b>II</b> * <sup>3,*4</sup> . <div>African models</div> Driver's door unlocks/All doors and the tailgate unlock when the ignition switch is moved out of <b>II</b> * <sup>4</sup> .
<b>Off</b>	The auto door unlocking is deactivated all the time.

\*1:Default setting

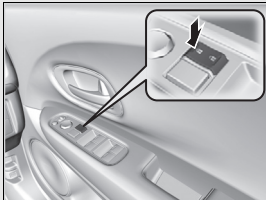
\*2:Default setting for continuously variable transmission models

\*3:Default setting for manual transmission models

\*4:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

■ Customizing Flow for Auto Door Locking Options


Steps	Drive Lock Mode	Park Lock Mode* <sup>1</sup>	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Make sure the shift lever is in <b>P</b> * <sup>1</sup> .		
2	Turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b> * <sup>2</sup> . Push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice without depressing the brake pedal* <sup>3</sup> .		
3	The driver's door must be closed at this stage.		Open the driver's door.
4	Move the shift lever out of <b>P</b> * <sup>1</sup> with the brake pedal depressed.	—	
5	Press and hold the front of the master door lock switch on the driver's door. You will hear a click more than five seconds elapsed. Release the switch.  		
6	Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> * <sup>1</sup> .	—	
7	Turn the ignition switch to LOCK <b>0</b> within 20 seconds* <sup>2</sup> . Push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button once without depressing the brake pedal within 20 seconds* <sup>3</sup> . ▶ Customization is completed.		

\*1:Continuously variable transmission models only

\*2:Models without keyless access system

\*3:Models with keyless access system

## Customizing Flow for Auto Door Unlocking Options

Steps	Ignition Switch Unlock Mode		Park Unlock Mode*2		Off
	To unlock driver's door*1	To unlock all doors	To unlock driver's door*1	To unlock all doors	
1	Apply the parking brake. Make sure the shift lever is in <b>P</b> *2.				
2	Turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b> *3. Push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice without depressing the brake pedal*4.				
3	The driver's door must be closed at this stage.				Open the driver's door.
4	Move the shift lever out of <b>P</b> with the brake pedal depressed*2.		—		
5	Press and hold the rear of the master door lock switch on the driver's door. You will hear a click more than five seconds elapsed.				
					

\*1:African models only

\*2:Continuously variable transmission models only

\*3:Models without keyless access system

\*4:Models with keyless access system

Steps	Ignition Switch Unlock Mode		Park Unlock Mode*2		Off
	To unlock driver's door*1	To unlock all doors	To unlock driver's door*1	To unlock all doors	
6.	Release the switch.	<div>Except African models</div> Release the switch. <div>African models</div> Keep pressing the switch for another five seconds to hear one more click.	Release the switch.	<div>Except African models</div> Release the switch. <div>African models</div> Keep pressing the switch for another five seconds to hear one more click.	Release the switch.
7.	Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> *2.		—		
8.	Turn the ignition switch to LOCK <b>0</b> within 20 seconds*3. Push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button once without depressing the brake pedal within 20 seconds*4. ▶ Customization is completed.				

\*1:African models only  
\*2:Continuously variable transmission only  
\*3:Models without keyless access system  
\*4:Models with keyless access system

## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  - ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.
  - 🚫 **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 92

### ⚠️ Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

#### **⚠️ WARNING**

**Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.**

**Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.**

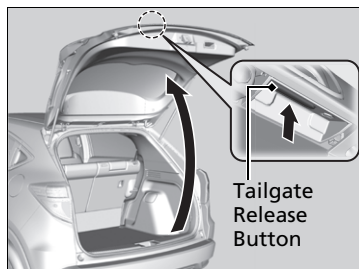
Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

## Using the Tailgate Release Button



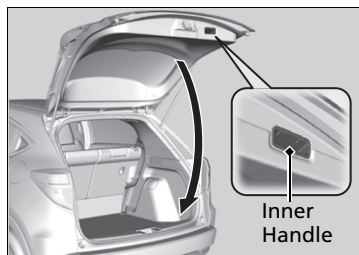
When all the doors are unlocked or press the tailgate unlock button\* on the remote transmitter, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the tailgate release button and lift open the tailgate.

### Models with keyless access system

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

### All models

To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.



### African right-hand drive models

If you close the tailgate when the driver's door is locked, the tailgate locks automatically.

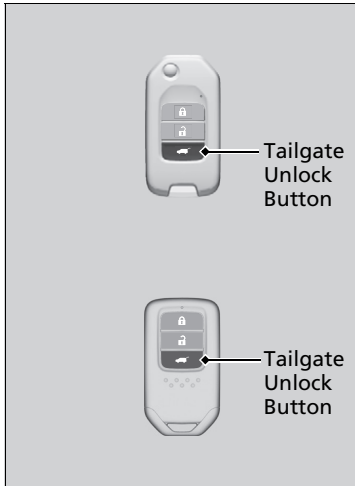
► Some exterior lights flash three times.

## ►► Using the Tailgate Release Button

### Models with keyless access system

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.
- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the luggage area and close the tailgate. The tailgate cannot be closed.

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter\*



Press the tailgate unlock button to unlock the tailgate.

## ►► Using the Remote Transmitter\*

If you have unlocked and opened the tailgate using the remote transmitter, or keyless remote, when closing, the tailgate locks automatically.

\* Not available on all models



## Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch or pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.


## Security System Alarm \*

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are opened without the key\*, the remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.

### ■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

### ■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the key (Latin American models), the remote transmitter or keyless access system\*, or the ignition switch is turned to ON \*<sup>1</sup>. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### » Immobilizer System

#### NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.

Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact your dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your engine, contact a dealer.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

### » Security System Alarm \*

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and some exterior lights will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

## ■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in LOCK **[0]**\*1.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, the remote transmitter, or keyless access system\*.

### Models without keyless access system

- The key has been removed from the ignition switch.

## ■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks. When the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds, the security system alarm is set.

## ■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key (Latin American models), the remote transmitter, keyless access system\* or the ignition switch is turned to ON **[II]**\*1. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ►► Security System Alarm\*

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.


If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may activate once the battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key (Latin American models), the remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.

### Except Latin American models

Do not unlock the door using the key. The security system alarm activates.

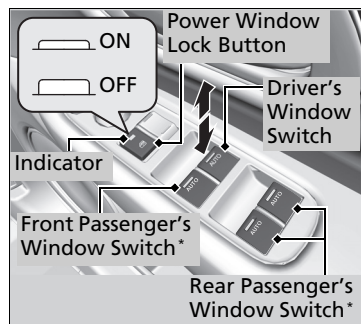
## Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>, using the switches on the doors. The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

### Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



#### Manual operation

**To open:** Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

#### Automatic operation

**To open:** Push the switch down firmly.

**To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### Opening/Closing the Power Windows


#### **WARNING**

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.


**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

#### African right-hand drive models

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK <sup>\*1</sup>.


Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

#### Australian and New Zealand models

The power windows can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK <sup>\*1</sup>.

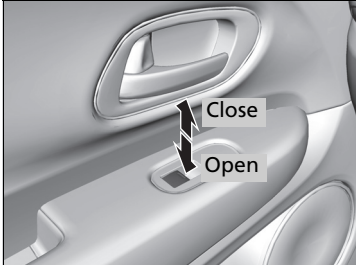
Opening either front door cancels this function.

#### Other models

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK <sup>\*1</sup>.

Opening either front door cancels this function.

## ■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function \*



**To open:** Push the switch down.

**To close:** Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

## ▣ Opening/Closing the Power Windows

### Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

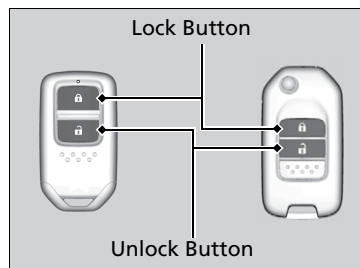
The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

You cannot fully open the rear windows.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Opening/Closing\* Windows and Panoramic Roof\* with the Remote\*



**To open:** Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

**To close\*:** Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows and panoramic roof stop midway, repeat the procedure.

## ■ Closing Windows and Panoramic Roof\* with the Key\*



**To close:** Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows and panoramic roof at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

## ►► Closing Windows and Panoramic Roof\* with the Key\*

### Except Latin American models

Unlocking the doors with the key causes the security system to alarm. Always unlock the doors with the remote transmitter.

### Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

You can operate the panoramic roof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the panoramic roof.

#### ☒ Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

#### **WARNING**

Opening or closing the panoramic roof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the panoramic roof before opening or closing it.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

#### **NOTICE**

Opening the panoramic roof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the panoramic roof panel or motor.

#### **Australian and New Zealand models with 1.8 L engine**

The panoramic roof and sunshade can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Opening either front door cancels this function.

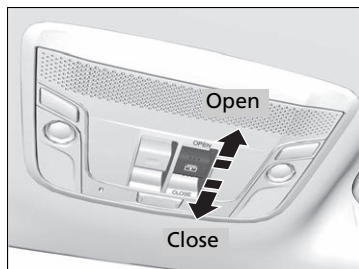
#### **Except Australian and New Zealand models with 1.8 L engine**

The panoramic roof and sunshade can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Opening either front door cancels this function.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Using the Sunshade Switch



### ■ Automatic operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunshade automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunshade midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

## ► Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the panoramic roof and sunshade to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the panoramic roof and sunshade are almost closed to ensure that they fully close.

### ► Australian and New Zealand models with 1.8 L engine

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the panoramic roof.

► **Opening/Closing\* Windows and Panoramic Roof\* with the Remote\*** P. 190

► **Closing Windows and Panoramic Roof\* with the Key\*** P. 190

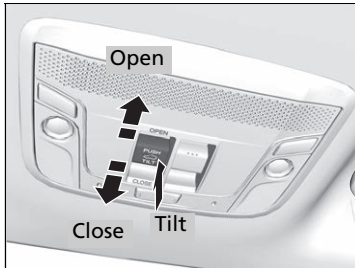
## ► Using the Sunshade Switch

The sunshade can be opened or closed to adjust the amount of light that enters the cabin.

When you use the sunshade switch to open the sunshade, the panoramic roof does not move.

The sunshade cannot be fully closed if the panoramic roof is open. When you close the sunshade with the panoramic roof open, the sunshade stops close to the panoramic roof glass. When you push the switch forward again, the sunshade and the panoramic roof close together.

## ■ Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



### ■ Automatic operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The panoramic roof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the panoramic roof midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

### ■ Tilting the panoramic roof up

**To tilt:** Push on the centre of the panoramic roof switch.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

## ▶▶ Using the Panoramic Roof Switch

Whenever the panoramic roof is opening, the sunshade moves along with it. However, when the panoramic roof is closing, the sunshade does not move.

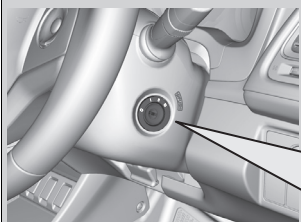
When you tilt open the panoramic roof, the sunshade opens slightly to let in fresh air. When you close the panoramic roof from this position, the sunshade returns to its closed position.



# Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel

Models without keyless access system

## Ignition Switch



- 0 LOCK:** Insert and remove the key in this position.
- I ACCESSORY:** Operate the audio system\* and other accessories in this position.
- II ON:** This is the position when driving.
- III START:** This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON **II** when you let go of the key.

### Ignition Switch

Manual transmission models

## ⚠ WARNING

Removing the key from the ignition switch while driving locks the steering. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

Remove the key from the ignition switch only when parked.

Continuously variable transmission models

You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in **P**.



All models

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK **0** or ACCESSORY **I**, a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key out.

The buzzer will stop when you take the key out.

Models with multi-information display

When the warning buzzer sounds, the following messages appear on the multi-information display:

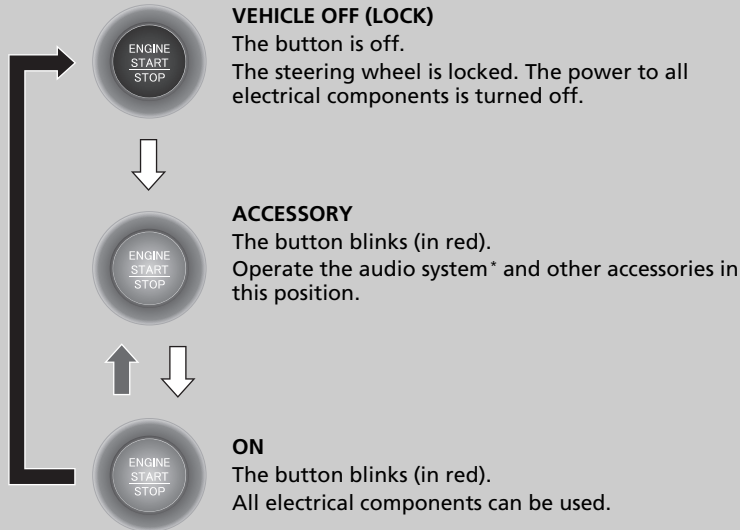
- In LOCK **0**: the symbol  with an **Ignition Key**
  - In ACCESSORY **I**: the symbol  with a
- Return IGN Switch To (0) Position**

If the key won't turn from LOCK **0** to ACCESSORY **I**, turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.

Models with keyless access system

## ENGINE START/STOP Button

### Changing the Power Mode



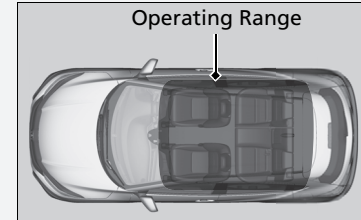
**Without depressing the brake pedal**

- ➡ Press the button.
- ➡ Press the button without the shift lever in **P**.
- ➡ Shift to **P** then press the button.

### ENGINE START/STOP Button

#### ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range

You can start the engine when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.



If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

➡ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 587

The engine may also run if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on (in red), if the engine is running.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in **P** and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock.

You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

🔧 **Changing the Power Mode** P. 195

## 🔧 ENGINE START/STOP Button

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

## ■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is in **ACCESSORY**, a warning beep sounds.

## ■ Keyless Remote Reminder

Models with information display



Models with multi-information display



Warning buzzers may sound from inside and/or outside the vehicle to remind you that the keyless remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it to be within its operational range.

### ■ When the power mode is in **ON**

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, a warning buzzer sounds from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the information display or multi-information display notifies the driver inside that the remote is outside of the vehicle.

### ■ When the power mode is in **ACCESSORY**

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all the doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

## ⌘ Keyless Remote Reminder










When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

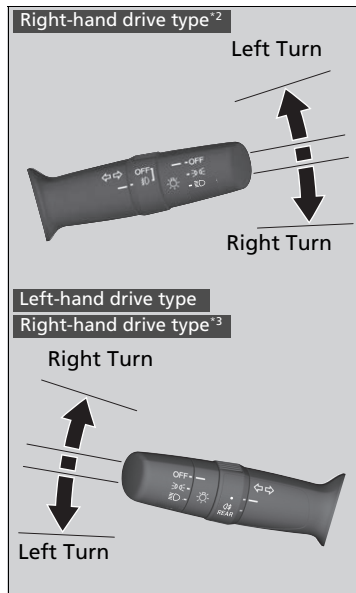
Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to activate. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also activate even if the remote is within the system's operational range.


# Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch Position	LOCK 0 (with/without the key) 	ACCESSORY I 	ON II 	START III 
Without Keyless Access System	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.</li><li>• The steering wheel is locked.</li><li>• No electrical components can be used.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Engine is turned off.</li><li>• Some electrical components such as the audio system* and the accessory power socket can be operated.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Normal key position while driving.</li><li>• All electrical components can be used.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use this position to start the engine.</li><li>• The ignition switch returns to the ON II position when you release the key.</li></ul>
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) 	ACCESSORY 	ON   Button is: Blinking On	START 
With Keyless Access System and <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> Button	Button-Off <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.</li><li>• The steering wheel is locked.</li><li>• No electrical components can be used.</li></ul>	Button-Blinking <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Engine is turned off.</li><li>• Some electrical components such as the audio system* and the accessory power socket can be operated.</li></ul>	Button-Blinking (engine is turned off) On (engine is running) <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• All electrical components can be used.</li></ul>	Button-On <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.</li></ul>

Controls

## Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

### ■ One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

This feature can be used when signalling for a lane change.

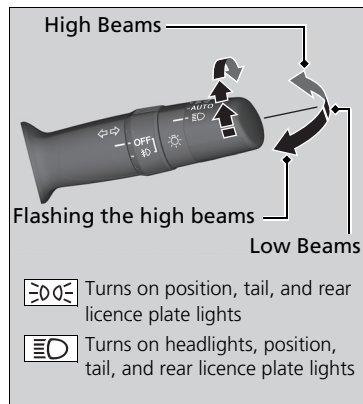
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Except African right-hand drive models

\*3: African right-hand drive models

## Light Switches

### Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the position of the ignition switch\*1.

#### High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

#### Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

#### Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

#### Malaysian models

#### Taiwanese models with automatic lighting control

#### Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The shift lever is in **[P]**.
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is moved out of **[P]** and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Light Switches

#### Models without keyless access system

If you remove the key from the ignition switch while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

#### Models with keyless access system

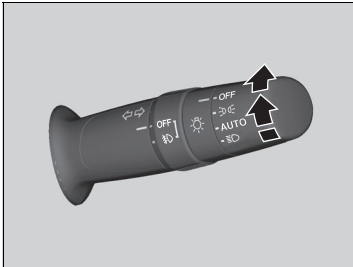
If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.


#### Models without head light adjust function

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

## Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)\*



Automatic lighting control can be used when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

**Except Malaysian and Taiwanese models**

When you turn the light switch to **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

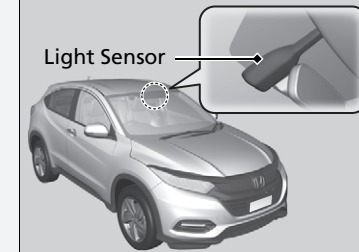
## Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)\*

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.

**African, Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian, Myanmar and Vietnamese models**

**Thai models without city-brake activate system**



\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*





#### Malaysian and Taiwanese models

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

#### Malaysian models

The headlights come on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

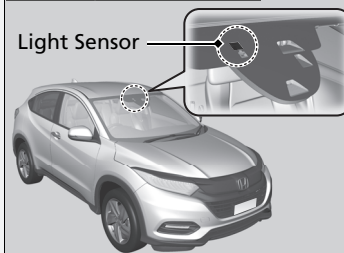
- Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

#### ►► Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)\*

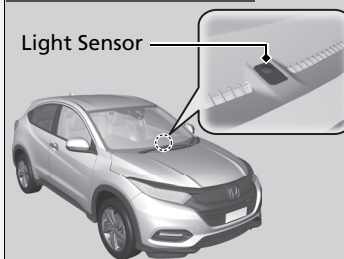
The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.

Australian and New Zealand models with 1.8 L engine with automatic intermittent wipers

Thai models with city-brake activate system



Models without automatic intermittent wipers




## ■ Headlight Integration with Wiper\*

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

## ■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you remove the key or set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK \*1 with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO**\* position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ►► Headlight Integration with Wiper\*

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.

The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

## ►► Automatic Lighting Off Feature

### Models with multi-information display

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

► **Customized Features** P. 143

## Fog Lights\*

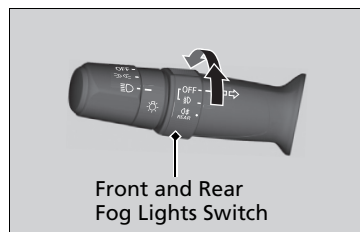
### ■ Front fog lights\*

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

### ■ Rear fog light\*

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights are on.

### ■ Front and Rear Fog Lights\*



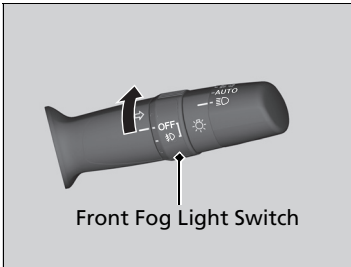
#### ■ To turn the front fog lights on

Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the **F** position. The **F** indicator comes on.

#### ■ To turn the front and rear fog lights on

Rotate the switch one position up from the **F** position. The **F** and **R** indicator comes on.

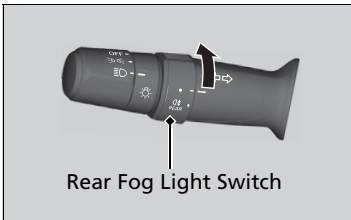
## ■ Front Fog Lights\*



### ■ To turn the front fog lights on

Rotate the switch to the **F**. The **F** indicator comes on.

## ■ Rear Fog Lights\*

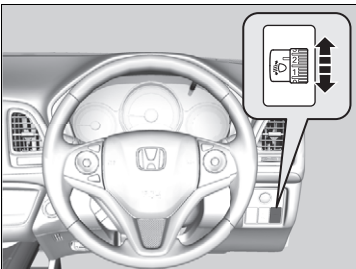


### ■ To turn the rear fog lights on

Rotate the switch to the **R**. The **R** indicator comes on.

\* Not available on all models

# Headlight Adjuster\*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

## ■ To select the adjustment dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	
Five persons in the front and rear seats	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limit of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	2
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ▶▶ Headlight Adjuster\*

### Models with LED low beam headlights

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

### Malaysian models with LED low beam headlights

The headlights are suitable for left hand drive and right hand drive, without the need to make any adjustments or masking, as per UN-ECE R48 Dover Regulation.

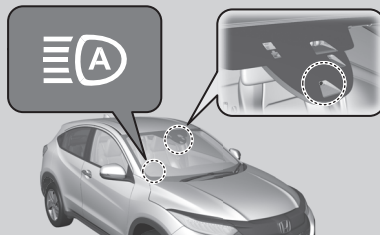
The headlights are suitable for both right and left hand traffic. You do not need to alter the headlight beam distribution.

## Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)\*

Using a camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, this system detects light sources ahead of the vehicle. Depending on the light source, the system automatically switches the headlights to high beam for optimal visibility at night.

### The system operates when:

- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The low beams are on and the system recognises that you are driving at night.
- The vehicle speed is above 40 km/h.



### Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)\*

The auto high-beam determines when to change the headlight beams by responding to the brightness of the lights ahead of your vehicle. In the following cases, the system may not respond to the lights properly:

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Other light sources, such as streetlights and electric billboards are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or with many curves.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

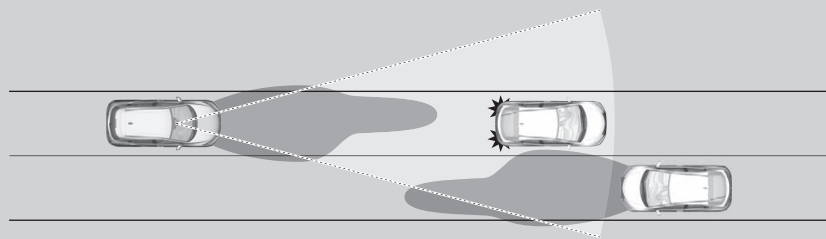
If you do not want the system to be activated at any time when the headlight switch is in **AUTO**, consult a dealer.

### How it works

When the camera detects lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights remain in low beam.

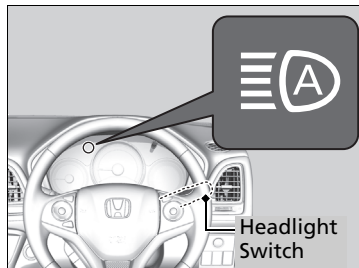
When the camera detects no lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights change to high beam.

The view angle or distance that the camera can detect lights ahead differs depending on conditions, such as the brightness of the lights and the weather.



\* Not available on all models

## ■ Operating the System



To activate the system, turn the headlight switch to **AUTO** and then set the headlights to low beam. The auto high-beam indicator will come on.

➤ **Light Switches** P. 200

The high beams remain on unless:

- You have been driving below 24 km/h for an extended amount of time.
- The speed of the vehicle drops below 10 km/h.
- The windscreen wipers have been running at a high speed for more than a few seconds.
- You enter a well lit location.

The high beams come back on once the condition that caused them to turn off no longer exists.


If needed, you can temporarily turn the system off manually. Turn on the high beams by pushing the lever forward until you hear a click, or flash the high beams once by pulling the lever toward you. To turn the system back on, pull and hold the lever towards you for a few seconds.

## ►► Operating the System


For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean. When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

If the  message appears:


- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the  message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## Daytime Running Lights\*

The daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in ON \*1.
- The headlight switch is off.

Turning the ignition switch to LOCK [0] or setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the head light switch is in **AUTO**\* and it is getting darker outside.

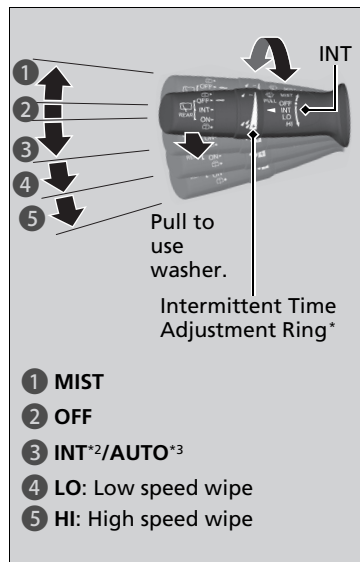
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models



## Wipers and Washers

### ■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

#### ■ MIST

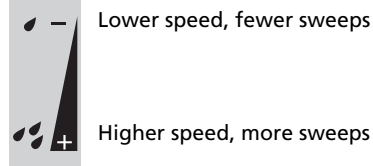
The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

#### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT<sup>\*2</sup>/AUTO<sup>\*3</sup>, LO, HI)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

#### ■ Adjusting wiper operation\*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



#### ■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

### ►► Wipers and Washers

#### NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

#### NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

#### Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens. When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting and the LO setting become the same.

#### NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

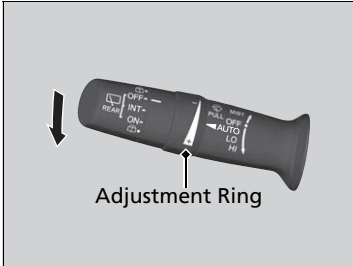
The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Models without automatic intermittent wipers

\*3: Models with automatic intermittent wipers

## Automatic Intermittent Wipers\*



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

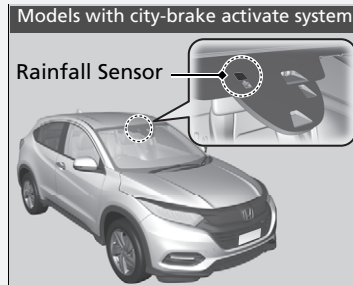
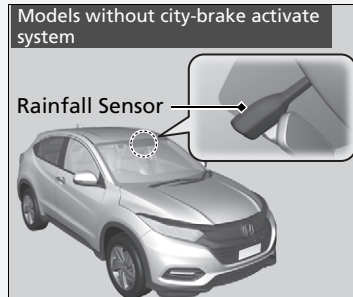
## Wipers and Washers

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY **I** or LOCK **0**\*<sup>1</sup>, then remove the obstacle.

## Automatic Intermittent Wipers\*

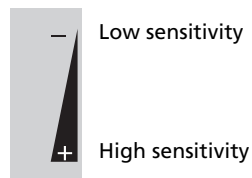
The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



## ■ **AUTO sensitivity adjustment**

When in **AUTO**, you can also adjust the rainfall sensor sensitivity using the adjustment ring.

### Sensor sensitivity



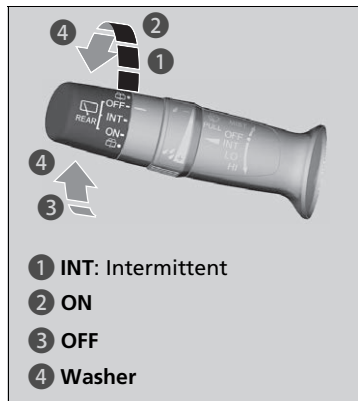
### » Automatic Intermittent Wipers\*

#### NOTICE

**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situation in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

## ■ Rear Wiper/Washer



The rear wiper and washer can be used when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

### ■ Washer

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.

Hold it to activate the wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, it stops operating after a few more sweeps.

## ■ Operating in reverse

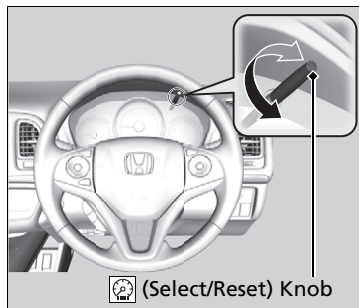
When you shift the transmission to with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.



Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
INT* (Intermittent)	Intermittent
AUTO* (Intermittent)	
LO (Low speed wipe)	Continuous
HI (High speed wipe)	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Brightness Control



When the ignition switch is in ON \*<sup>1</sup>, you can use the  (Select/Reset) knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.


**Brighten:** Turn the knob to the right.

**Dim:** Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beep\* when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. The information display/multi-information display will return to its original state several seconds after you adjust the brightness.

### » Brightness Control

Instrument panel brightness varies, depending on whether the exterior lights are on or off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when they are on.

Pressing the  knob switches the display.

To cancel the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds\*.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

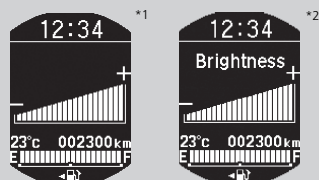
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

Models with information display



Models with multi-information display




\*1: Except Taiwanese models

\*2: Taiwanese models

## ■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the information display/multi-information display while you are adjusting it.

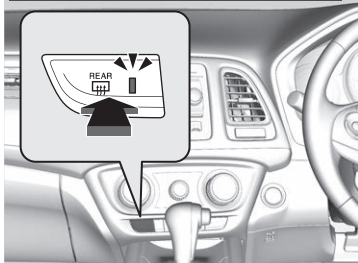
## Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror\* Button

Press the rear demister button or touch the icon to defog the rear window and door mirrors\* when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

### Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror\* Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

Models with heating\* and cooling system

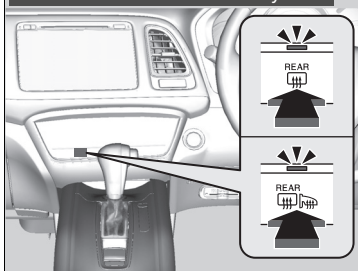


Models with climate control system

The rear demister and heated door mirror\* automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature.

However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

Models with climate control system

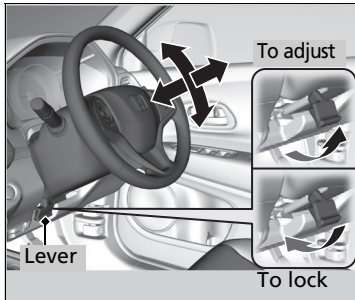


\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
  - The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
  - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
  - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

### Adjusting the Steering Wheel

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

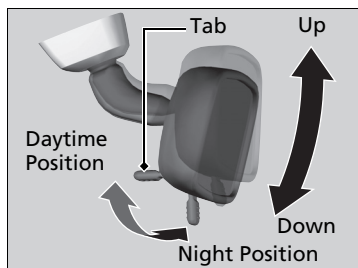
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.



## Interior Rearview Mirror

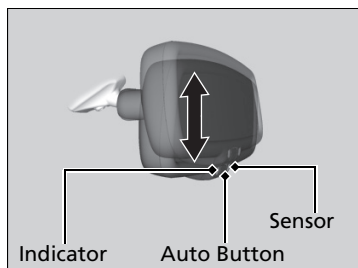
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

### Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions\*



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the auto button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the auto indicator comes on.

### Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

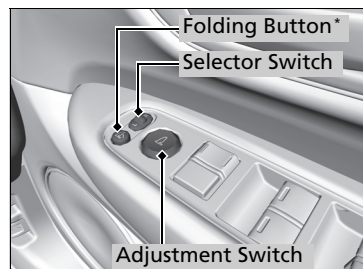
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

➤ **Front Seats** P. 222

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*

The auto dimming function cancels when the shift lever is in **R**.

## Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1.

### ■ Mirror position adjustment

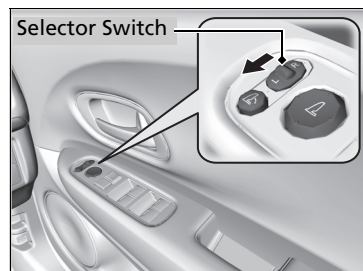
**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

### ■ Folding door mirrors\*

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

### ■ Reverse Tilt Door Mirror\*



If activated, passenger side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the transmission into **R**; this improves close-in visibility on the passenger side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you take the transmission out of **R**.

To activate this feature, turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*1, and slide the selector switch to the passenger's side.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function \*

### ■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the remote transmitter or the door lock button on either front outside door handle or the tailgate twice within 10 seconds, and hold it.

- You can release the button once the mirrors start folding in automatically.

### ■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the tailgate using the remote transmitter, or grab either front outside door handle or press the tailgate release button and unlock all doors and the tailgate. Open the driver's door.

- The mirrors start folding out automatically.

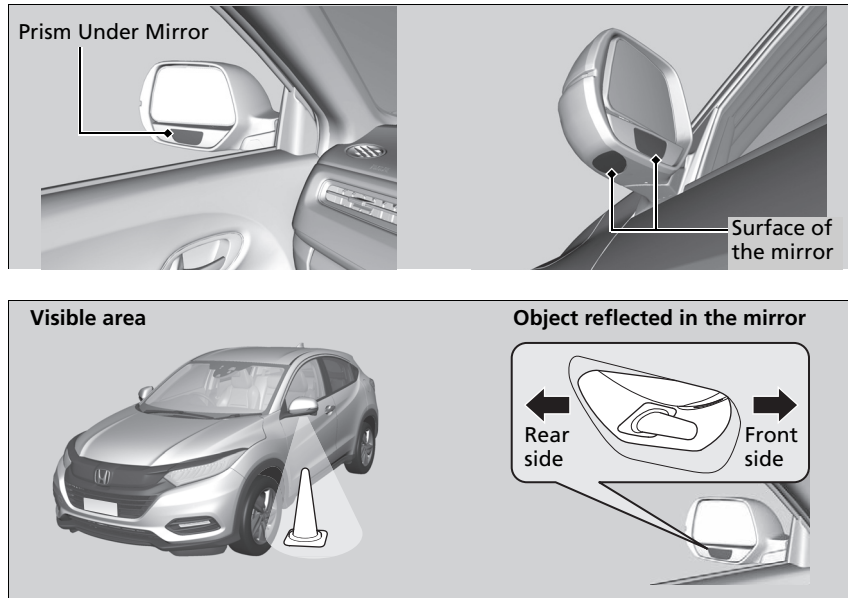
## ⌘ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function \*

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

## Prism Under Mirror\*

Attached to the under side of the passenger's side door mirror, the prism under mirror can be used by the driver to check the blind spot below the passenger's door. This mirror is particularly useful when parking or starting the vehicle.



### Prism Under Mirror\*

**To ensure proper visibility, follow the advise below so that the mirrors do not fog up or become scratched.**

- Do not apply water repellents or waxes to the mirrors.
- Do not scrape away ice if the mirrors are frozen. Instead, melt the ice by applying hot water.
- Do not wipe the mirrors with a cloth containing abrasive matter, such as sand or compounds.
- When wiping away any dirt or raindrops, use a clean cloth.

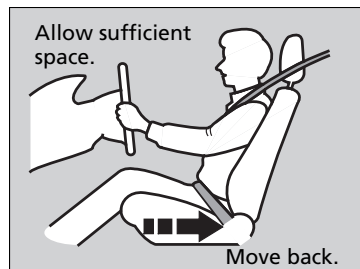
If the mirrors are deposited with wax or any other matter which cannot be washed away with water, wipe the mirrors with a clean soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent.

Do not rely solely on your mirrors. Always look around your vehicle.

The prism under mirror cannot be adjusted.

\* Not available on all models

## Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

### Adjusting the Seats

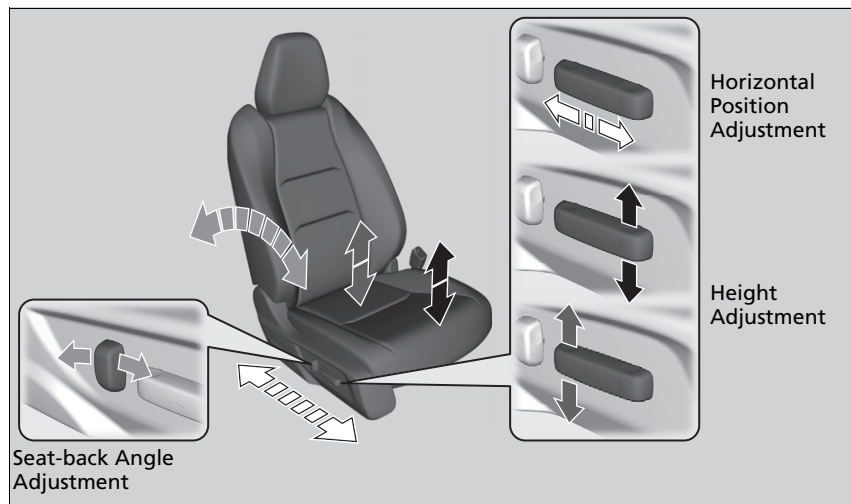
#### **⚠ WARNING**

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

### Adjusting the Seat Positions

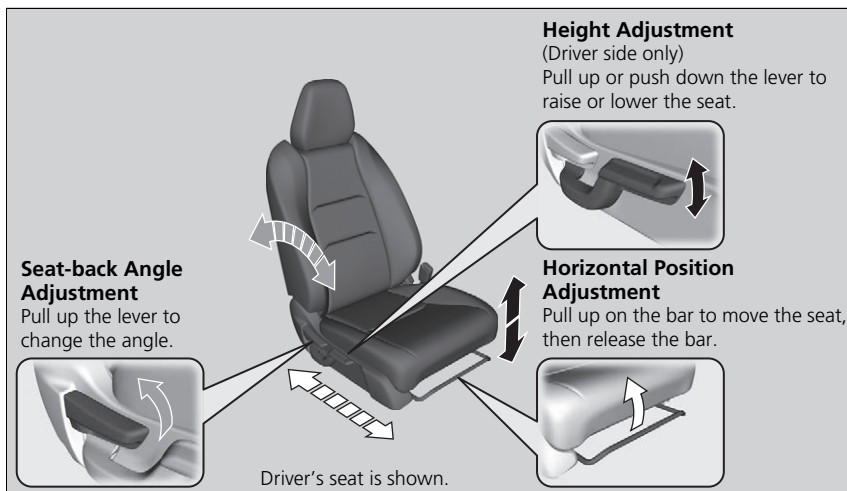
#### Adjusting the driver's power seat\*



In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

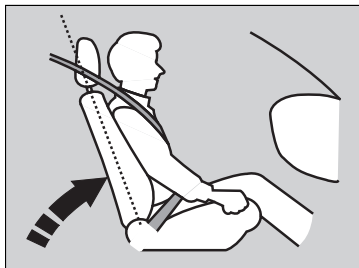
## ■ Adjusting the front seat(s)



## ►► Adjusting the Seats

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

## ■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

## ►► Adjusting the Seat-Backs

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.**

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

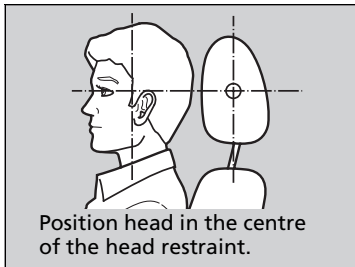
Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

## Head Restraints

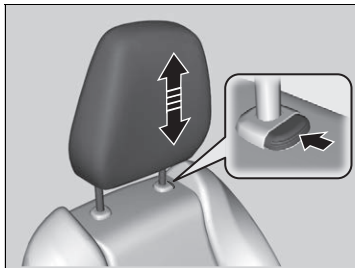
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

### ■ Adjusting the Head Restraints



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

### ■ Adjusting the front head restraint positions



**To raise the head restraint:** Pull it upward.

**To lower the head restraint:** Push it down while pressing the release button.

### ▶▶ Adjusting the Head Restraints

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

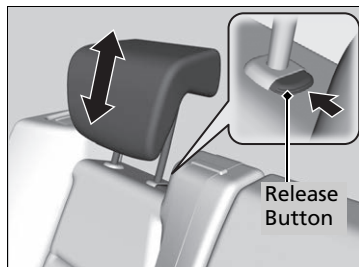
**Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.**

In order for the head restraint system to work properly.

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.



## ■ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the outer or centre\* back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

### **To raise the head restraint:**

Pull it upward.

### **To lower the head restraint:**

Push it down while pressing the release button.

## ■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

### **To remove a head restraint:**

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

### **To reinstall a head restraint:**

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

## ►► Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions

When you use the head restraint in a rear seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.

## ►► Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

### **⚠ WARNING**

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

To remove and install the rear outer head restraint, recline the seat-back slightly forward as the space between the ceiling and the seat-back is limited.

## Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

### ►► Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

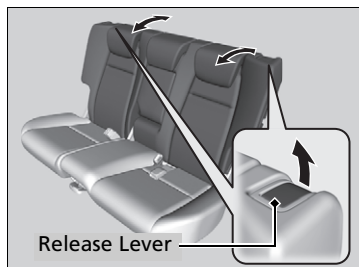
#### **WARNING**

**Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.**

## Rear Seats

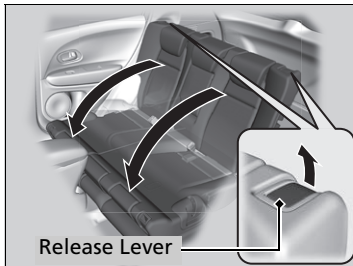
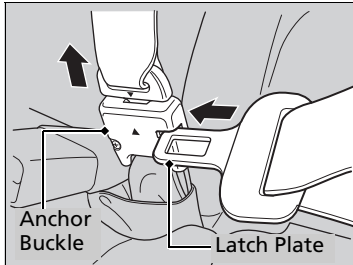
### ■ Adjusting the Rear Seat-Backs



Pull the lever on the right to change the angle of the right half of the seat-back, and left for the left half.

## Folding Down the Rear Seats

The rear seats can be folded down separately to allow for additional storage space.



### ■ To fold down the seat

1. Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.  
**➤ Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor** P. 50
2. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
3. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat-back.

To return the seat to the original position, pull up the seat-back in the upright position.

## Folding Down the Rear Seats

### ⚠ WARNING

**Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.**

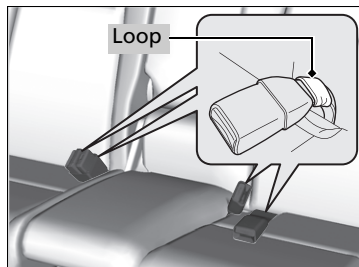
**Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.**

Remove any items from the rear seat cushion and floor before you fold down the rear seat.

To lock a seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

Make sure the seat-back, head restraints and seat cushion are securely latched back into place before driving. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the centre shoulder belt is re-positioned in the holding slot.

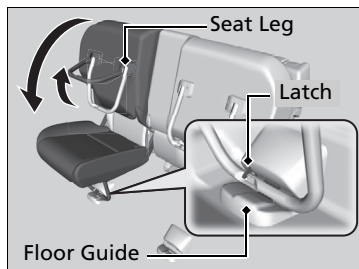
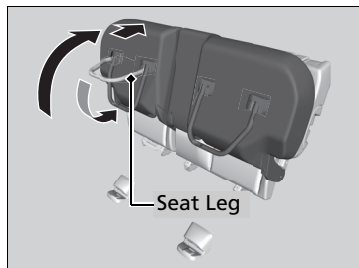
## ■ Folding the Rear Seat Up



Separately lift up the left and right halves of the rear seat cushions to make room for luggage area.

### ■ Lifting up the seat cushion

1. Make sure the seat belt buckles are in their loops on the seat.
2. Pull up the rear seat cushion.
3. Fold the seat leg down while pushing the seat cushion firmly against the seat-back to lock it.



### ■ Putting the seat in the original position

1. Hold the seat cushion in the upright position, and pull up the seat leg fully.
  - The seat cushion can abruptly fall down once you pull up the seat leg.
2. Slowly put down the seat cushion and set the seat leg in the floor guide.
  - A latch comes out when the leg is set properly.

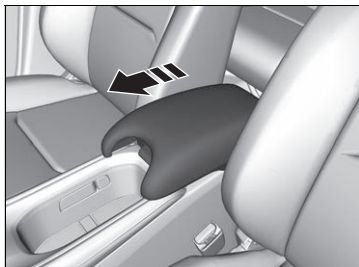
## ► Folding the Rear Seat Up

After you fold the seat up, or put it back in the original position, make sure the seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back.

Check if there are any items on the seat before you pull the seat cushion up. Check if there are any obstacles around the floor guide before you put the seat-back in the original position.

## Armrest

### ■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

**To adjust:**

Slide the armrest to a desired position.

### ■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest\*

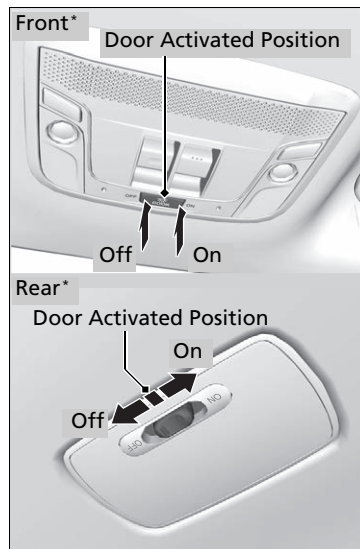


Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

\* Not available on all models

## Interior Lights

### Interior Light Switches



#### ■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

#### ■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any of the doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

#### Models without keyless access system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.

#### Models with keyless access system

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

#### ■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

### » Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.

#### Models without keyless access system

- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

#### Models with keyless access system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), but do not open a door.

#### Models with multi-information display

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 143

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you turn the ignition switch to ON [II]\*1.

#### Models without keyless access system

- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch.

#### Models with keyless access system

- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Map Lights

### Models with LED type map lights

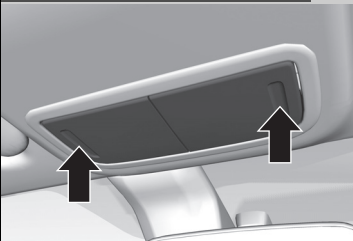
#### Front




#### Rear



### Models with bulb type map lights



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the  (map light) button.


The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

## Interior Light Switches

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, or without the key in the ignition switch, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

## Map Lights

### Models with interior light switch (front)

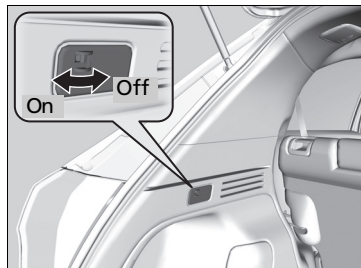
When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the rear map light will not go off when you press the  button.

### Models with interior light switch (rear)

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the lens.



## ■ Luggage Area Light\*



### ■ ON

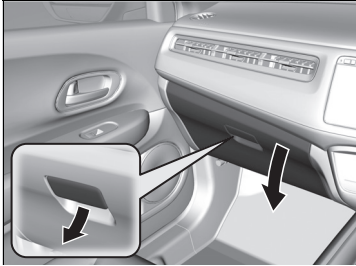
The light comes on when you open the tailgate, and goes off when closed.

### ■ OFF

The light stays off with or without opening the tailgate.

## Interior Convenience Items

### Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

### Console Compartment



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

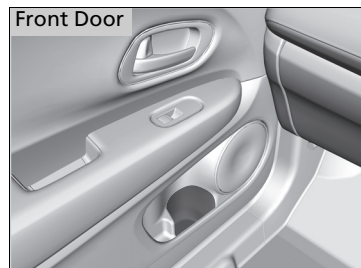
#### Glove Box

### **⚠ WARNING**

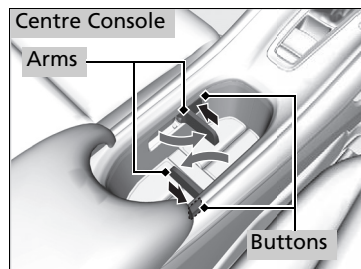
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

## Beverage Holders



### ■ Front seat beverage holders



### ■ Centre console beverage holders

Australian, New Zealand, Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models

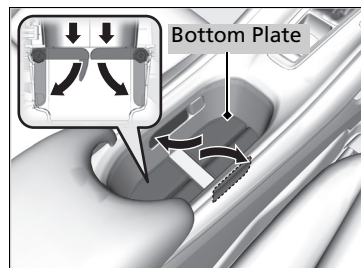
Middle Eastern and African left-hand drive models with panoramic roof

#### To put a short-size beverage:

Pressing a button inside the console raises the bottom plate. Arms come out to hold a beverage.

#### To put a tall-size beverage:

Close the arms and push down the bottom plate.

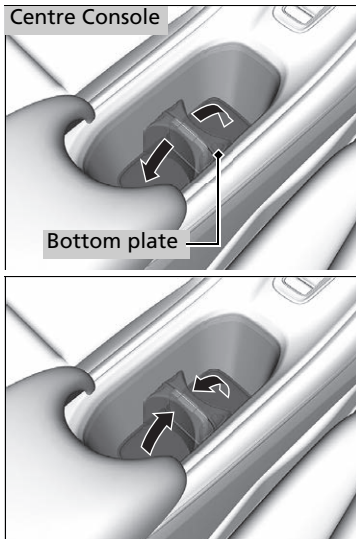


## » Beverage Holders

### NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

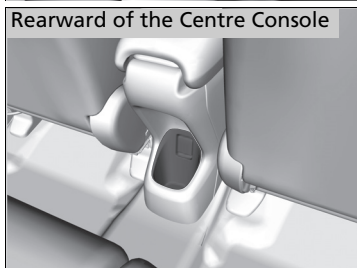
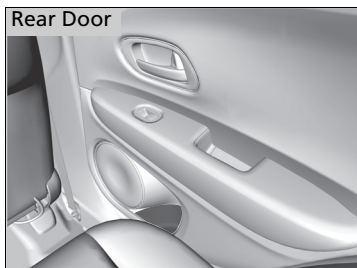


Except Australian, New Zealand, Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models

Middle Eastern and African left-hand drive models without panoramic roof

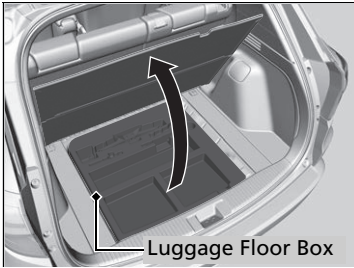
**To put a short-size beverage:** Push down the bottom plate.

**To put a tall-size beverage:** Pull up the bottom plate.



## ■ Rear seat beverage holders



## ■ Luggage Floor Box\*

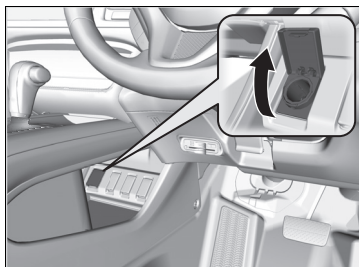


Pull up the luggage area floor lid.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Accessory Power Socket(s)

The accessory power socket can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY  or ON \*<sup>1</sup>.



### ■ Console panel

Open the cover to use it.

## » Accessory Power Socket(s)

### NOTICE

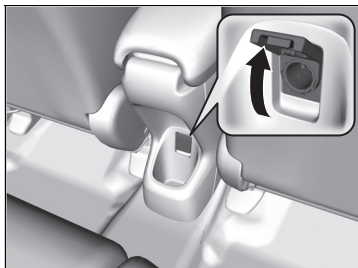
Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element: This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

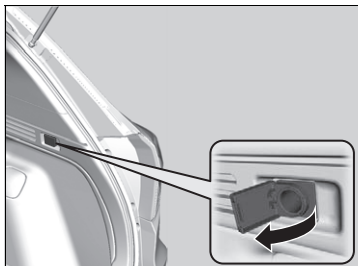
When the sockets are being used, the combined power rating of the accessories should not exceed 180 watts (15 amps).

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



■ **Rearward of the centre console\***

Open the cover to use it.



■ **Luggage area\***

Open the cover to use it.

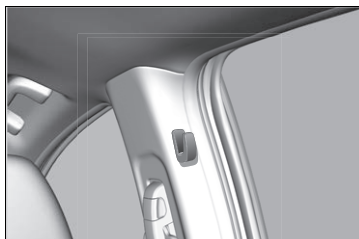
\* Not available on all models



## ■ Coat Hook(s)



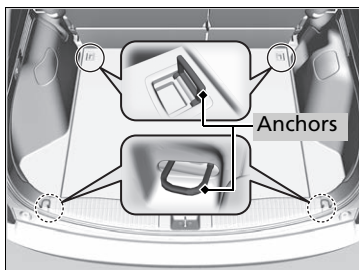
There is a coat hook on the rear left and/or right grab handle. Pull it down to use it.



Australian and New Zealand models  
with 1.8 L engine

There are coat hooks on the left and right door pillars.

## ■ Tie-down Anchors



The tie-down anchors on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

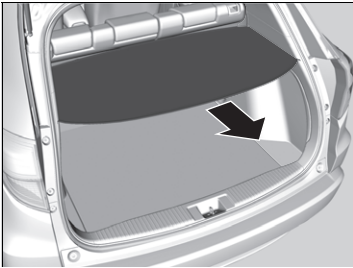
## ►► Coat Hook(s)

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

## ►► Tie-down Anchors

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

## ■ Tonneau Cover



The tonneau cover can be used to conceal your items and protect them from direct sunlight.

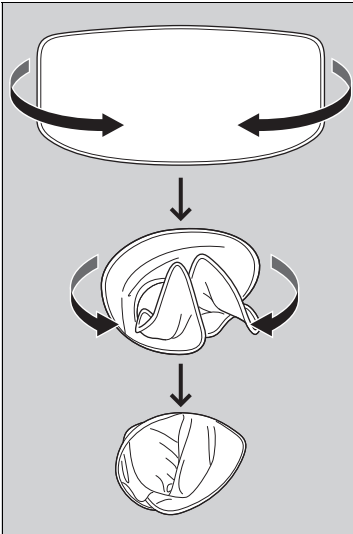
### ■ To remove:

Pull out the tonneau cover rearwards and remove it.

### ■ To fold:

The tonneau cover is collapsible.

1. Take the opposite sides, fold the cover halfway, then twist into opposite ways.
2. Curl to narrow the cover as shown.



## ▣ Tonneau Cover

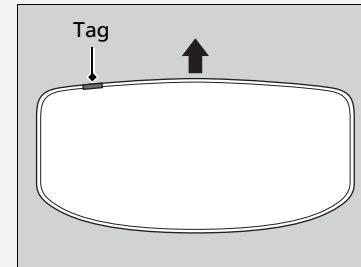
Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the luggage area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

To prevent tonneau cover damage, do not:


- Place items on the tonneau cover.
- Put weight on the tonneau cover.

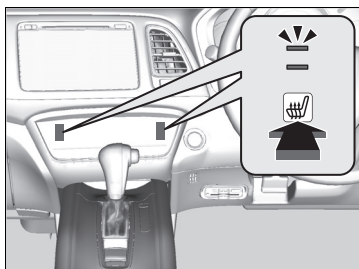
When reinstalling the tonneau cover, put the tagged side first.



## ■ Seat Heaters\*



The ignition switch must be in ON \*1 to use the seat heaters.



Touch the seat heater icon.

Once - The HI setting (two indicators on)

Twice - The LO setting

Three times - The OFF setting (no indicator on)

## ►► Seat Heaters\*

### ⚠ WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

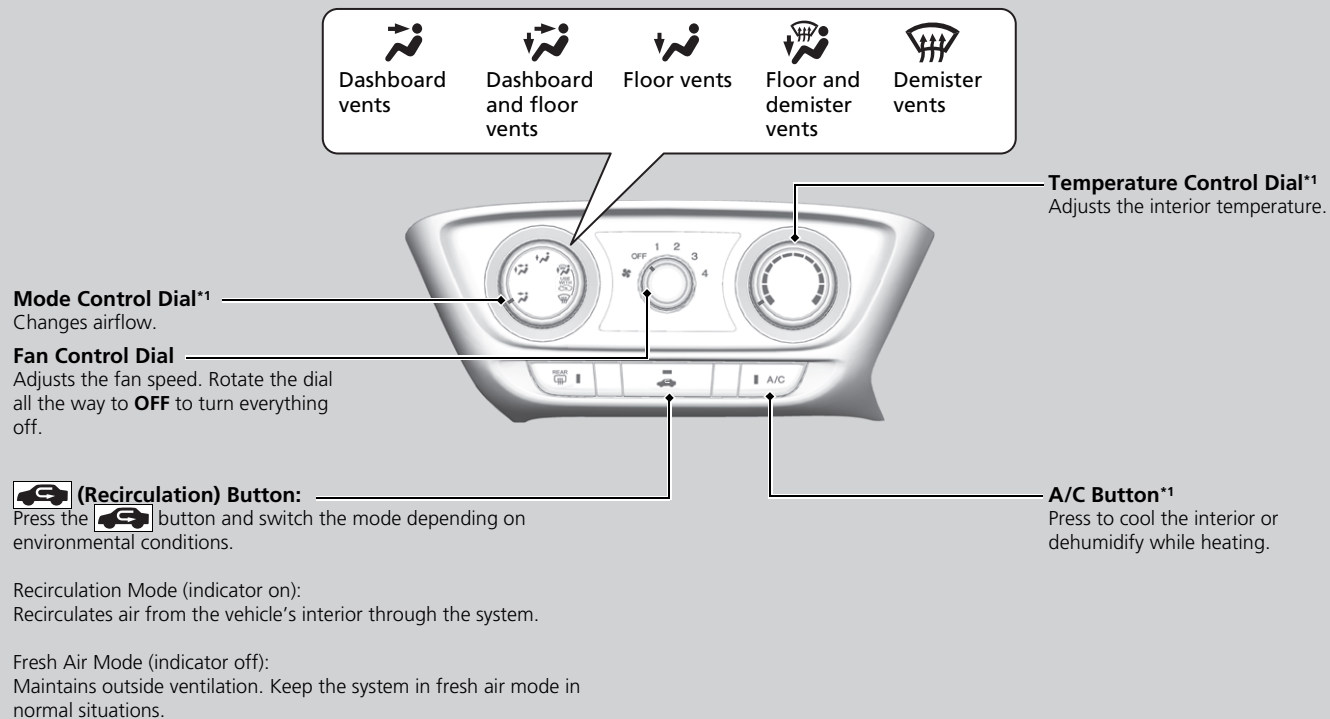
Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

In the LO setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Using Vents, Heating\* and A/C

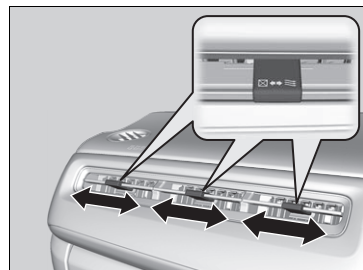
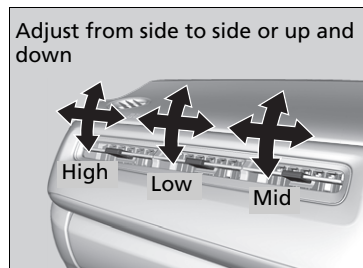


\*1: Right-hand drive models shown. For the left-hand drive models, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

\* Not available on all models

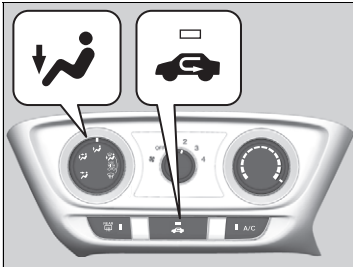
## ■ Passenger Side Vents

Three separate front passenger side air vents allow for different air flow rates through the vehicle. Passengers can separately:



- Adjust each vent to optimize airflow throughout the vehicle.
- Close individual vents to adjust passenger comfort levels.

## ■ Heating\*



The heater uses heat from the engine coolant to warm the air.

1. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
2. Select and press the button (indicator off).
3. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.

### ■ To rapidly warm up the interior

1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Select .
3. Set the temperature to maximum warm.
4. Press the button (indicator on).

### ■ To dehumidify the interior

When used in combination with the heater, the air conditioning system makes the interior warm and dry and can prevent the windows from fogging up.

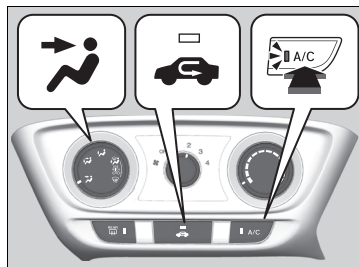
1. Turn the fan on.
2. Press the **A/C** button to turn on the air conditioning.
3. Select and press the button (indicator off). Adjust the temperature to your preference.

### ►► To rapidly warm up the interior

Change to fresh air mode as soon as the interior gets warm enough. The windows may fog up if kept in recirculation mode.

\* Not available on all models

## Cooling

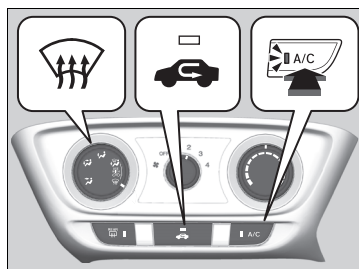


1. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
2. Select and press the button (indicator off).
3. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.
4. Press the **A/C** button (indicator on).

### ■ To rapidly cool down the interior

1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Select .
3. Set the temperature to maximum cool.
4. Press the **A/C** button (indicator on).
5. Press the button (indicator on).

## Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



1. Set the fan to the high speed.
2. Select .
3. Press the button (indicator off).
4. Press the **A/C** button (indicator on).

### Models with heating system

### ■ To rapidly defrost the windows

1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Select .
3. Press the **A/C** button (indicator on).
4. Press the button (indicator on).
5. Set the temperature to maximum warm.

### ►► To rapidly cool down the interior

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows.

### Models with ECON button

While in ECON mode, the system has greater temperature fluctuations.

### ►► Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

### ►► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode.

If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

## Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated\* or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

### Using Automatic Climate Control

If any icons are selected while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the icon that was selected will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the icon that was selected will be controlled automatically.

#### Models with Auto Idle Stop system

During idle-stops, air-conditioning is suspended, and only the blower remains active. If you do not want air-conditioning suspended, press the Auto Idle Stop system **OFF** button to cancel idle-stop.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** icon is selected.

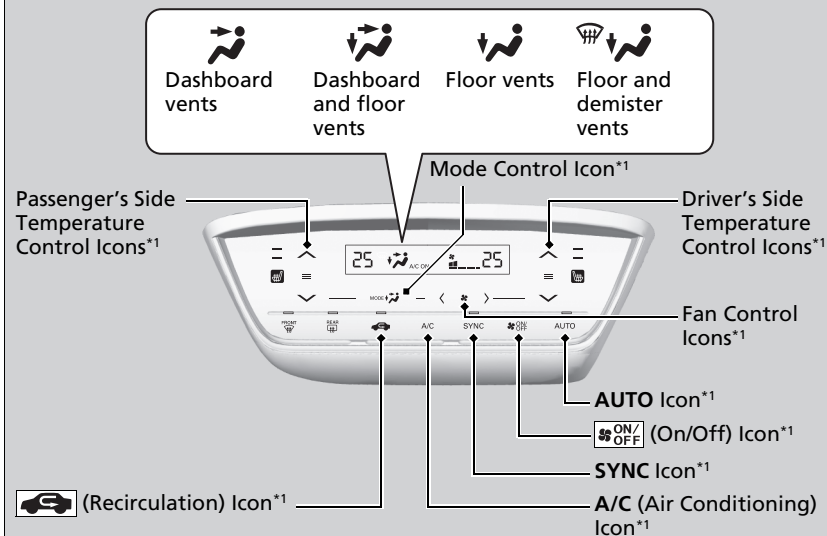
If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

\* Not available on all models



Models with **SYNC** icon



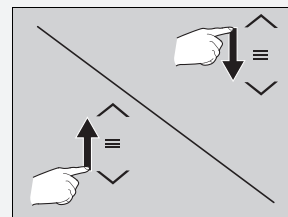
\*1: Right-hand drive models shown. For the left-hand drive models, these icons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Select the **AUTO** icon.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control icons.
3. Select the **ON/OFF** icon to cancel.

►► Using Automatic Climate Control

You can raise or lower the temperature or fan speed setting flicking either control icon.

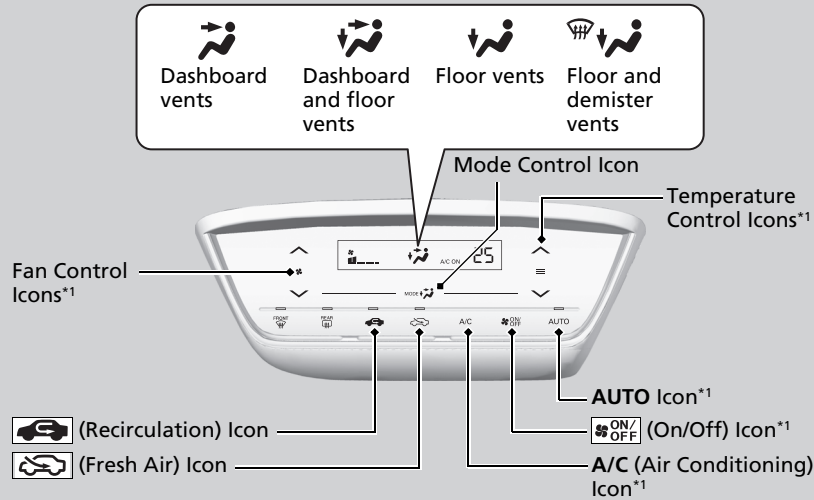


Selecting the **ON/OFF** icon switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

Models with **ECON** button


While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

Models without SYNC icon




\*1: Right-hand drive models shown. For the left-hand drive models, these icons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Select the **AUTO** icon.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control icons.
3. Select the  icon to cancel.

## ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

### Models with SYNC icon

Select the  (recirculation) icon and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

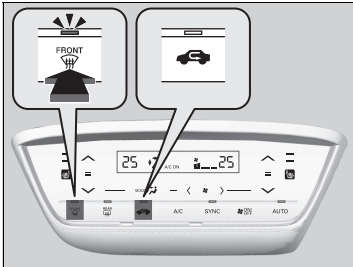
### Models without SYNC icon

Select the  (recirculation) or  (fresh air) icon to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.



Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.


Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

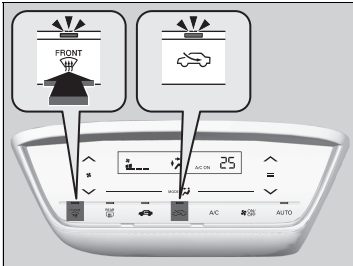
## Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows





### Models with SYNC icon

Select the  icon to turn the air conditioning system on. Select the  icon (indicator off) to switch to the fresh air mode.

Select the  icon to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.





### Models without SYNC icon

Select the  icon to turn the air conditioning system on. Select the  to switch the system to fresh air mode.

### African, Latin American and Middle Eastern models

### New Zealand models with 1.5 L engine

Select the  icon to turn the air conditioning system on and automatically switch the system to fresh air mode.

Select the  icon again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

## Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows


**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

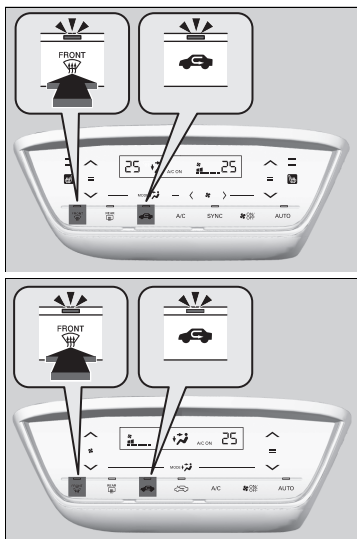
When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

### Models with Auto Idle Stop system

If you select the  icon during Auto Idle Stop, the engine restarts automatically.

## ■ To rapidly defrost the windows



### Models with SYNC icon

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select the  icon (indicator on).

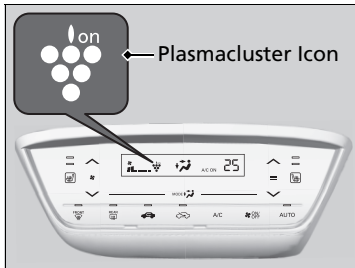
### Models without SYNC icon

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select the  icon.

## ►► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

## Plasmacluster\*



Plasmacluster turns on when the climate control system or fan is on. The plasmacluster icon comes on in the system's display.

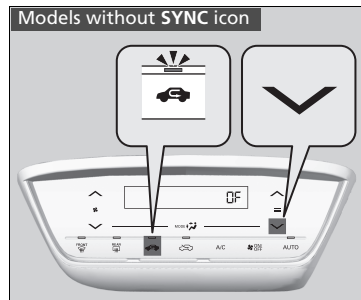
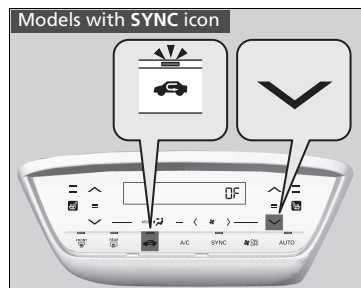
## Plasmacluster\*

Plasmacluster is a trademark of Sharp Corporation.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Turning On and Off the Touch Screen Beep

You hear the beep when operating the climate control system on the touch screen. This can be turned on and off.



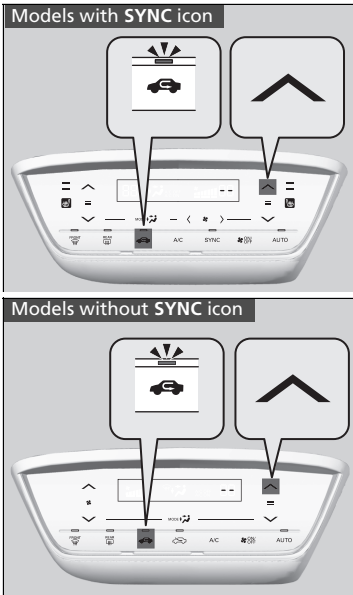
### To turn off the beep:

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. Touch the of the temperature control icon five times while pressing and holding the .
3. Release the , after -- blinks five times and **OF** is displayed.

### ►► Turning On and Off the Touch Screen Beep

If you touch any other icons during this procedure, the setting may fail. In this case, once you turn the ignition switch to OFF \*1, then follow this procedure again.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



### To turn on the beep:

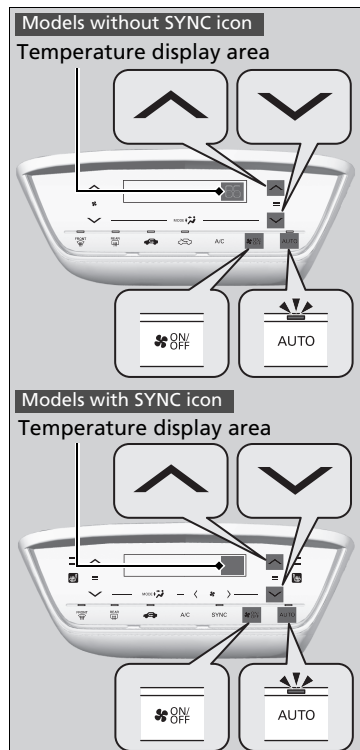
1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. Touch the of the temperature control icon five times while pressing and holding the .
3. Release the , after **OF** blinks five times and -- is displayed.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## ■ Touch Panel Sensitivity Setting

You can set the level of sensitivity of the touch control panel to high, normal, or low.



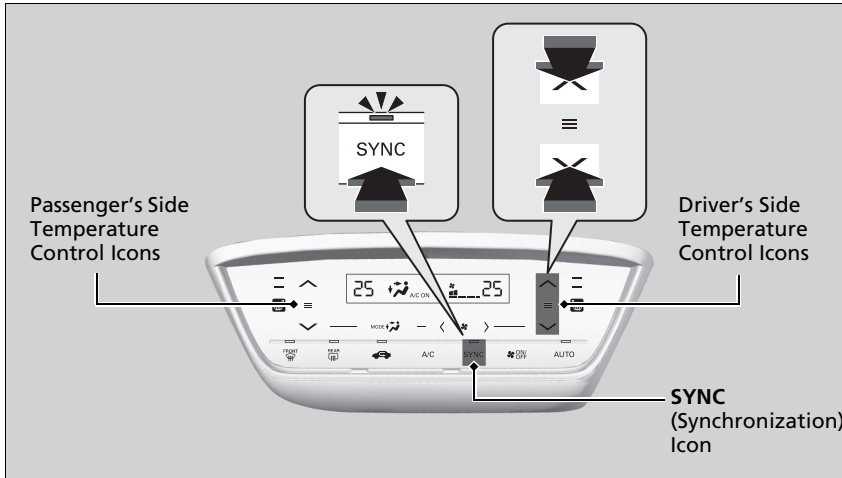
1. Turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*1.
2. Press and hold the **AUTO** icon, then press any of the following icons five times to set the level.
  - **^**: High (**Hi**).
    - Previous setting blinks five times and **Hi** will be displayed in the temperature display area.
  - **ON/OFF**: Normal (--)
    - Previous setting blinks five times and -- will be displayed in the temperature display area.
  - **✓**: Low (**Lo**)
    - Previous setting blinks five times and **Lo** will be displayed in the temperature display area.
3. Release the **AUTO** icon.

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ►► Touch Panel Sensitivity Setting

If you touch any other icons during this procedure, the setting may fail. In this case, once you turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1, then follow this procedure again.

## ■ Synchronization Mode\*



You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

**1.** Select the **SYNC** icon.

► The system switches to synchronization mode.

**2.** Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control icon.

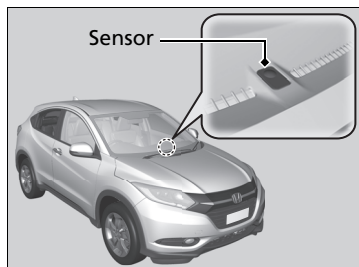
Select the **SYNC** icon to return to dual mode.

## ► Synchronization Mode\*

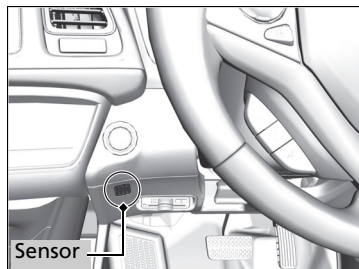
When you select the  icon, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

## Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



# Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

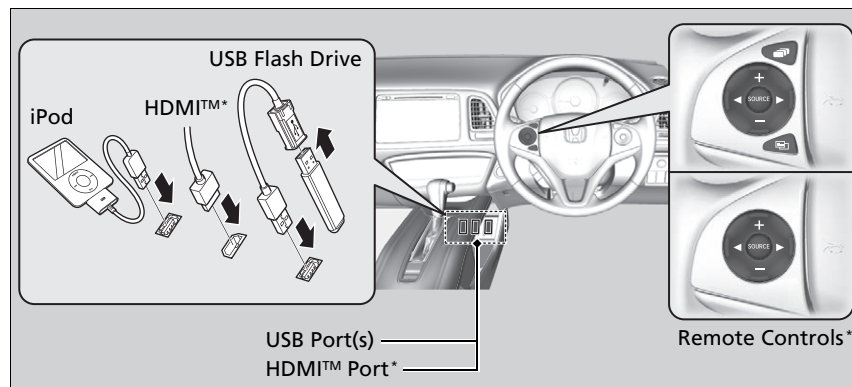
<b>Audio System*</b>		<b>Audio Error Messages*</b> .....	335
About Your Audio System.....	262	<b>General Information on the Audio System*</b> ....	337
USB Port(s).....	263	Models with colour audio system	
HDMI™ Port* .....	264	<b>Customized Features</b> .....	341
Auxiliary Input Jack* .....	265	Models with display audio system	
Audio Remote Controls* .....	266	<b>Customized Features</b> .....	348
Models with monochrome audio system		Models with monochrome audio system	
<b>Audio System Basic Operation</b> .....	268	<b>Hands-Free Telephone System</b> .....	361
Models with colour audio system		Models with colour audio system	
<b>Audio System Basic Operation</b> .....	286	<b>Hands-Free Telephone System</b> .....	384
Models with display audio system		Models with display audio system	
<b>Audio System Basic Operation</b> .....	308	<b>Hands-Free Telephone System</b> .....	405

\* Not available on all models

## About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play audio CDs, WMA/MP3/AAC files, USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls\* on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface\*.

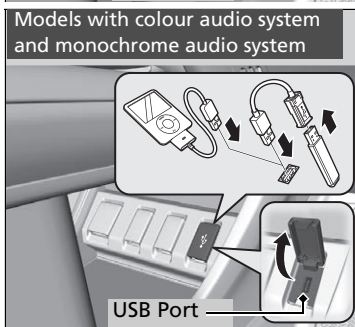
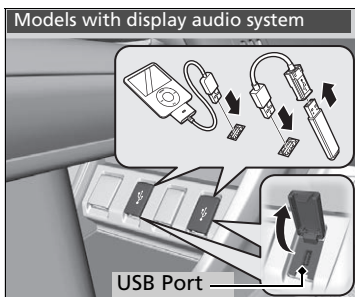


### About Your Audio System

Video CDs, DVDs, and 8-cm mini CDs are not supported.

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

## USB Port(s)



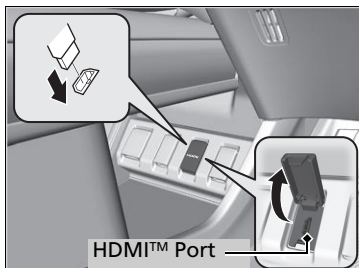
1. Open the cover.
2. Install the iPod USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

### USB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognise the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit [www.apple.com/ipod](http://www.apple.com/ipod).

## HDMI™ Port\*



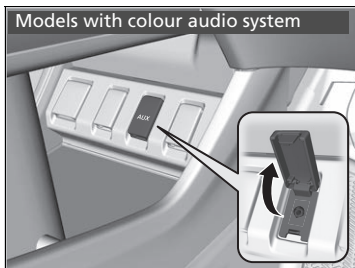
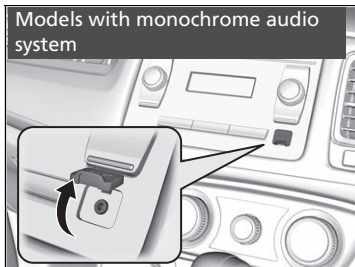
1. Open the cover.
2. Install the HDMI™ cable to the HDMI™ port.

### ⌘ HDMI™ Port\*

- Do not leave the HDMI™ connected device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

## Auxiliary Input Jack\*



Use the jack to connect standard audio devices.

1. Open the **AUX** cover.
2. Connect a standard audio device to the input jack using a 3.5 mm stereo miniplug.
  - ▶ The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

### ▶▶ Auxiliary Input Jack\*

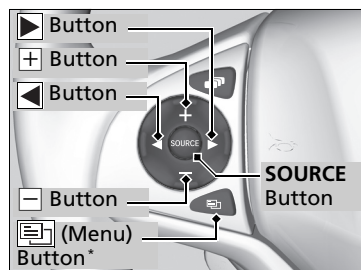
To switch mode, press any of the audio mode buttons. You can return to AUX mode by pressing the **CD/AUX** button.

\* Not available on all models



## Audio Remote Controls\*

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving.



### SOURCE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:  
 FM→AM\*→LW\*→MW\*→CD→USB→iPod→  
 Apps\*→*Bluetooth*® Audio→  
 AUX\*/AUX HDMI™\*

### + - (Volume) Buttons

**Press** + : To increase the volume.

**Press** - : To decrease the volume.

### ◀ ▶ Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  - Press** ▶: To select the next preset radio station.
  - Press** ◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
  - Press and hold** ▶: To select the next strong station.
  - Press and hold** ◀: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a CD, iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  - Press** ▶: To skip to the next song.
  - Press** ◀: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a CD or USB flash drive
  - Press and hold** ▶: To skip to the next folder.
  - Press and hold** ◀: To go back to the previous folder.






### ▶▶ Audio Remote Controls\*

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.


Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be operated.

#### Models with display audio system

### Steering Wheel (Menu) Button

- When listening to the radio  
**Press .** To display the menu items. You can select **Scan**, **Save Preset**, or **Seek**.
- When listening to a CD or USB flash drive  
**Press .** To display the menu items. You can select **Scan**, **Repeat**, or **Random**.
- When listening to an iPod  
**Press .** To display the menu items. You can select **Repeat** or **Shuffle**.
- When listening to a *Bluetooth*® Audio  
**Press .** To display the menu items. You can select **Pause** or **Play**.
- When watching a video  
**Press .** To display the menu items. You can select **Scan**, **Repeat**, **Random** or **Play/Pause**.

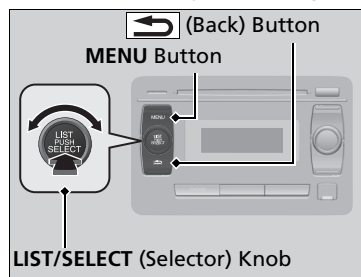
#### Audio Remote Controls\*

The  button is available only when the audio mode is FM, AM, CD, USB, iPod, or *Bluetooth*® Audio.


\* Not available on all models

## Models with monochrome audio system


To use the audio system, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON \*1.



Use the selector knob or press the **MENU** button to access some audio functions.


Press  to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

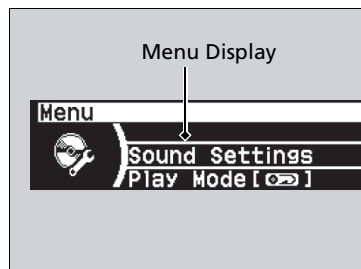
**LIST/SELECT (Selector) knob:** Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices.

Press  to set your selection.

**MENU button:** Press to select any mode.

The available mode includes the auto select, save preset, sound settings, *Bluetooth*® setup, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from scan, random, repeat, and so on.


 (Back) button: Press to go back to the previous display when a list or menu screen is displayed.









## Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate  to select.

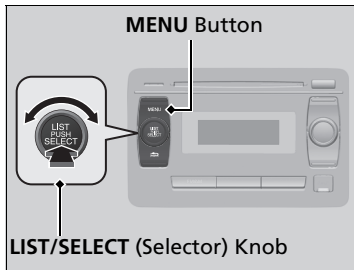
Press  to enter.





### Menu items


-  **Sound Settings** P. 269
-  **Play Mode** P. 275, 279, 282
-  **Scan** P. 272, 276, 283
-  **Auto Select** P. 271
-  **Save Preset** P. 271
-  **Resume/Pause** P. 285

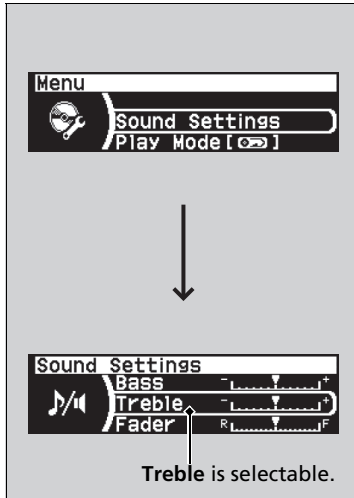
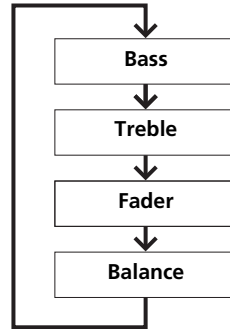
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Adjusting the Sound

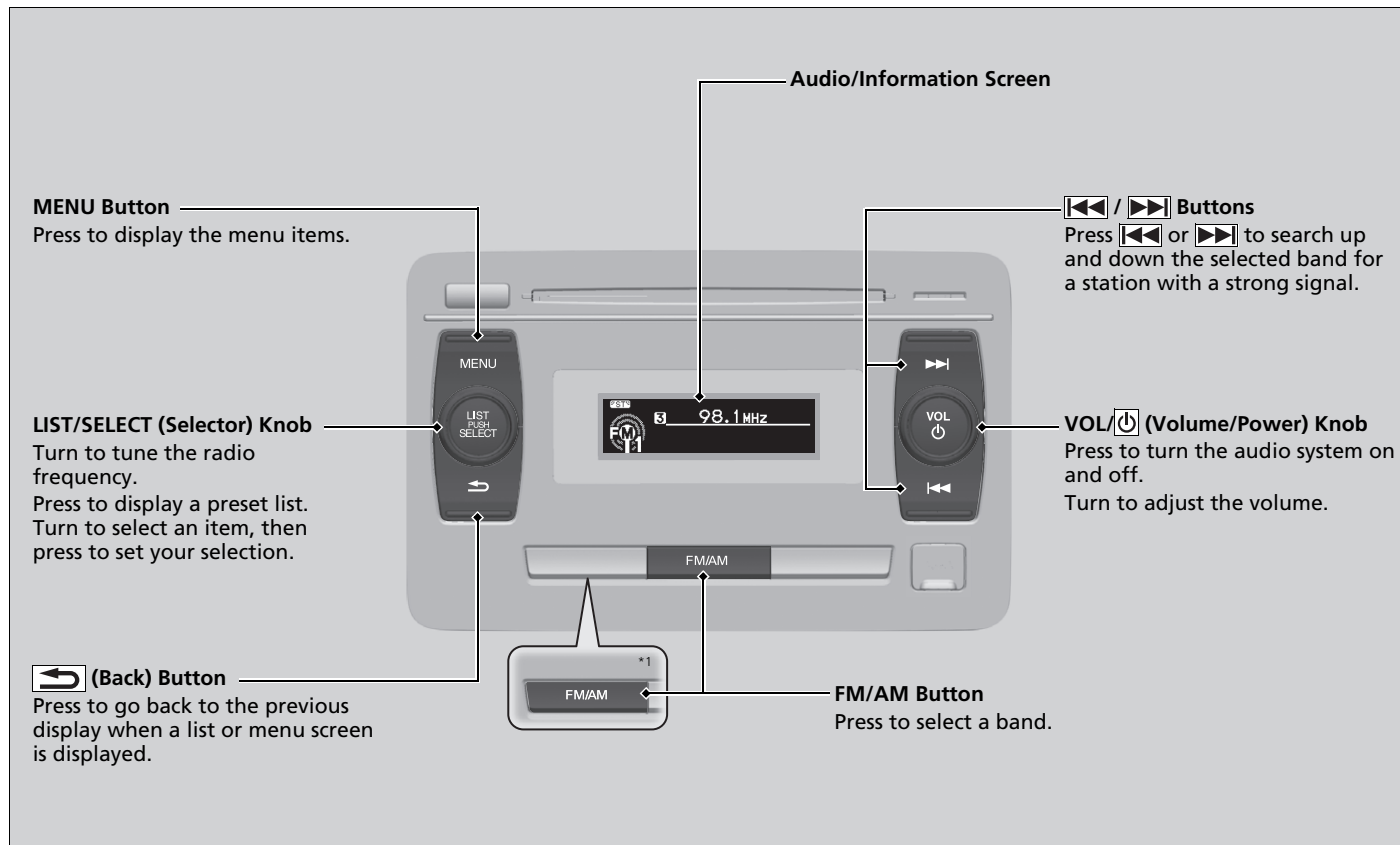


1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Sound Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select the mode, then press .

Rotate  to scroll through the following choices:





## Playing AM/FM Radio




\*1: Taiwanese models

## Auto Select





Uses the auto select feature to scan both bands and store the strongest station in each preset.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Auto Select**, then press .
  - ▶ The system goes into scan mode for several seconds.




To turn off auto select, press the **MENU** button and rotate  to select **Auto Select**, then press .

## Preset Memory

Uses the preset memory feature to store a station in each preset.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate  to select **Save Preset**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select the preset number you want to store that station, then press .

You can also store that station by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Press  to switch to the preset list mode.
3. Rotate  to select a preset number, then press and hold .

## ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The selected radio frequency is shown on the centre display.

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.  
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.




You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory. FM1 and FM2 let you store 6 stations each.

Auto Select function scans and stores up to 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations with a strong signal into the preset memory.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can manually store your preferred frequencies.

## ■ Preset List


Lists the preset stations on the selected band.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Press  to switch to the preset list mode.
3. Rotate  to select a preset station, then press .

## ■ Scan

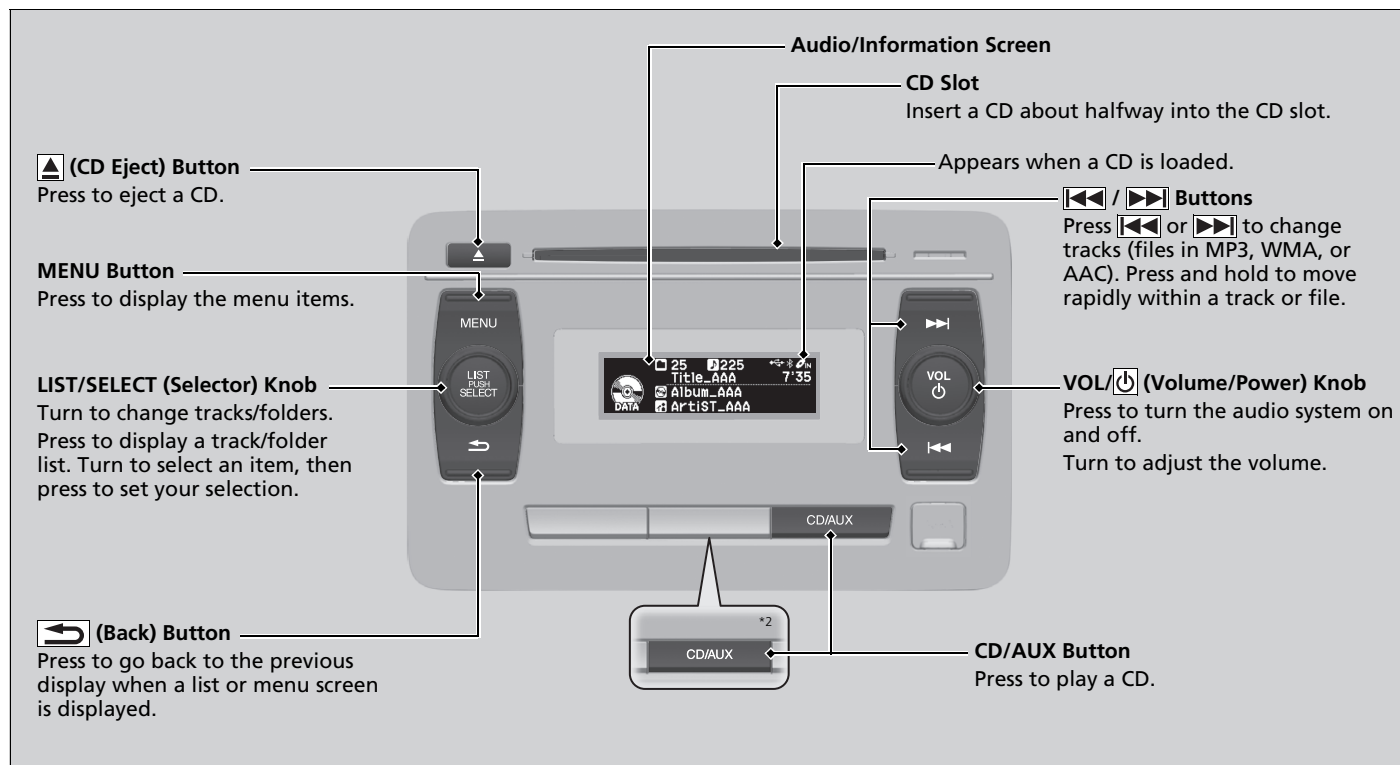
Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

## Playing a CD

Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC\*1 format. With the CD loaded, press the **CD/AUX** button.

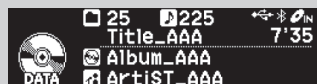


\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

\*2: Taiwanese models



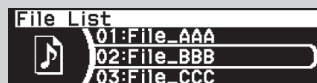
## How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)



### Folder Selection



### File Selection



1. Press to display a folder list.

2. Rotate to select a folder.

3. Press to display to a list of files in that folder.

4. Rotate to select a file, then press .

## ▶▶ Playing a CD

### NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

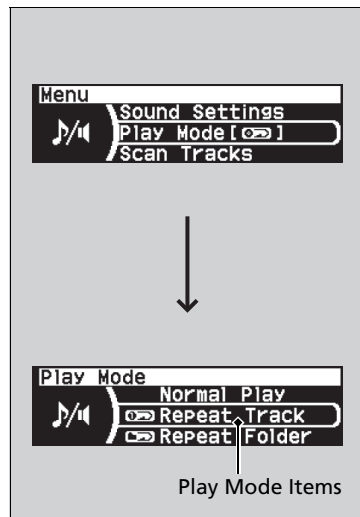
Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a track or file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

## To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

### Normal Play

**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current track/file.

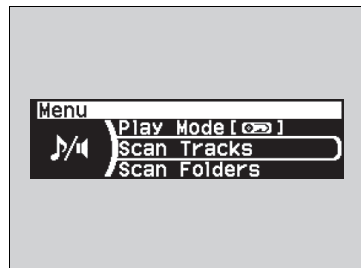
**Repeat Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC):** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Random in Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC):** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All:** Plays all tracks/files in random order.

## ■ How to Select the Scan Mode

You can select scan mode when playing a track or file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan Tracks** or **Scan Folders**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

## ▶▶ How to Select the Scan Mode

Scan mode menu items

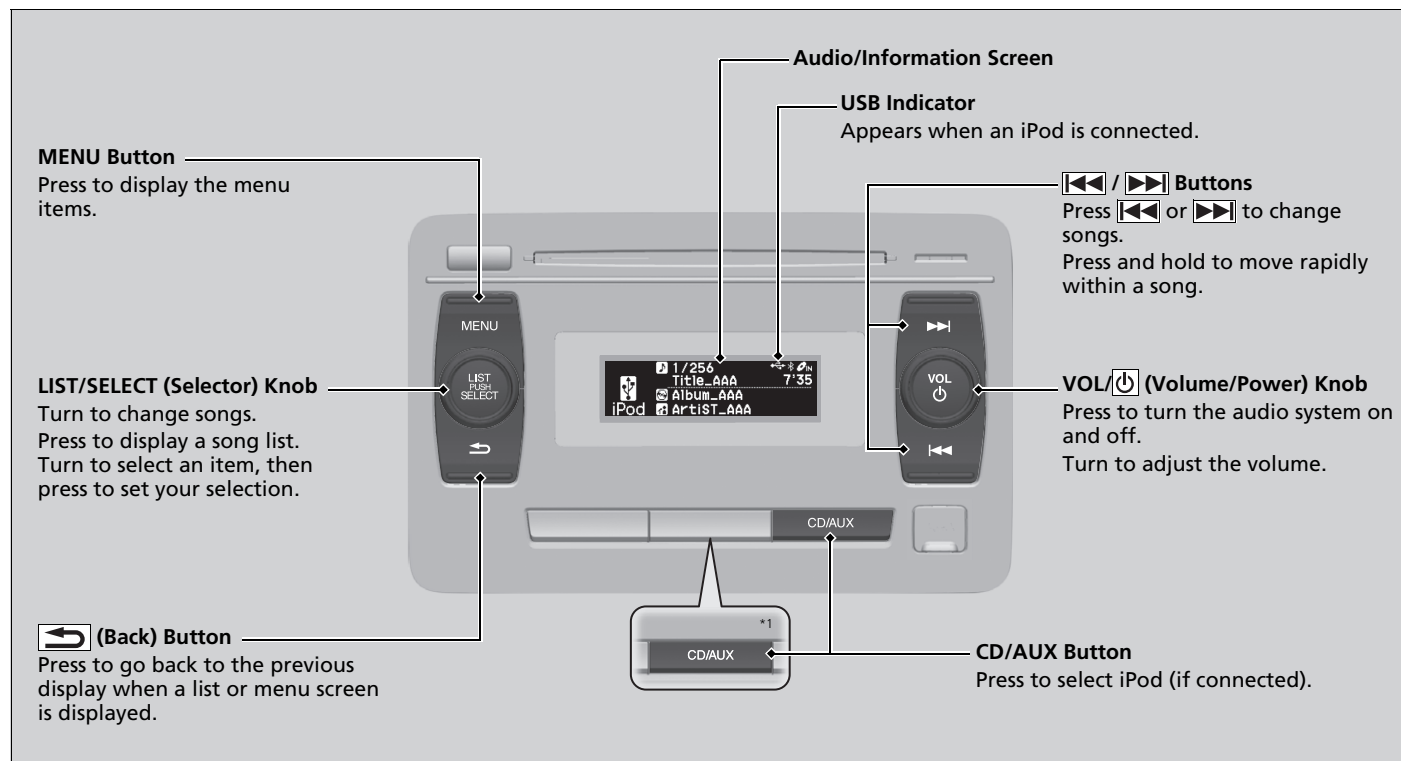
**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

**Scan Folders** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

## Playing an iPod

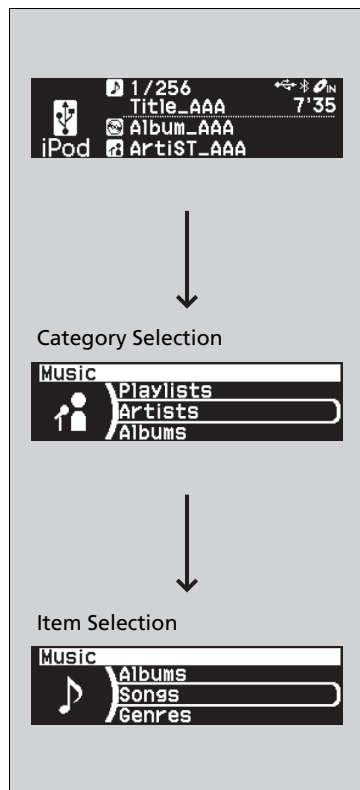
Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB Port, then press the **CD/AUX** button.

🔌 **USB Port(s)** P. 263



\*1: Taiwanese models

## How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display an iPod music list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press .

▶ Repeat this procedure until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

## ▶▶ Playing an iPod

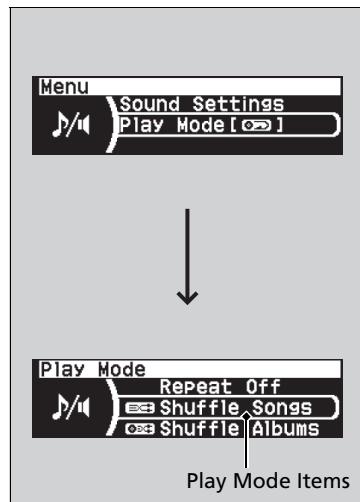
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

**iPod/USB Flash Drive\*** P. 336

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

### To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

### Normal Play

**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current song.

**Repeat Off:** Turns off the repeat mode.

**Shuffle Off:** Turns off the shuffle mode.

**Shuffle Songs:** Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

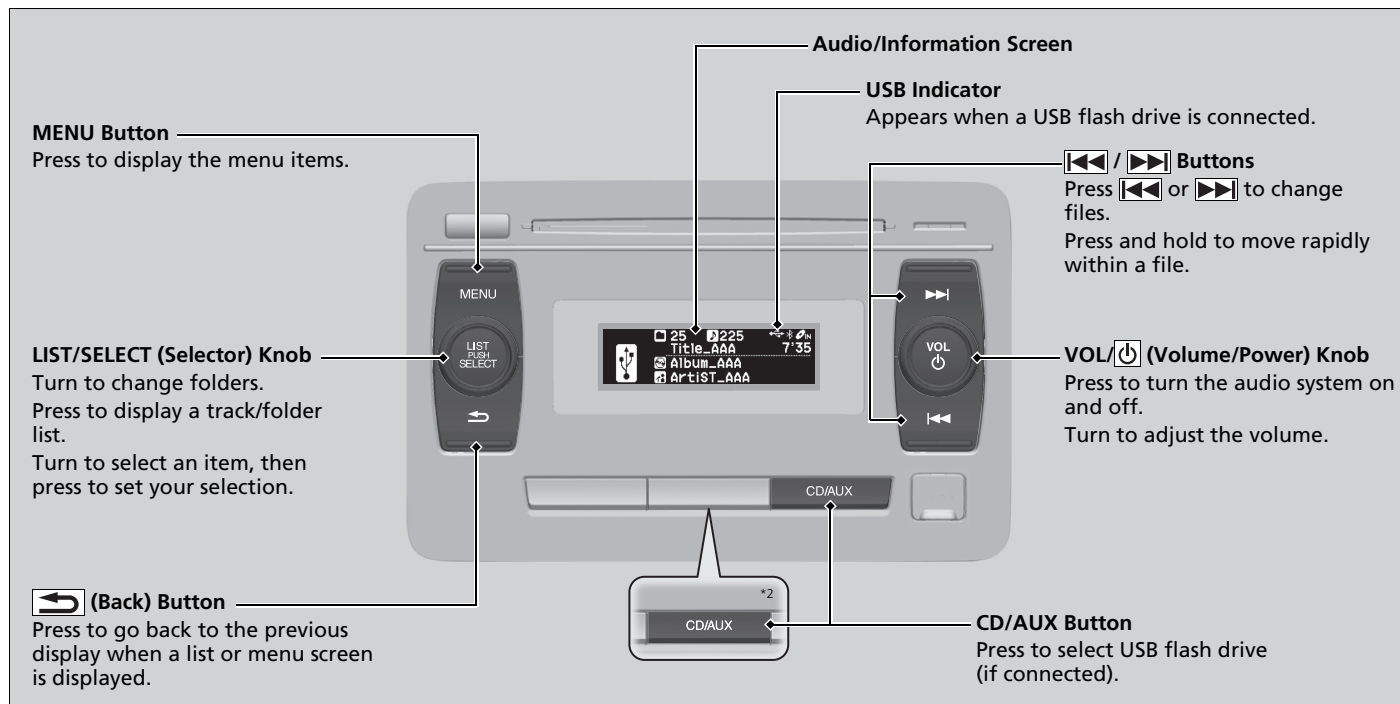
**Shuffle Albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC\*1 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **CD/AUX** button.

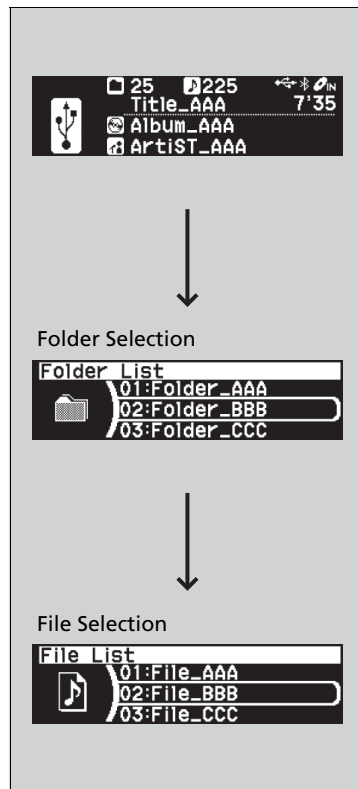
📌 **USB Port(s)** P. 263



\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

\*2: Taiwanese models

## How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Press to switch the display to a folder list.

2. Rotate to select a folder.

3. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.

4. Rotate to select a file, then press .

## ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System\***  
P. 337

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) are not be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

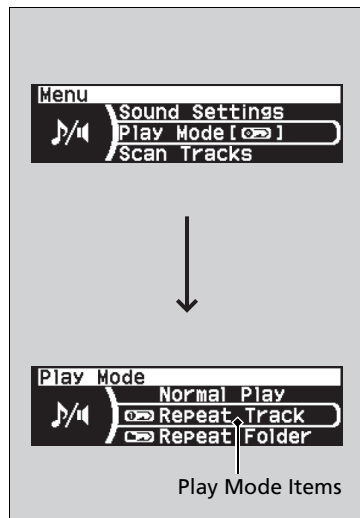
▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive\*** P. 336

\* Not available on all models



## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

### ■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

### Normal Play

**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current file.

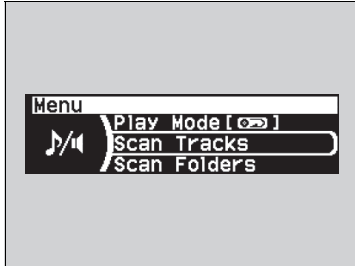
**Repeat Folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.


**Random All:** Plays all files in random order.

## How to Select the Scan Mode

You can select scan mode when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan Tracks** or **Scan Folders**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

## How to Select the Scan Mode

Scan mode menu items

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

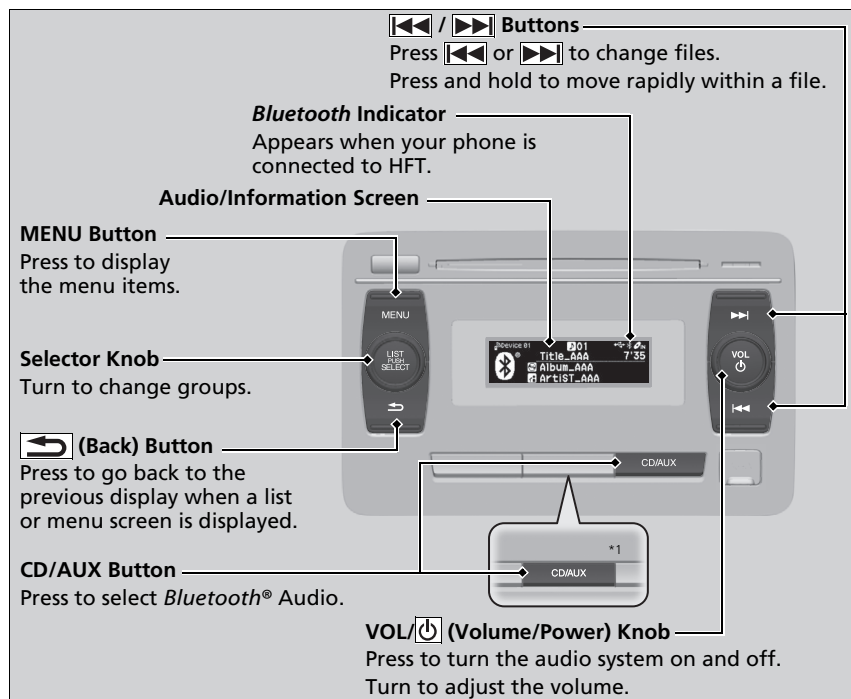
**Scan Folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 367



### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the latest paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

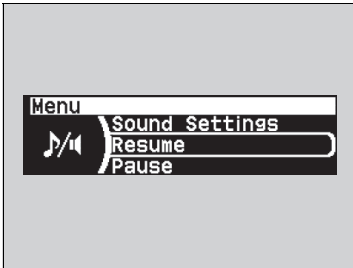
If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

\*1: Taiwanese models



## ■ To Play *Bluetooth®* Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
2. Press the **CD/AUX** button.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth®* Audio, may already be connected.

### ■ To pause or resume a file

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Resume** or **Pause**, then press .

## ▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth®* Audio Files

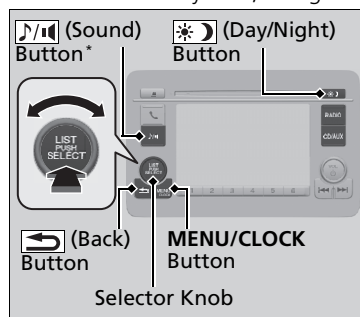
To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack or USB port, you may need to press the **CD/AUX** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth®* Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

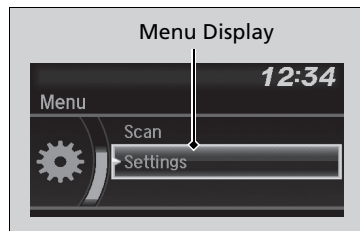
## Models with colour audio system

To use the audio system, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY or ON \*1.



Use the selector knob or **MENU/CLOCK** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.



**Selector knob:** Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

**MENU/CLOCK button:** Press to select any mode.

The available modes include the wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play mode choices include scan, random, repeat, and so on.

**(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous display.

**(Sound) button:** Press to select the sound setting mode.

**(Day/Night) button:** Press to change the audio/information screen brightness. Press , then adjust the brightness using .

► Each time you press , the mode switches between the daytime mode and nighttime mode.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

### Menu items

- **Adjust Clock** P. 156
- **Wallpaper Setup** P. 289
- **Display Setup** P. 292
- **Scan** P. 294, 298, 304
- **Play Mode** P. 298, 301, 304
- **Bluetooth** P. 305

One of the operating systems used in this unit is eCos.

For software licence terms and conditions, visit their website (eCos licence URL:

<http://ecos.sourceforge.org/license-overview.html>)

For source code disclosure and other details regarding eCos, visit:

<http://www.hondaopensource2.com>

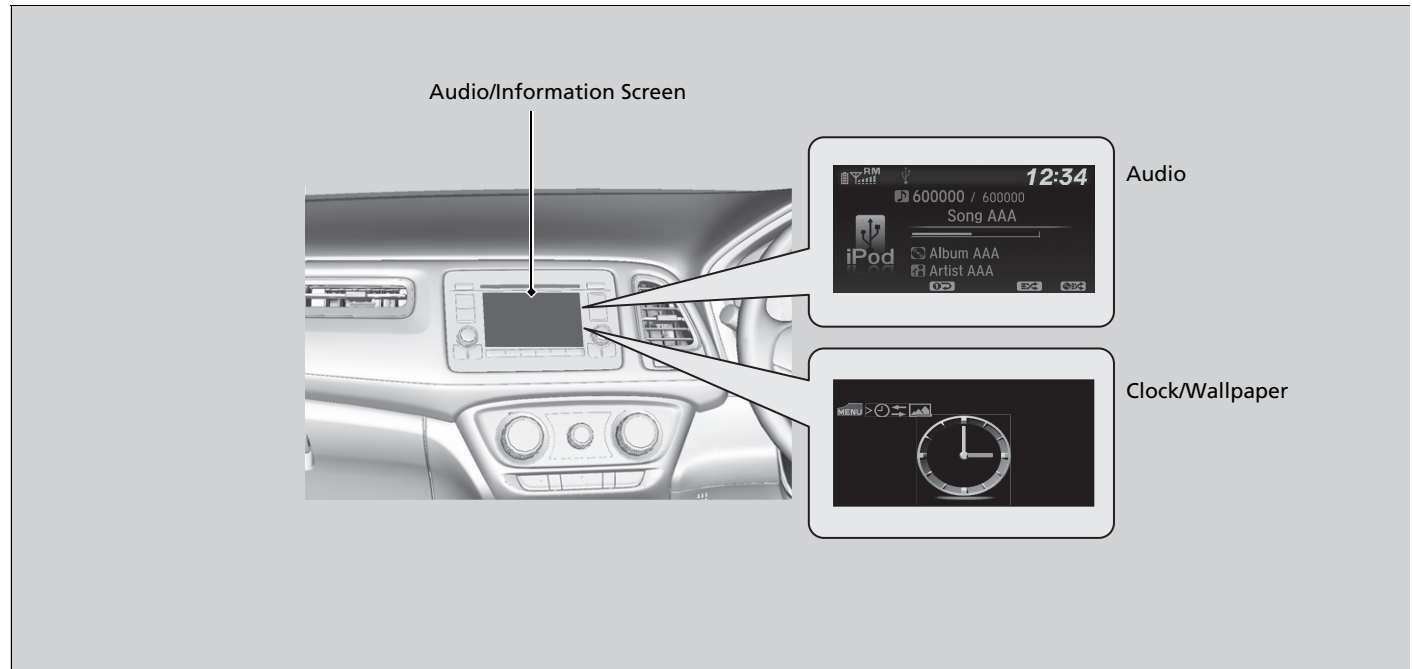
Press the **SOURCE**, , , or button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

► **Audio Remote Controls**\* P. 266

## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

### Switching the Display









### ■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

### ■ Clock/Wallpaper

Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

### ■ Change display

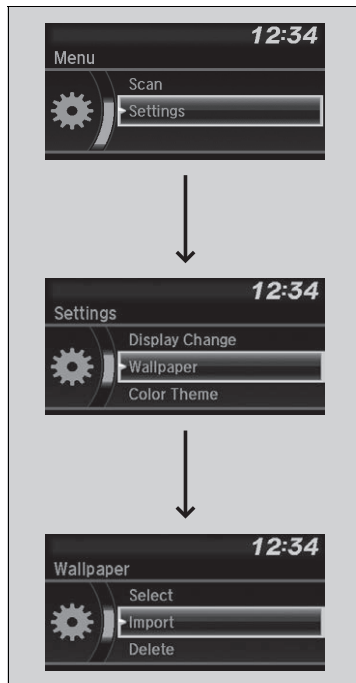
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Display Change**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
  - ▶ If you want to return to the audio display, select **Audio**.

## ■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### ■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.  
▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 263
2. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
3. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Import**, then press .  
▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Rotate to select a desired picture, then press .  
▶ The selected picture is displayed.
7. Press to save the picture.
8. Press to select **OK**.
9. Rotate to select a location to save the picture, then press .  
▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.









### ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.






Continued









## ■ Select wallpaper

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Select**, then press .
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a desired wallpaper, then press .


## ■ To view wallpaper once it is set

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Display Change**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a wallpaper that you want to set, then press .

## ■ Delete wallpaper

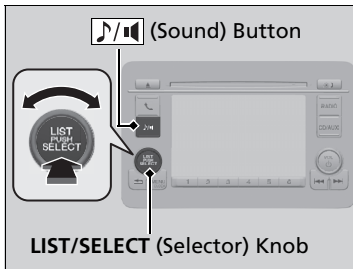
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Delete**, then press .
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
6. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press .
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

## ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

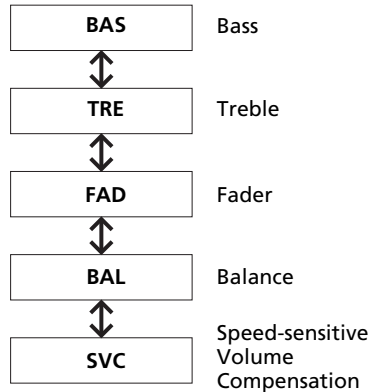
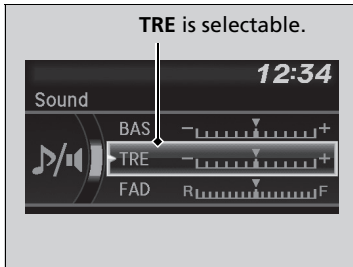
To go back to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

## Adjusting the Sound



Press the (sound) button, and rotate to scroll through the following choices:



Rotate to adjust the sound setting, then press .

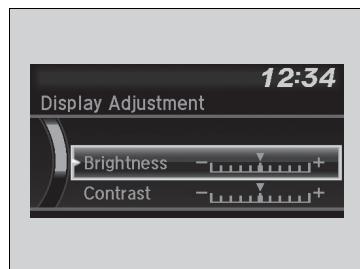
### Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

## Display Setup

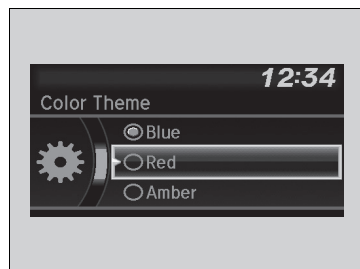
You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

### ■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Display Adjustment**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
5. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

### ■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

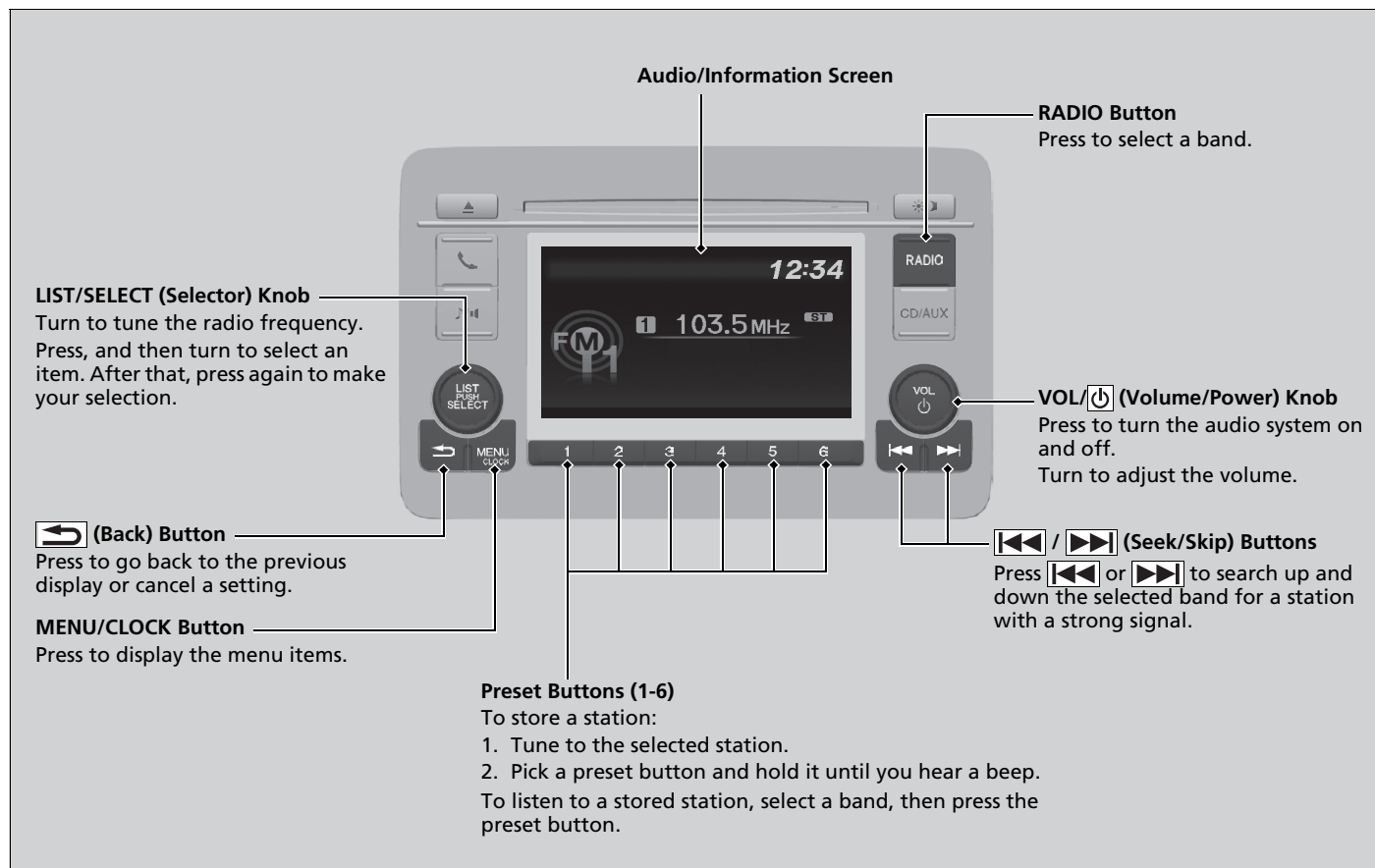


1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Color Theme**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

### ▣ Changing the Screen Brightness




You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

## Playing AM/FM Radio






## ■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button to switch to a mode.
2. Press  to switch to the station list mode.
3. Rotate  to select the station, then press .

## ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press the **RADIO** button to switch to a mode.
2. Press  to switch to the station list mode.
3. Rotate  to select **Update List**, then press .

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

## ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio


The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.

Switching the audio mode




Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel.

 **Audio Remote Controls\*** P. 266

## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)\*




Provides text data information related to your selected RDS capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press  while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate  to select the station, then press .

### ■ Update List

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press  while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate  to select **Update List**, then press .

### ■ Radio Text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **RDS Settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Radio Text**, then press .

### ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

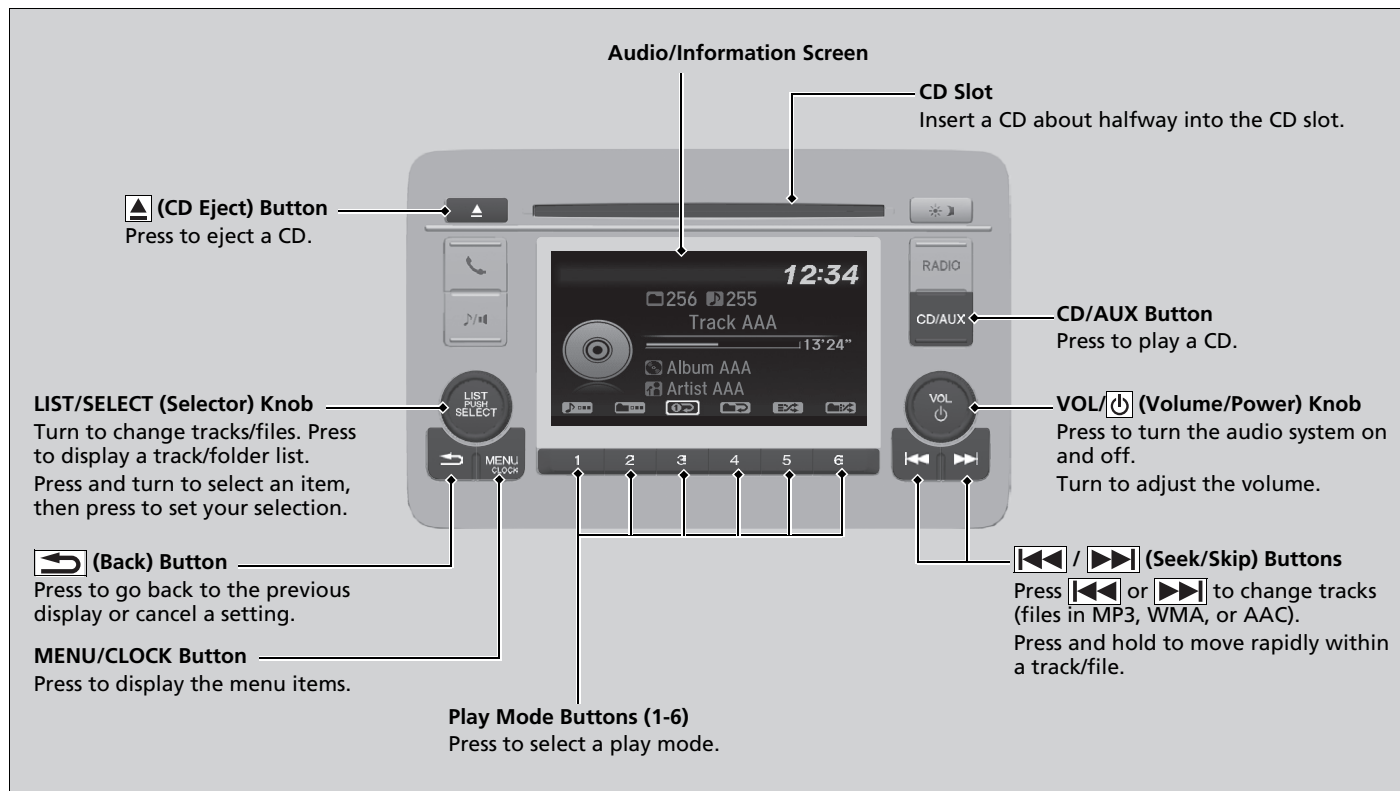
## ⌘ Radio Data System (RDS)\*

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

\* Not available on all models

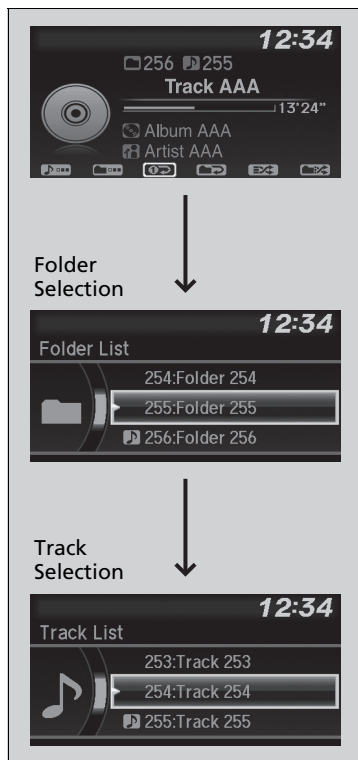
## Playing a CD


Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs, and CD-RWs in either MP3 or WMA, or AAC\*1 format. With the CD loaded, press the **CD/AUX** button.





\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.



## How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Press  to switch the display to a folder list.

2. Rotate  to select a folder.

3. Press  to display a list of tracks in that folder.

4. Rotate  to select a track, then press .

### ▶▶ Playing a CD

#### NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.



## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a track or file.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

### Repeat

**Repeat One Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC):** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat One Track:** Repeats the current track/file.

### Random

**Random in Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC):** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All:** Plays all tracks/files in random order.

### Scan

**Scan Folders (MP3/WMA/AAC):** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

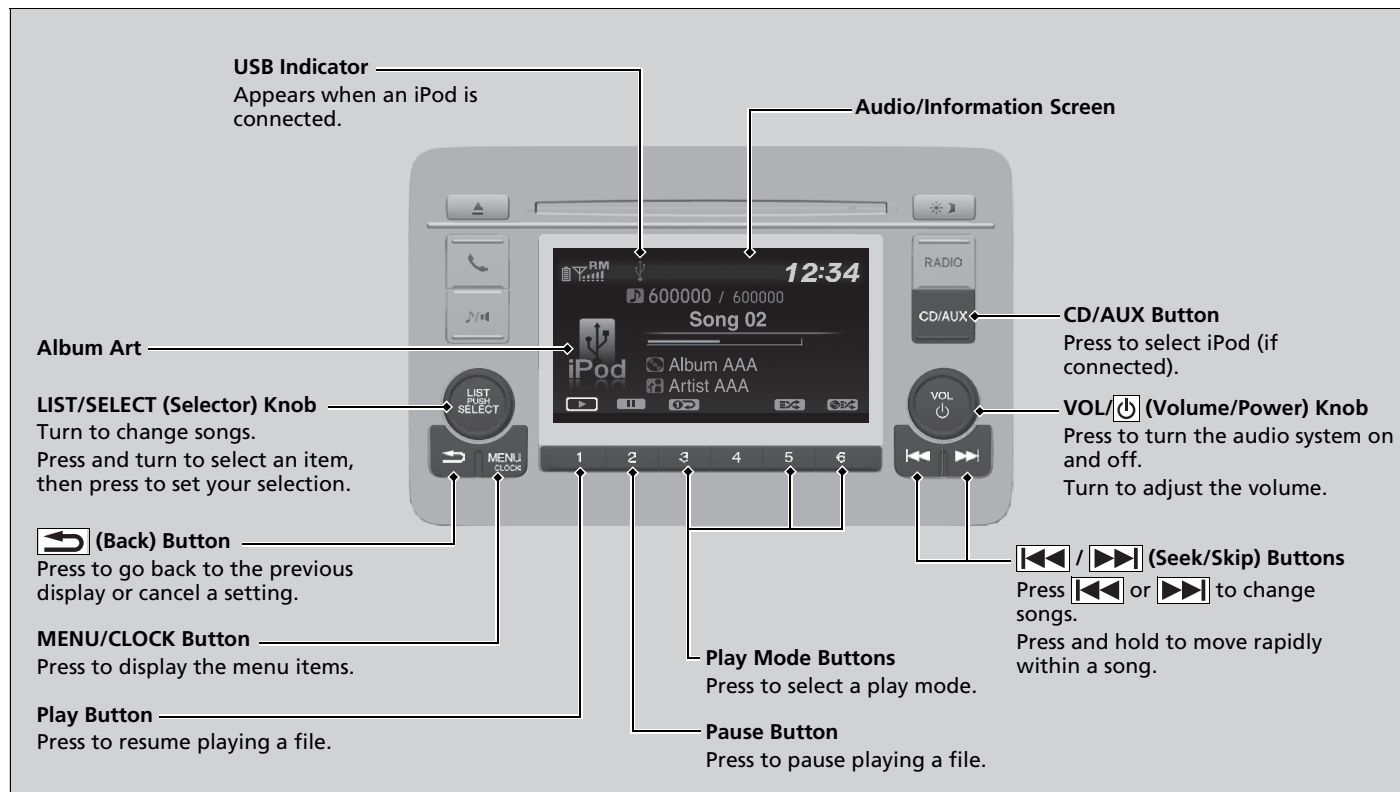
Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

## Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then press the **CD/AUX** button.

📌 **USB Port(s)** P. 263



## How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display the iPod music list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press .

▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

## ▶▶ Playing an iPod

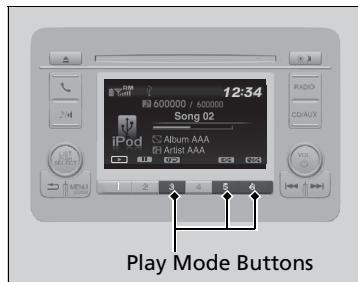
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

**iPod/USB Flash Drive\*** P. 336

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

### To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

**Shuffle Album:** Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

**Shuffle All:** Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

**Repeat One Track:** Repeats the current song.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

Rotate to select a mode, then press .

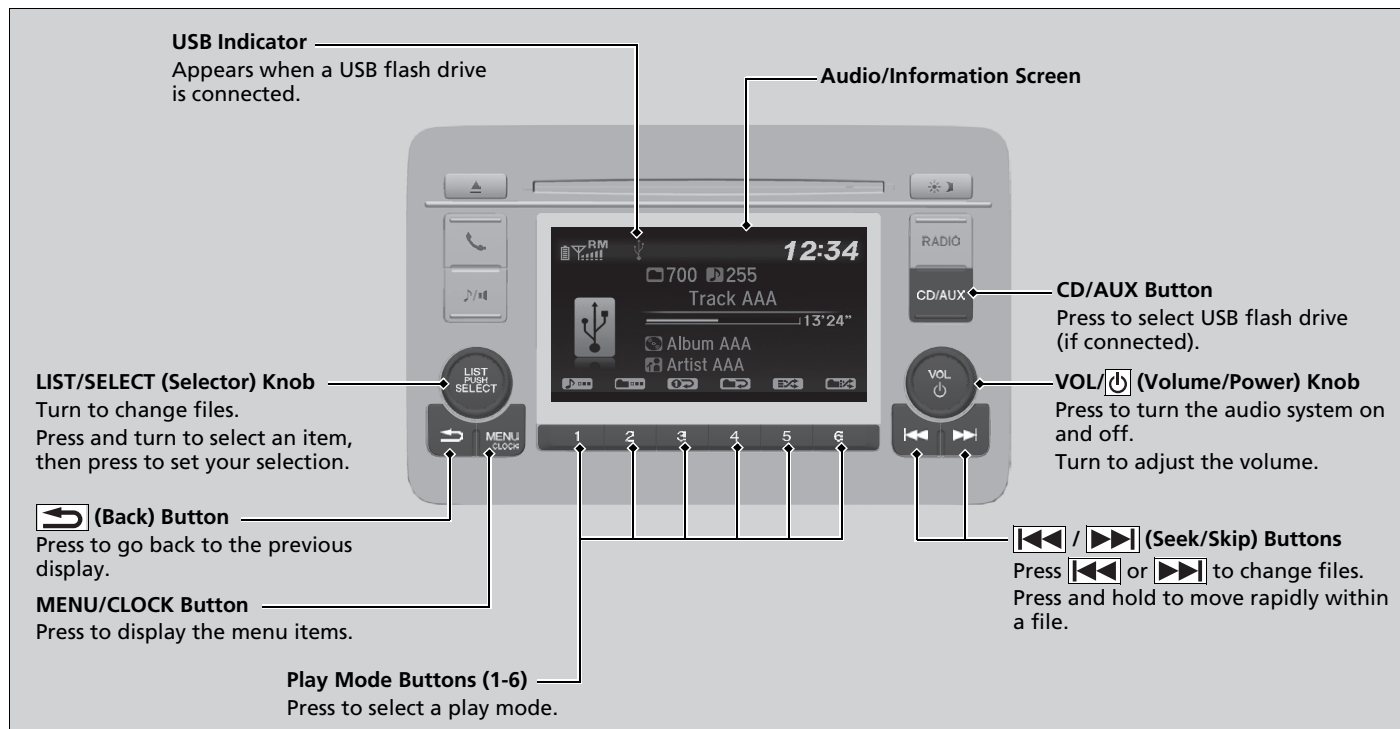
To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC\*1 format.

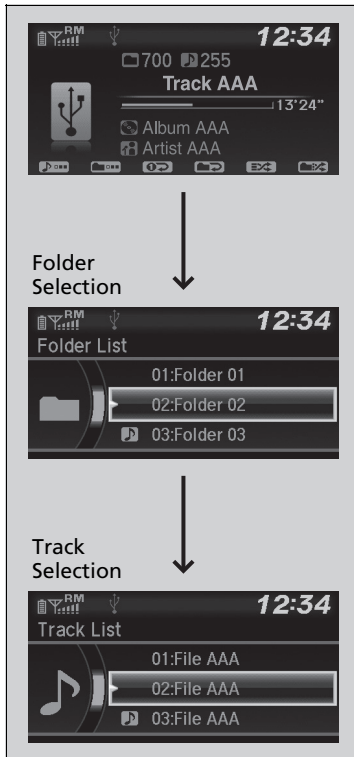
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **CD/AUX** button.

🔧 **USB Port(s)** P. 263



\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

## How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display a folder list.
2. Rotate to select a folder.
3. Press to display a list of files in that folder.
4. Rotate to select a file, then press .

### ▶▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System\***  
P. 337

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive\*** P. 336

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

### Repeat

**Repeat One Folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat One Track:** Repeats the current file.

### Random

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All:** Plays all files in random order.

### Scan

**Scan Folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the

**MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .

Rotate to select a mode, then press .

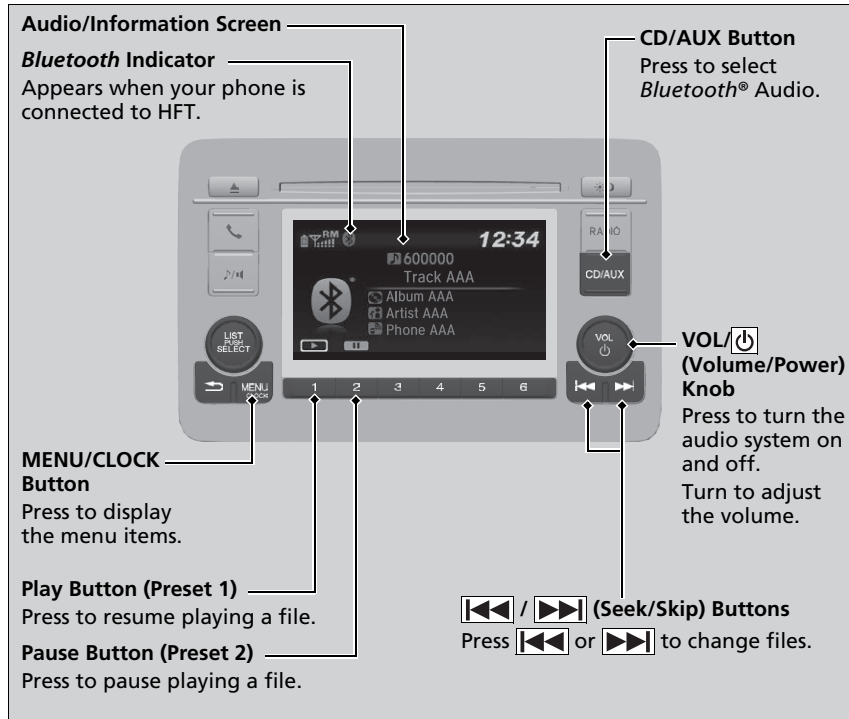
To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 390



### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

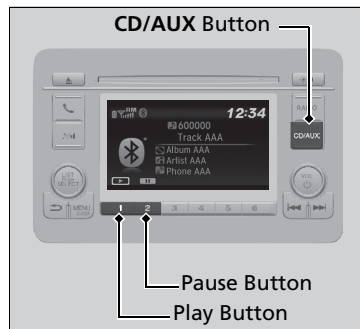
If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.



## ■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
2. Press the **CD/AUX** button until the Bluetooth Audio Source is selected.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

### ■ To pause or resume a file

Press a **Play** or **Pause** button to select a mode.

## ►► To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

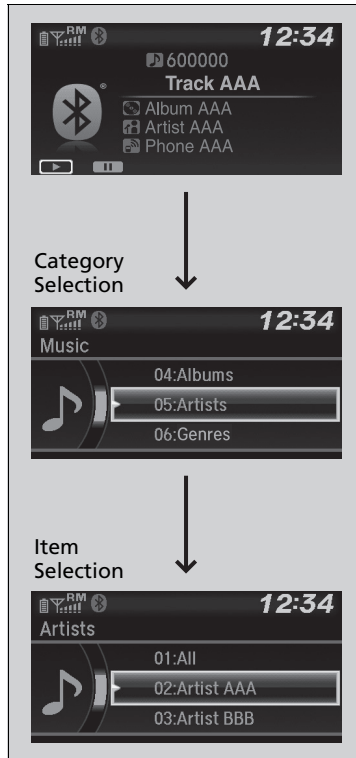
To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack or USB port, you may need to press the **CD/AUX** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob



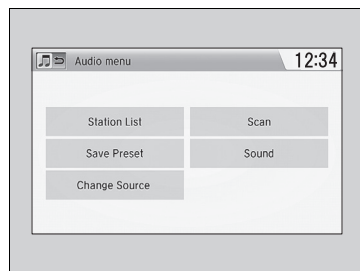
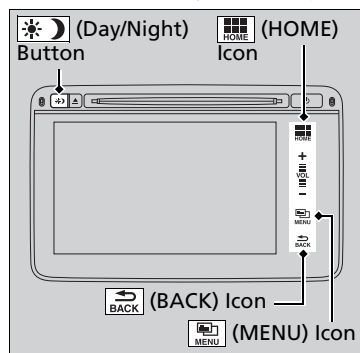
1. Press to display the music search list.
2. Rotate to select a category.
3. Press to display a list of items in the category.
4. Rotate to select an item, then press .
  - ▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

### How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.

## Models with display audio system

To use the audio system, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



: Select to go to the **HOME** screen.

**Switching the Display** P. 309

: Touch to select any mode.

The available mode includes **Change Source, Station List, Save Preset, Music Search,** and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from **Scan, Random/Repeat,** and so on.

: Select to go back to the previous display when it is displayed.

**button:**

Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press once and select or to make an adjustment.

► Each time you press , the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and **OFF** mode.

## Audio System Basic Operation

Audio menu items

**Station List** P. 317

**Music Search** P. 319, 322, 325, 328

**Random/Repeat** P. 320, 323, 326


**Scan** P. 317, 320, 326

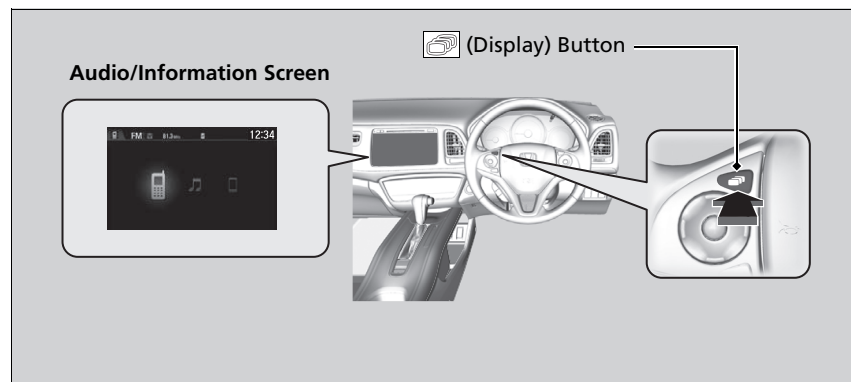
## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

### Switching the Display

Using the  button

Press the  (display) button on the steering wheel to change the display.

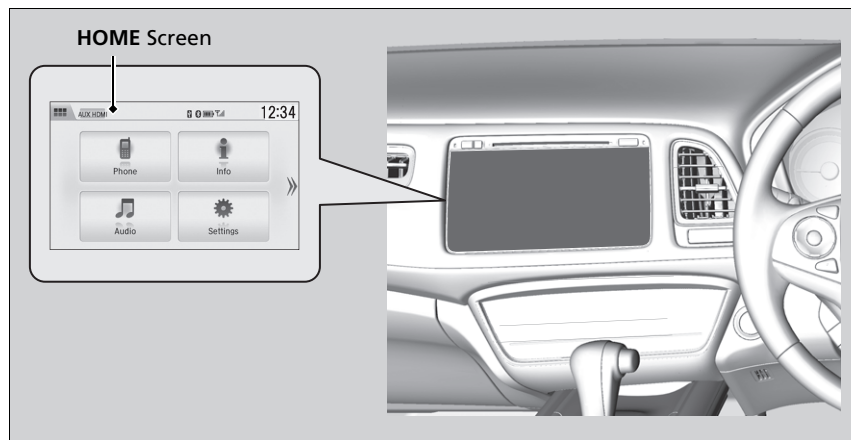


### Audio/Information Screen

- Use simple gestures — including touching, swiping, and scrolling — to operate certain audio functions.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.
- You can use the microfibre soft cleaning cloth to remove dust or fingerprints from the touchscreen.

Continued

### Using the HOME screen



Select **HOME** to go to the **HOME** screen.  
Select **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, or **Settings**.

#### ■ Phone

Shows the HFT information.

➤ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 405

#### ■ Info

Shows the **Trip Computer**, **Clock/Wallpaper\***, or **System/Device** information.

## ■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

## ■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

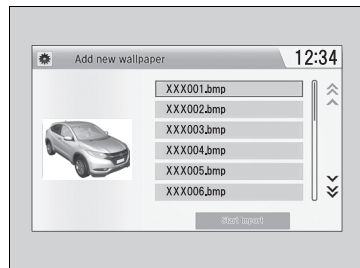
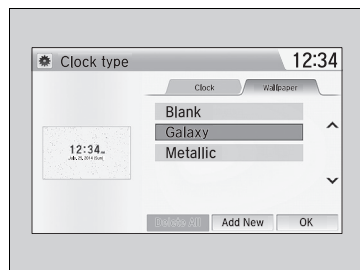
🔧 **Customized Features** P. 348

## ■ Wallpaper Setup\*

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### ■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.

■ **USB Port(s)** P. 263

2. Select **Settings** to go to the **Settings** screen.
3. Select **Info**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.
  - ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.
  - ▶ Then the display will return to the wallpaper list.

## ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup\*

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 256 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 5 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

### ■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings** to go to the **Settings** screen.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then the **Wallpaper** tab.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

### ■ To view wallpaper once it is set

1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper**.

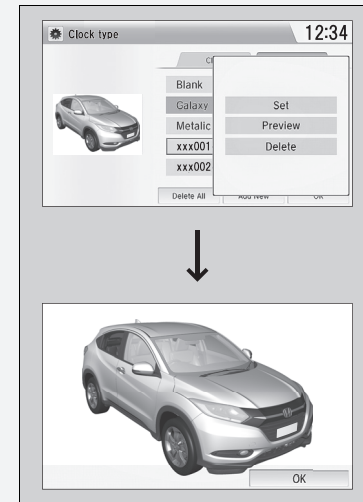
### ■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings** to go to the **Settings** screen.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then the **Wallpaper** tab.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
  - ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

\* Not available on all models

### ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup \*

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



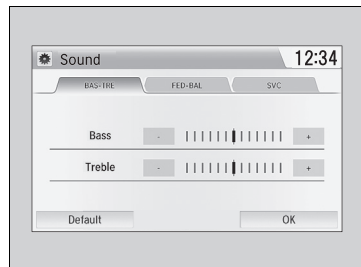
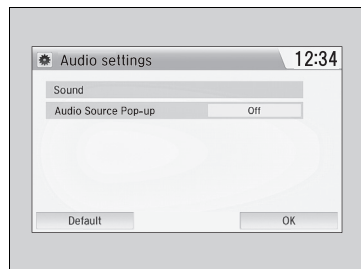
To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or **BACK**.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.



## Adjusting the Sound



1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Sound**.

Select the tabs to adjust the following choices:  
**BASS, TREBLE, FADER, BALANCE, SVC**  
 (Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation)

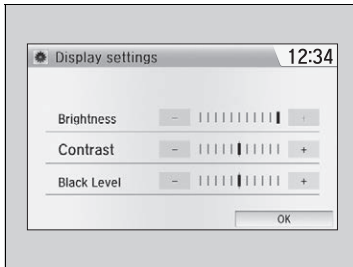
### ▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off, Low, Mid, and High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

# Display Setup

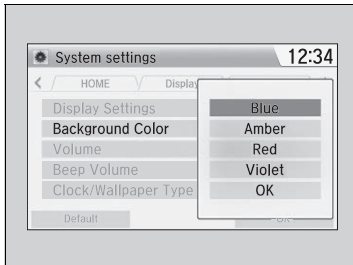
You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

## ■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings** to go to the **Settings** screen.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

## ■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

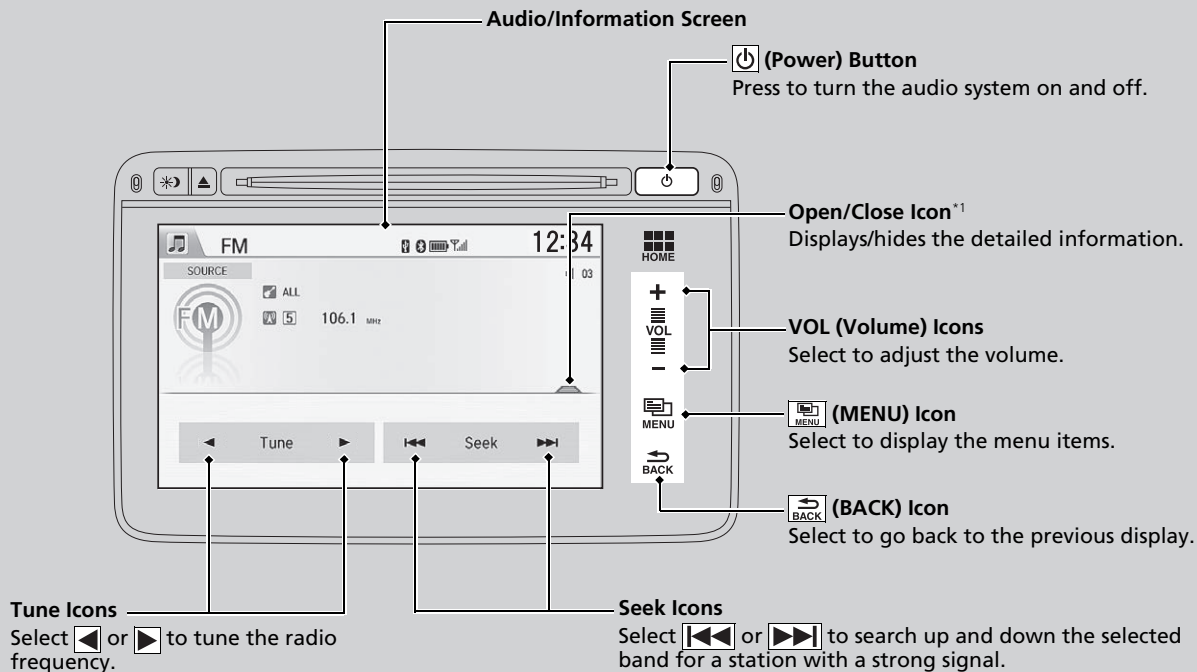


1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings** to go to the **Settings** screen.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Color**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

## ▶ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

## Playing AM/FM Radio



\*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## ■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Save Preset**.
4. Select the preset number you want to store that station.

## ■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select **MENU** to switch to the **Audio menu** screen.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select the station.

## ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select **MENU** to switch to the **Audio menu** screen.
2. Select **Station List**.
3. Select **Refresh**.

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Scan**.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel**.

## ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the audio mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the list.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls**\* P. 266

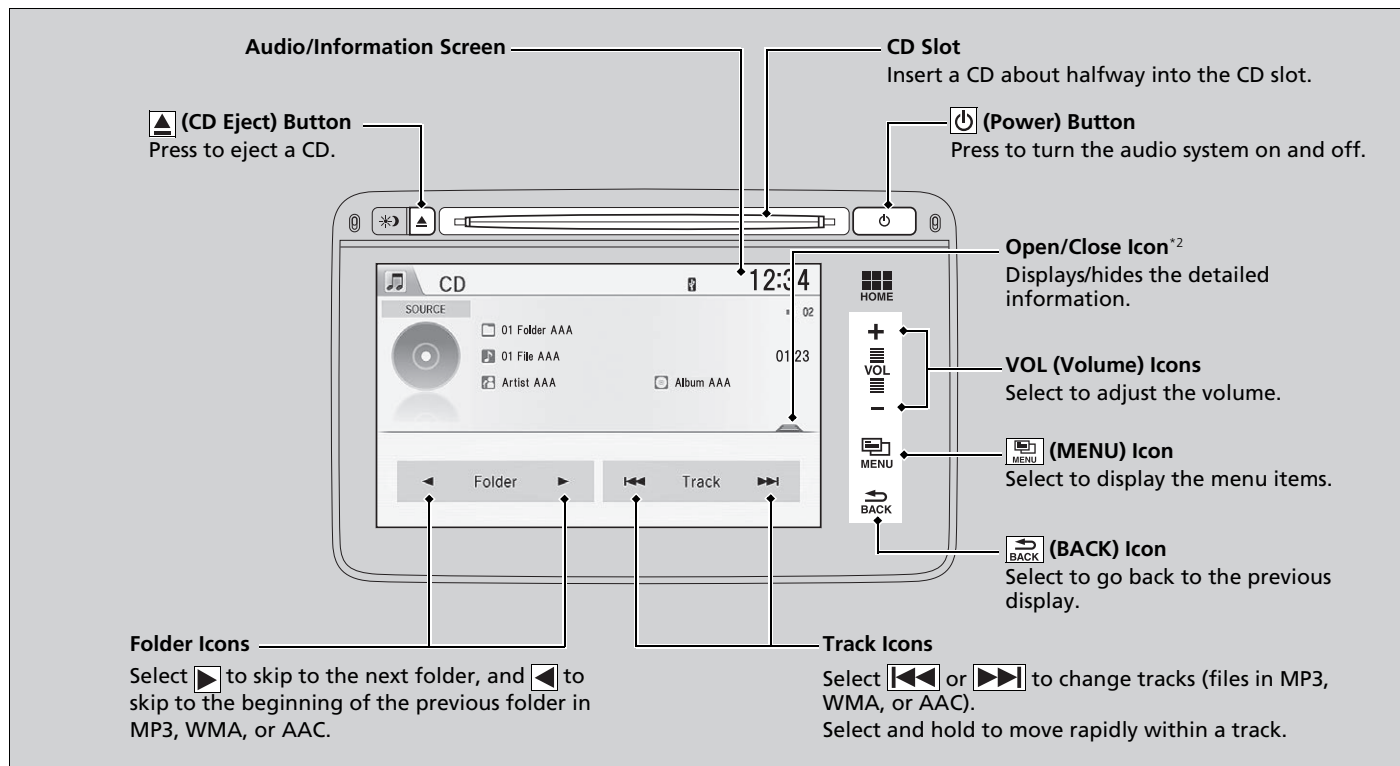
You can also switch the mode by selecting **Change Source** on the **MENU** screen.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.

\* Not available on all models

## Playing a CD

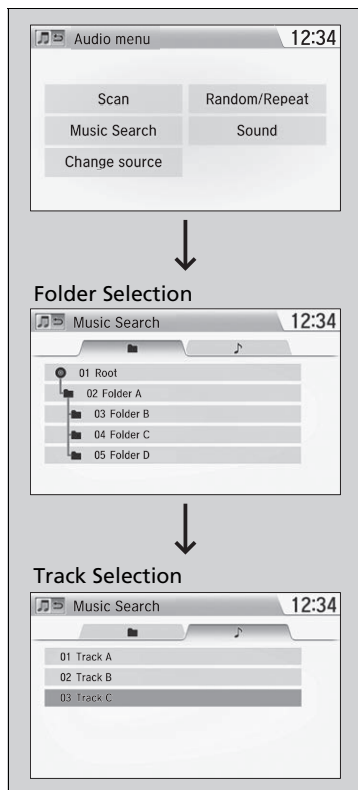
Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC\*1 format. With the CD loaded, select the CD mode.



\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

\*2: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

2. Select a folder.

3. Select a track.

## ▶▶ Playing a CD

### NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

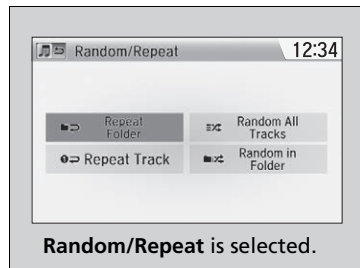
Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.



### ■ To turn off a play mode

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

### Scan

**Scan Folders** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks**: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

### Random/Repeat

**Repeat Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track**: Repeats the current track/file.

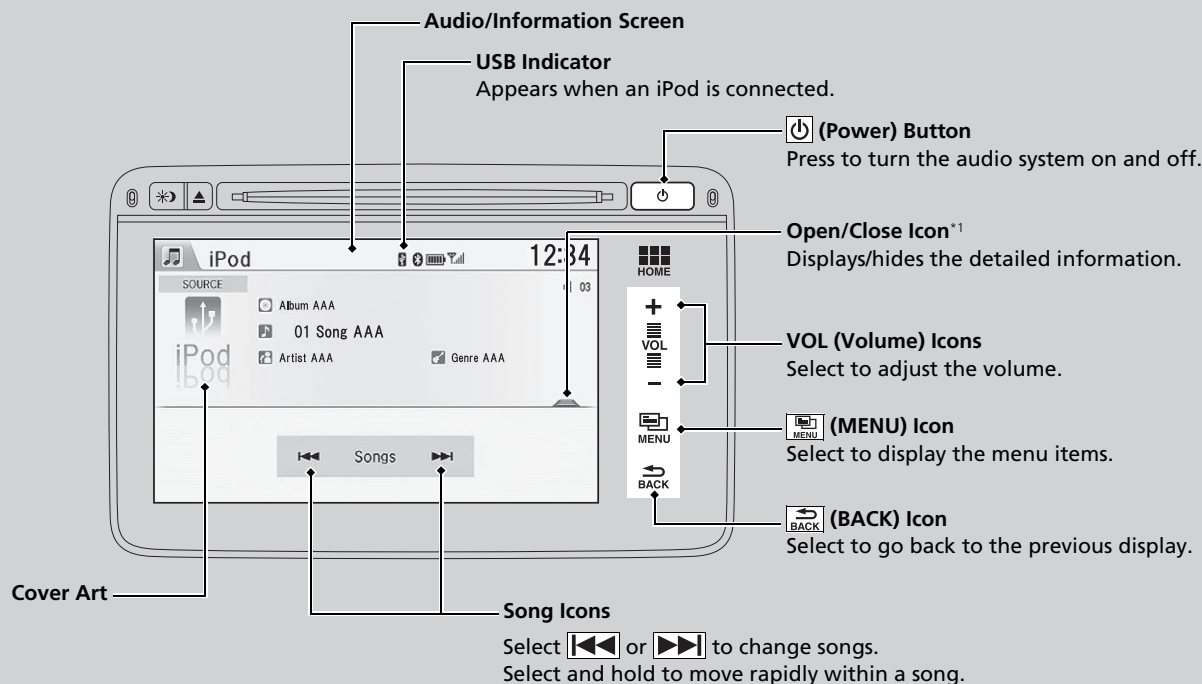
**Random in Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All Tracks**: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

## Playing an iPod

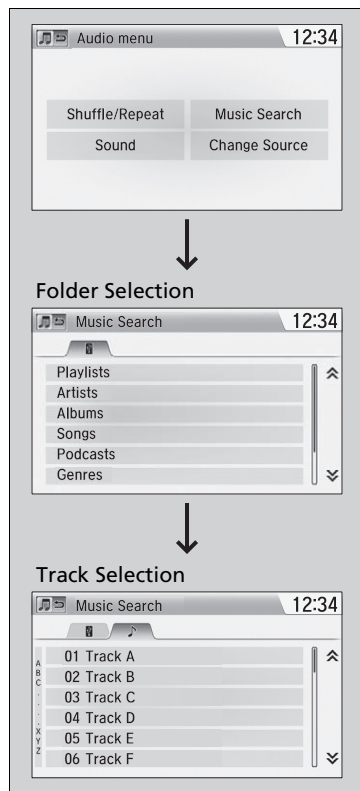
Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

■ **USB Port(s)** P. 263





## ■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.
2. Select the items on that menu.

## ▶▶ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

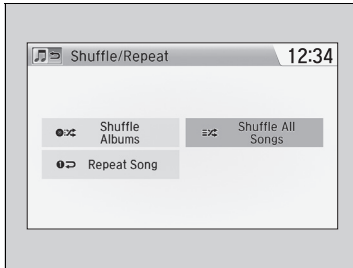
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive**\* P. 336

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the display audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the display audio. Reconnect the device if necessary.

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Shuffle/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

## ■ To turn off a play mode

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

**Repeat Song:** Repeats the current file.

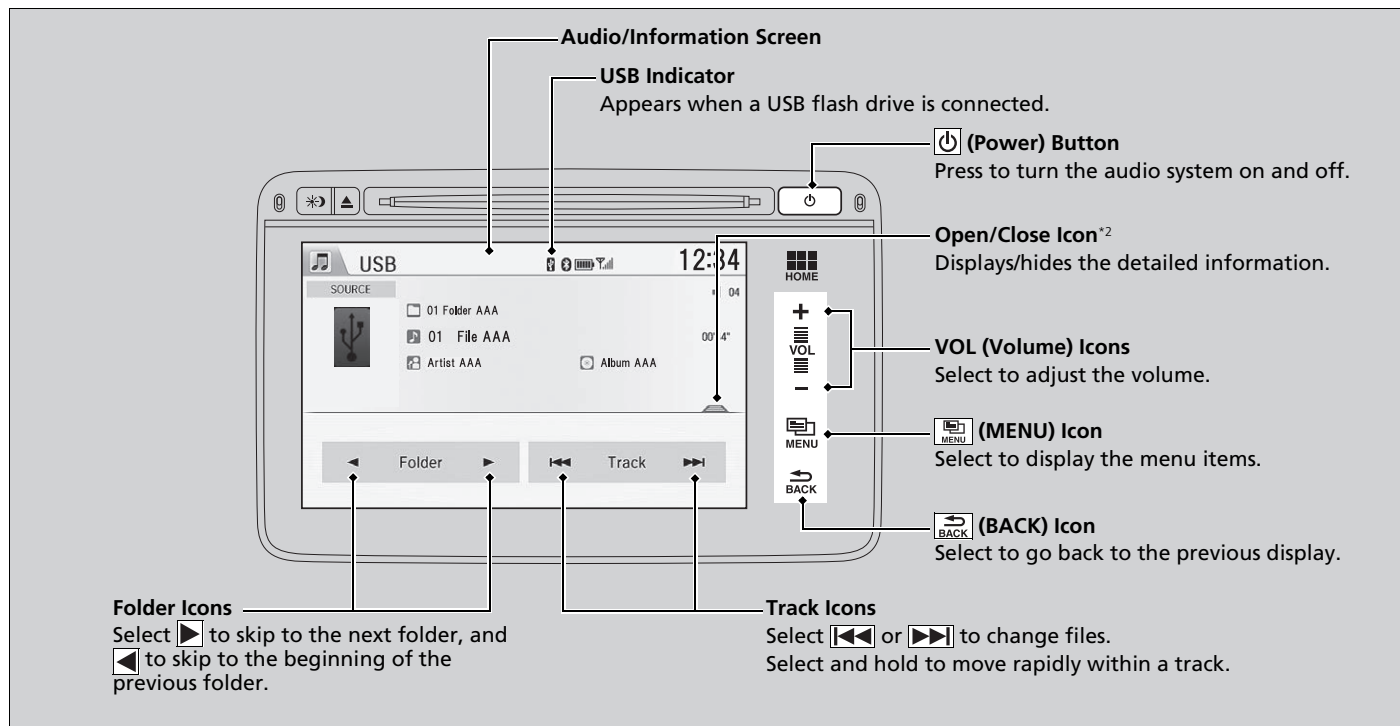
**Shuffle Albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

**Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC\*<sup>1</sup> format. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

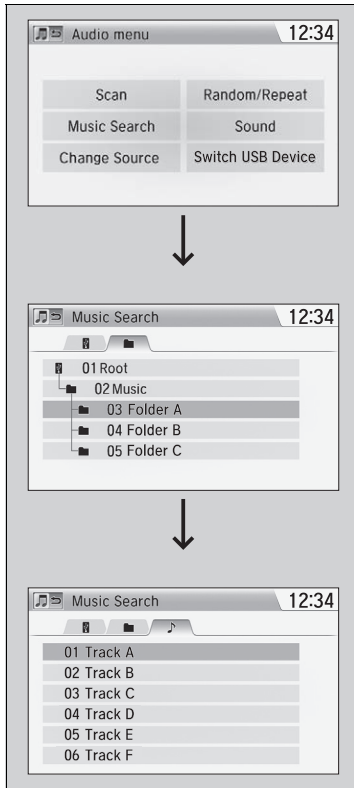
🔌 **USB Port(s)** P. 263



\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

\*2: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.
2. Select **Music** or **Movie**.

3. Select a folder.

4. Select a track.

## ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System\***  
P. 337

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

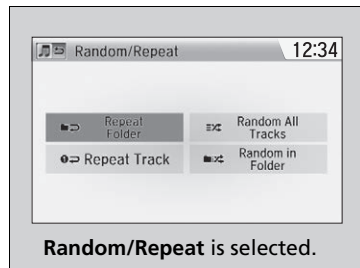
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive\*** P. 336

\* Not available on all models

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**.
3. Select a mode.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

## ►► How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

### Scan

**Scan Folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

### Random/Repeat

**Repeat Folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current file.

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All Tracks:** Plays all files in random order.

When playing a video file:

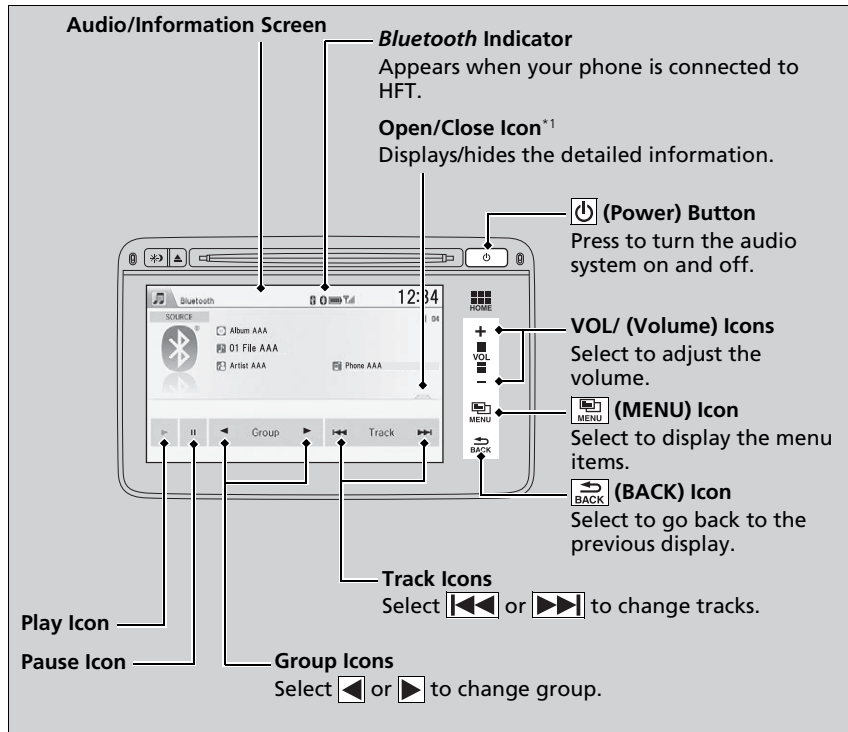
**Slow:** Plays the movie slowly.

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 411



### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically linked.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

A **No Device Connected** message may be displayed if:

- The phone is not linked to HFT.
- The phone is not turned on.
- The phone is not in the vehicle.
- An incompatible phone is connected.

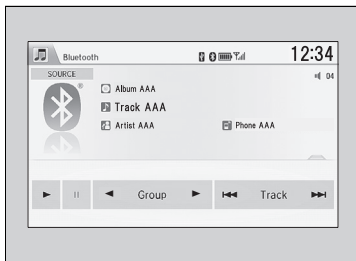
The following functions may not be available on some devices:

- Pause function
- Group selection

<sup>\*1</sup>: Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Continued

## ■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 411

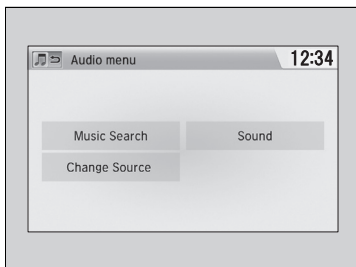
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

## ■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon, respectively.

## ■ Searching for Music



1. Select **MENU**.

2. Select **Music Search**.

3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).

4. Select an item.

▶ The selection begins playing.

## ▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

## ▶▶ Searching for Music

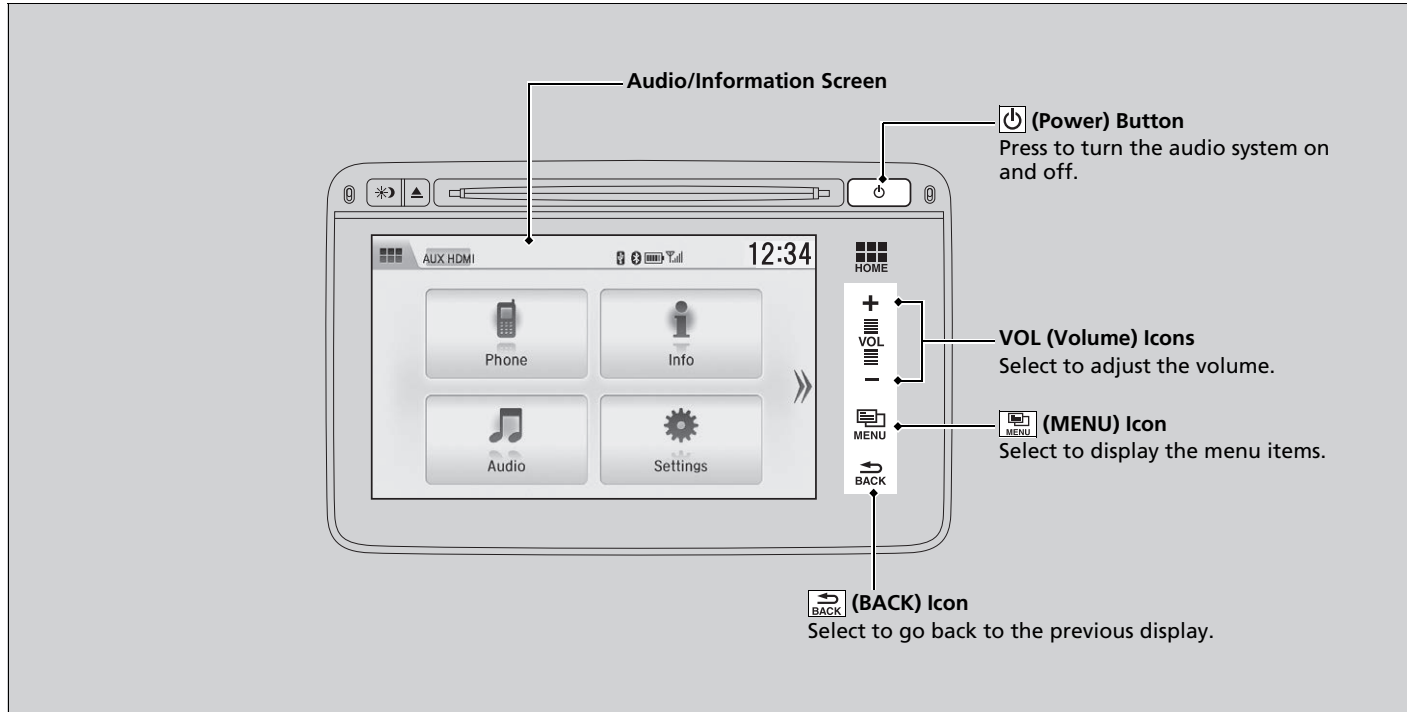
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

Your audio system allows you to play videos from an HDMI™-compatible device.

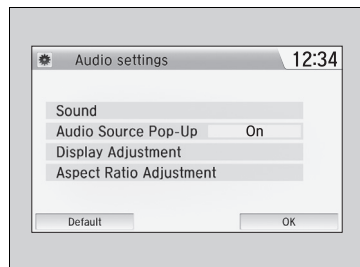
Connect the device, using an HDMI™ cable, then select the HDMI™ mode.

📺 **HDMI™ Port** \* P. 264





## ■ Changing the Screen Aspect



1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings** to go to the **Settings** screen.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Aspect Ratio Adjustment**.
5. Select the setting you want.
6. Select **OK**.

## ▶▶ Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

This feature is limited while driving. To play videos, stop your vehicle and apply the parking brake.

## Smartphone Connection

Some of your smartphone apps can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when the phone is connected to the audio system. You can connect your phone using a cable.

📱 **Connecting Your iPhone** P. 333

### 📱 Smartphone Connection

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

It may be necessary to set on your smartphone. For details about operating your smartphone, see the manual that comes with it or ask a dealer.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth®* connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

📱 **Changing the currently paired phone**  
P. 412

The following may vary by phone type:

- Connection methods.
- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.

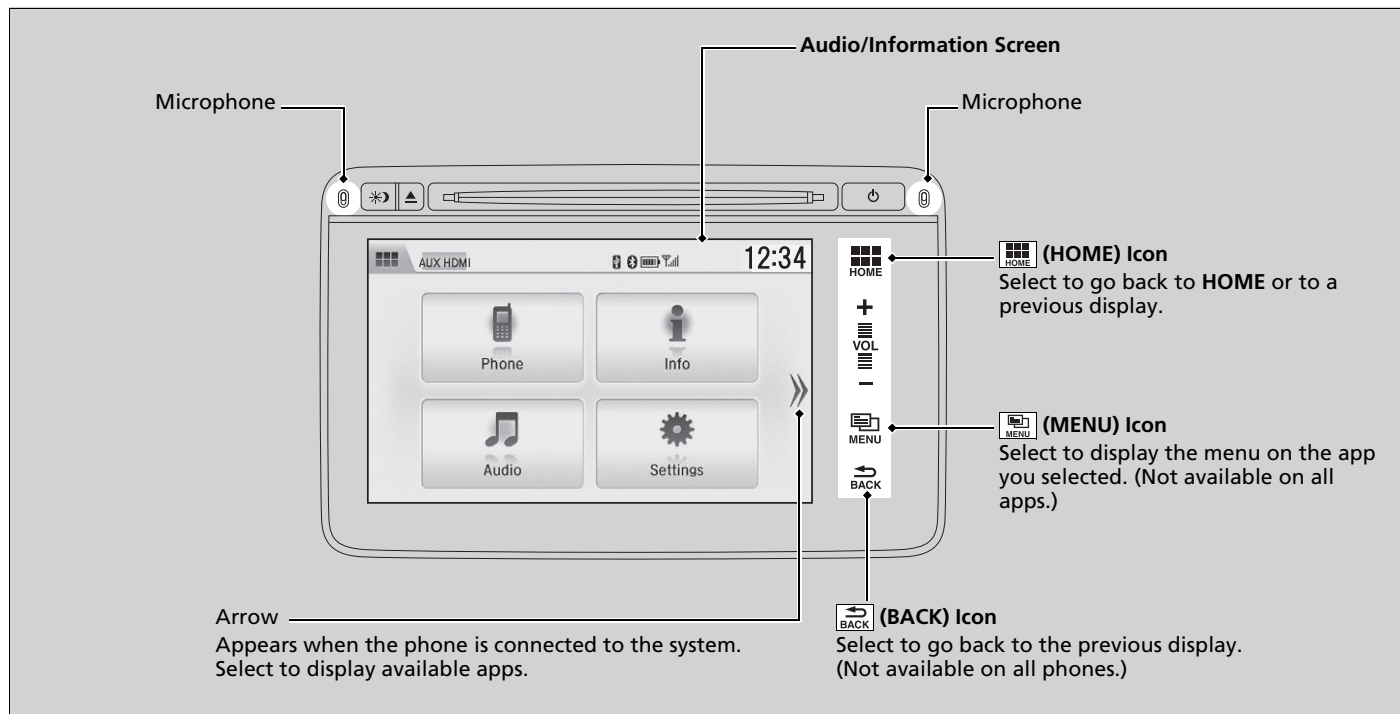
We do not support every app operation on the display audio.

Ask the app provider for any questions on the app's features.

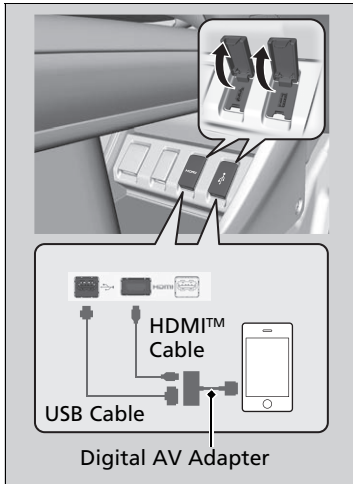
Do not get drawn into the display while operating a vehicle.

To use smartphone connection, you need to first pair your smartphone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 411



## ■ Connecting Your iPhone



1. Connect your phone to the display audio via *Bluetooth*®.  
 ▶ **Phone Setup** P. 411
2. Plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ jack.
3. Connect the digital AV adapter to your iPhone.  
 ▶ Wait until an arrow appears on the home screen.
4. Select the arrow to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.  
 ▶ You may need to operate from the phone.
5. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.  
 ▶ To go back to the previous screen, select **HOME**.


## ✕ Connecting Your iPhone

Make sure to plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ jack first. If not, smartphone connection may not work properly.

To recharge your phone, connect it to the USB jack, too.

Contact a dealer for the digital AV adapter or HDMI™ cable purchasing information.

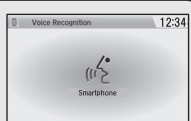
## Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone System.

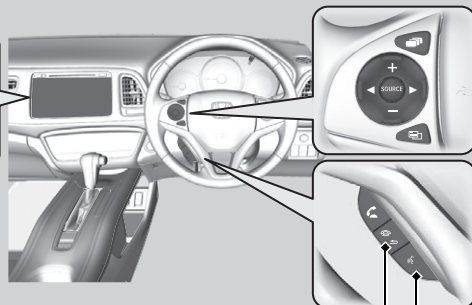
▶ **Phone Setup** P. 411

### ■ Using Siri Eyes Free

Appears when Siri is activated in Siri Eyes Free



While in Siri Eyes Free:  
The display remains the same.  
No feedback or commands appear.



 **(Hang-up/back) button:**

Press to deactivate Siri.

 **(Talk) button:**

Press and hold until the display changes as shown.

### ▶ Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc, website for features available for Siri.






We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

### ▶ Using Siri Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

## CD Player

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

Error Message* <sup>1</sup>	Cause	Solution
<b>Unplayable File</b>	Track/file format not supported	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.</li> </ul>
<b>Bad Disc</b> <b>Please check Owner's Manual</b> <b>Please push eject button*<sup>2</sup></b> <b>Bad Disc</b> <b>Please Check Owner's Manual</b> <b>Push Eject*<sup>3</sup></b>	Mechanical error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the  (eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared.</li> <li>Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Protecting CDs</b> P. 338</li> </ul> </li> <li>If the error message reappears, press the  button, and pull out the disc.</li> <li>Insert a different disc.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc.</li> </ul> </li> <li>If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not try to force the disc out of the player.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Mecha Error</b>		
<b>Bad Disc</b> <b>Please Check Owner's Manual</b>	Servo error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Protecting CDs</b> P. 338</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Check Disc</b>	Disc error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Protecting CDs</b> P. 338</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Heat Error</b>	High temperature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.</li> </ul>

\*1: On the monochrome audio system, the error messages are displayed in capitals.

\*2: Display audio system, Monochrome audio system

\*3: Colour audio system

# iPod/USB Flash Drive\*

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
<b>USB Error</b> *1, *2, *3	Appears when there is a problem with the USB adapter unit. Check if the device is compatible with the USB adapter unit.
<b>The connected USB device has a problem.</b> <b>See Owner's Manual</b> *1 <b>Bad USB Device</b> *2, *3	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
<b>Unsupported Version</b> *1 <b>Unsupported Ver</b> *2, *3	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
<b>Connect Retry</b> *1, *3 <b>Retry Connection</b> *2	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
<b>Unplayable File</b> *1, *2, *3	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.
<b>No Data</b> *1, *2, *3 <b>USB No Song</b> *2, *3 <b>iPod No Song</b> *2, *3	<b>iPod</b> Appears when the iPod is empty.
	<b>USB flash drive</b> Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash drive.
	<b>iPod and USB flash drive</b> Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
<b>Unsupported</b> *1, *2, *3	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

\*1 : Display audio system  
\*2 : Colour audio system  
\*3 : Monochrome audio system  
The error message is displayed in capitals.

\* Not available on all models

## Recommended CDs

- Use only high-quality CD-R or CD-RW discs labelled for audio use.
- Use only CD-R or CD-RW discs on which the recordings are closed.
- Play only standard round-shaped CDs.

The CD packages or jackets should have one of these marks.



### Recommended CDs

A Dual-disc cannot play on this audio unit. If recorded under certain conditions, a CD-R or CD-RW may not play either.

### CDs with MP3, WMA, or AAC files

- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Protecting CDs

Follow these precautions when handling or storing CDs:

- Store a CD in its case when it is not being played.
- When wiping a CD, use a soft clean cloth from the centre to the outside edge.
- Handle a CD by its edge. Never touch either surface.
- Never insert foreign objects into the CD player.
- Keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.
- Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD.
- Avoid fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens on the CD.

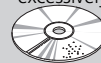
## ►► Protecting CDs

### NOTICE

Do not insert a damaged CD. It may be stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

### Examples:

- Bubbled, wrinkled, labelled, and excessively thick CDs



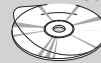
Bubbled/  
Wrinkled



With Label/  
Sticker



Using  
Printer Label  
Kit

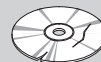


Sealed

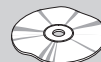


With Plastic Ring

- Damaged CDs



Chipped/  
Cracked



Warped



Burrs

- Poor quality CDs

- Small CDs



8-cm  
CD

## Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

### ■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)* <sup>1</sup> , * <sup>2</sup>
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 6th generation) launch in 2010
iPod nano (7th generation) launch in 2012
iPod touch (1st to 4th generation) launch in 2010
iPod touch (5th generation) launch in 2012
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s* <sup>1</sup> , * <sup>2</sup> /iPhone 5c* <sup>1</sup> , * <sup>2</sup>

\*1: Models with monochrome audio system

\*2: Models with colour audio system

### ■ USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

### ⌘ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

### ⌘ USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Models with display audio system

■ Recommended Devices



Media	USB device	
Profile (MP4 version)	Baseline Level 3 (MPEG4-AVC), Simple Level 5 (MPEG4)	
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
Bit rate	10 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
Maximum image	720 X 576 pixels	

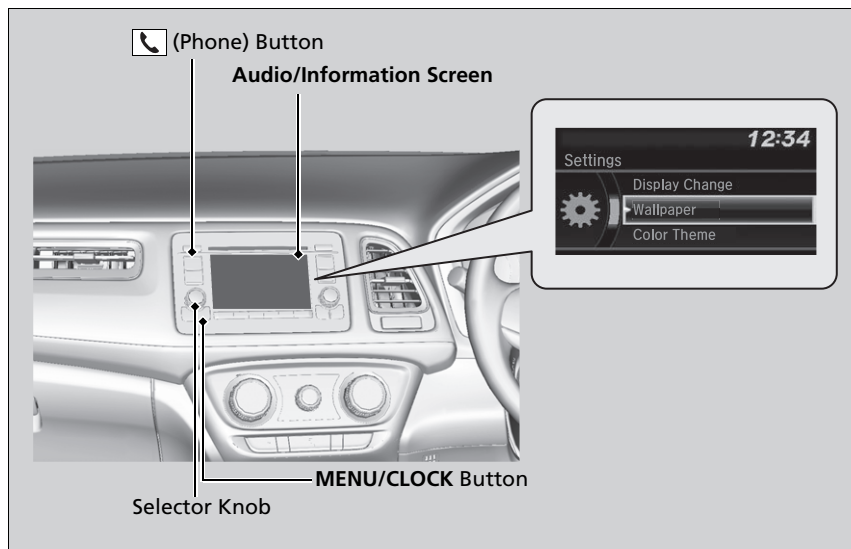
# Customized Features

## Models with colour audio system

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

### ■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON <sup>\*1</sup>, press the **MENU/CLOCK** button, then select **Settings**. To customize the phone settings, press the  button, then select **Phone Setup**.



\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Customized Features

When you customize settings:



- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to **P**.

## How to customize

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

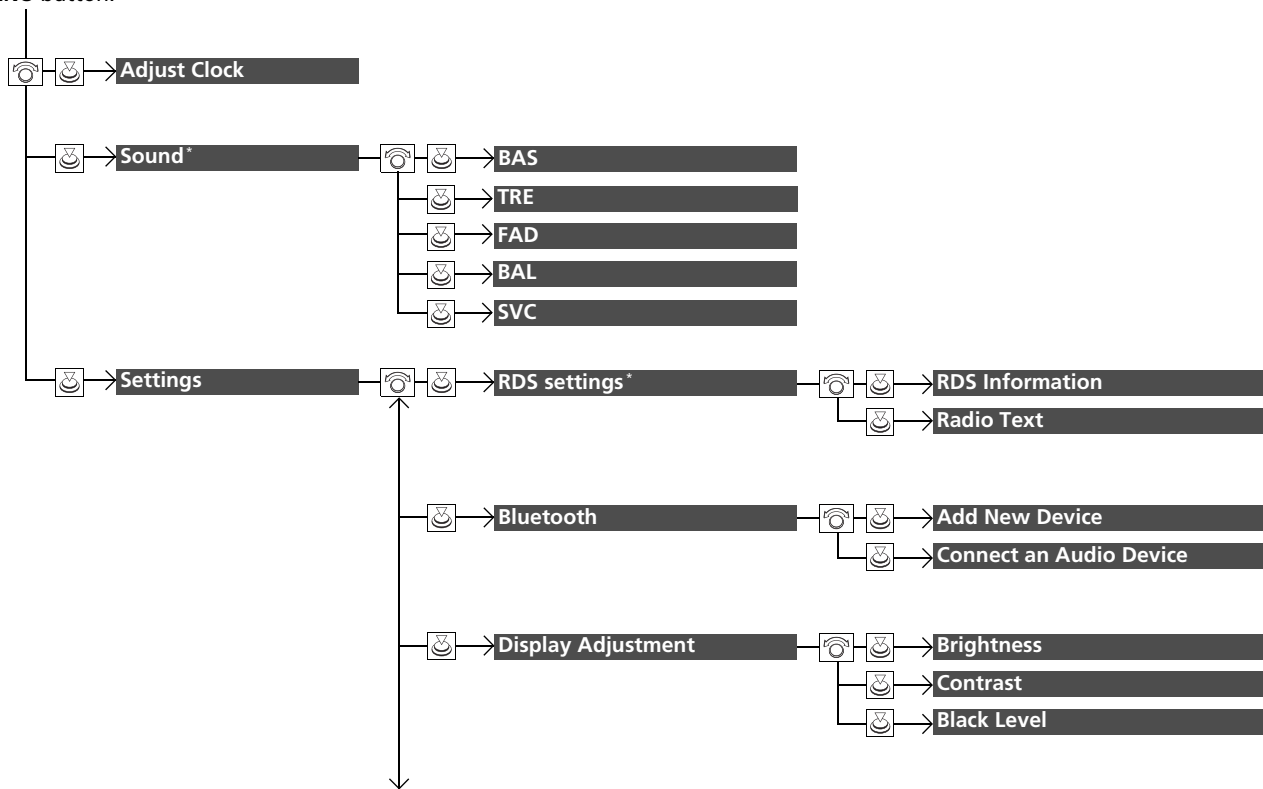
To customize other features, select **Settings**, rotate , then press .

➤ **List of customizable options** P. 345

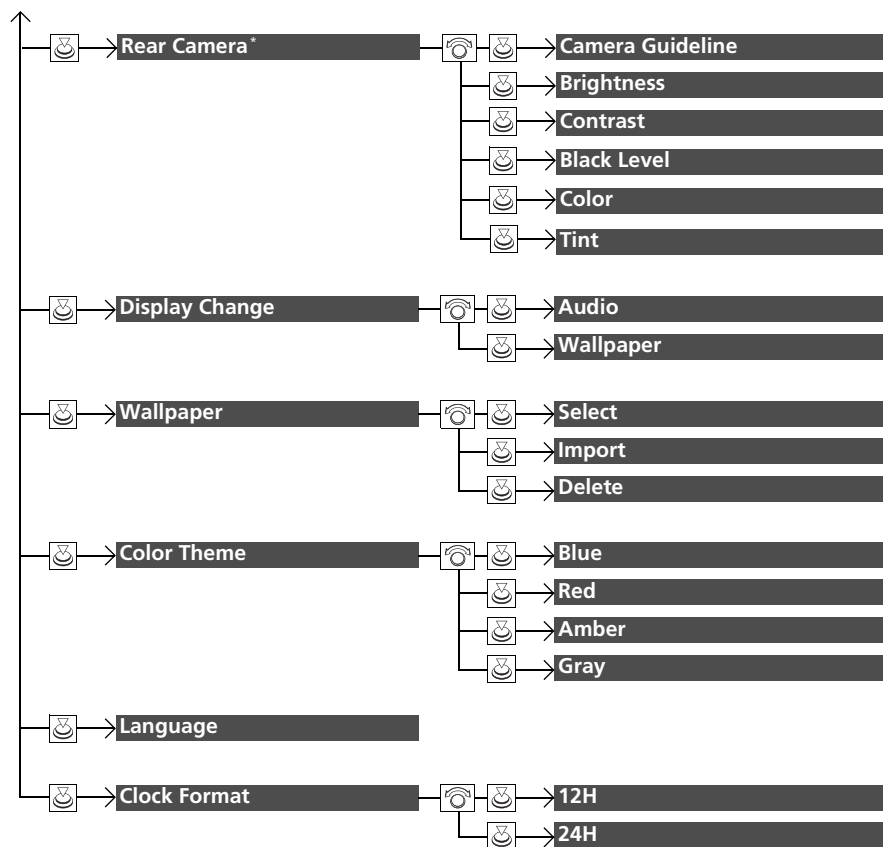
Continued

## ■ Customization Flow

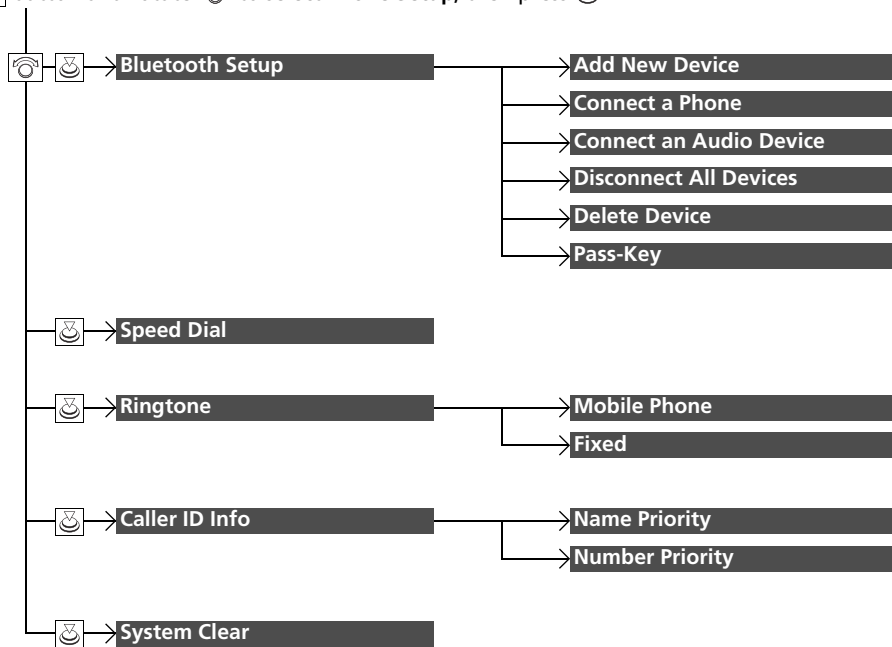
Press the **MENU** button.



\*1: Except AM/FM mode



Press the  button and rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .



## ■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Sound*	<b>Adjust Clock</b>	Adjusts Clock. ▶ <b>Clock</b> P. 156	—
	<b>BAS</b>		
	<b>TRE</b>	Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound. ▶ <b>Adjusting the Sound</b> P. 291	—
	<b>FAD</b>		
	<b>BAL</b>		
	<b>SVC</b>		
Settings	<b>RDS settings*</b>	<b>RDS Information</b>	Selects whether the RDS information comes on. <b>On/Off</b> *1
		<b>Radio Text</b>	Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station. —
	<b>Bluetooth</b>	<b>Add New Device</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a code for a paired phone. ▶ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 390 —
		<b>Connect an Audio Device</b>	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT. —
	<b>Display Adjustment</b>	<b>Brightness</b>	Changes the brightness of the audio/ information screen. —
		<b>Contrast</b>	Changes the contrast of the audio/ information screen. —
		<b>Black Level</b>	Changes the black level of the audio/ information screen. —

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Settings	<b>Camera Guideline</b>	Selects whether the guidelines come on the audio/information screen.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Rear Camera*</b>		
	<b>Brightness</b>		
	<b>Contrast</b>		
	<b>Black Level</b>	Adjusts the rear camera display settings.	—
	<b>Color</b>		
	<b>Tint</b>		
	<b>Display Change</b>	Changes the display type.	<b>Audio*<sup>1</sup>/Wallpaper</b>
	<b>Wallpaper</b>		
	<b>Select</b>	Changes the wallpaper type.	<b>Clock*<sup>1</sup>/Image1/Image2/Image3</b>
	<b>Import</b>	Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. 📁 <b>Wallpaper Setup</b> P. 289	—
	<b>Delete</b>	Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	<b>Image1*<sup>1</sup>/Image2/Image3</b>
	<b>Color Theme</b>	Changes the background colour of the audio/information screen.	<b>Blue*<sup>1</sup>/Red/Amber/Grey</b>
	<b>Language</b>	Changes the display language.	<b>English/French/Spanish English/Indonesian/Thai/Malay</b>
	<b>Clock Format</b>	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	<b>12H*<sup>1</sup>/24H</b>

\*1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone Setup	<b>Add New Device</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT. 📶 <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 390	—
	<b>Connect a Phone</b>	Pairs a new phone or connects a paired phone to HFT. 📶 <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 390	—
	<b>Bluetooth Setup</b>		
	<b>Connect an Audio Device</b>	Connects a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT.	—
	<b>Disconnect All Devices</b>	Disconnects a paired phone from HFT.	—
	<b>Delete Device</b>	Deletes a paired phone.	—
	<b>Pass-Key</b>	Inputs and changes a code for a paired phone.	—
	<b>Speed Dial</b>	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. 📶 <b>Speed Dial</b> P. 397	—
	<b>Ringtone</b>	Selects the ring tone.	<b>Mobile Phone</b> *1/ <b>Fixed</b>
	<b>Caller ID Info</b>	Prioritizes the caller's name or phone number as the caller ID.	<b>Name Priority</b> *1/ <b>Number Priority</b>
	<b>System Clear</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Phone Setup</b> group as default.	—

\*1:Default Setting

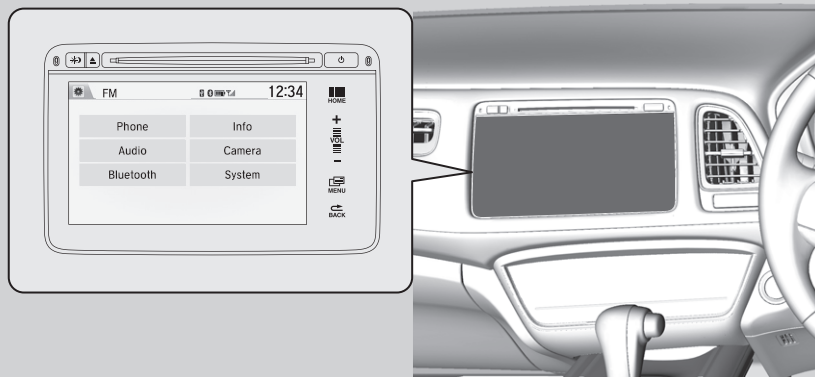
## Models with display audio system

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

### ■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, select **Settings**, then select a setting item.

#### Audio/Information Screen



## Customized Features

When you customize settings:

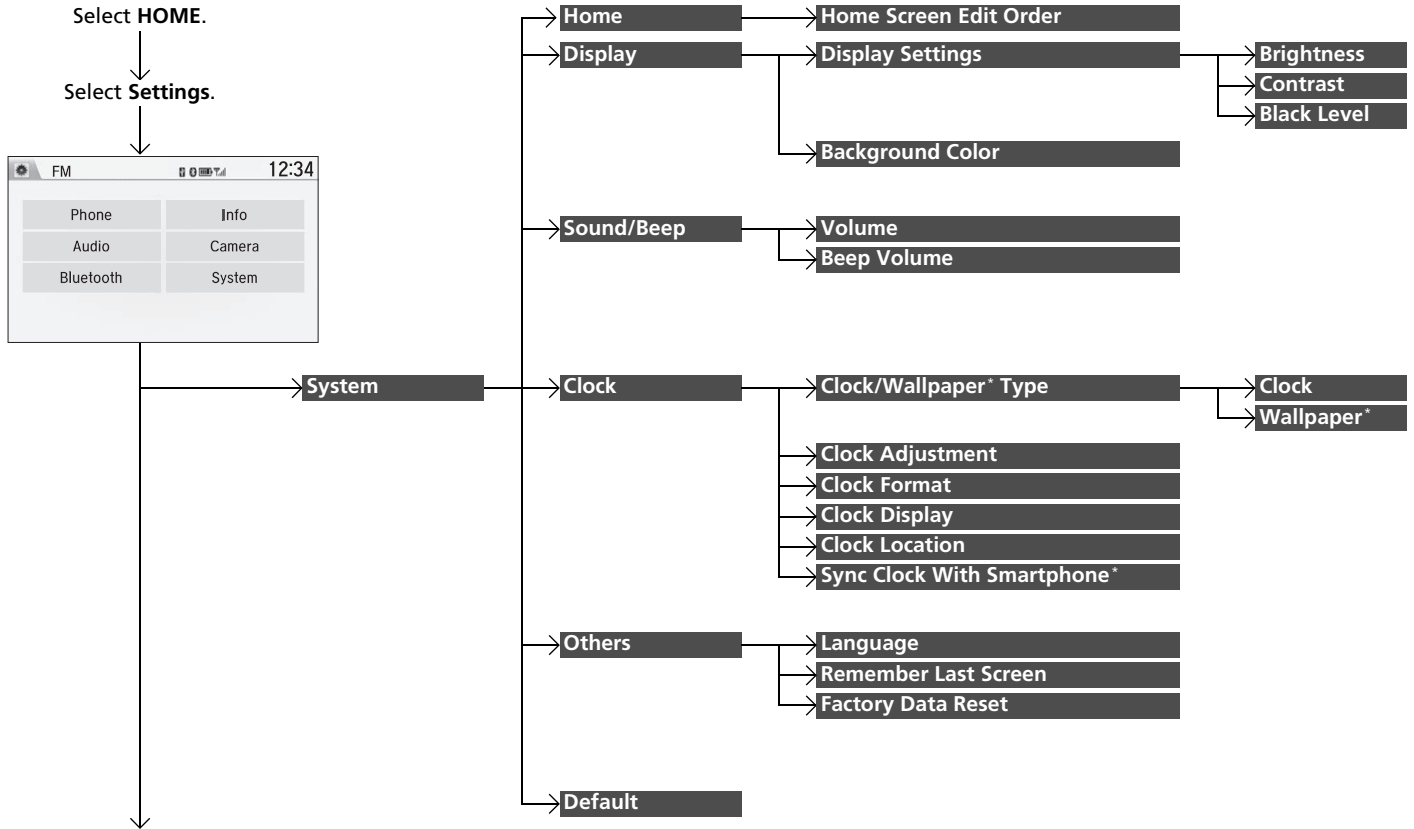
- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to **P**.

## How to customize

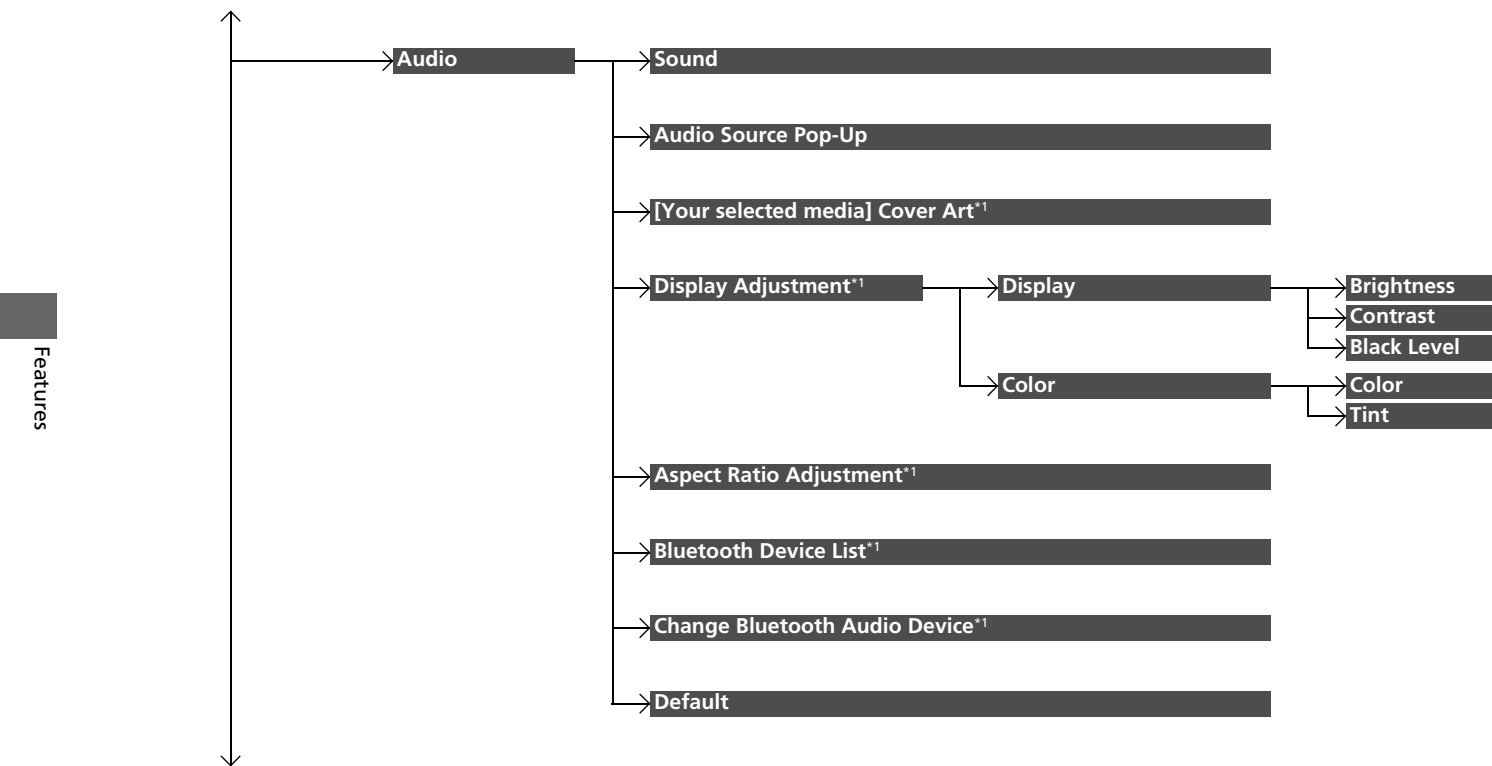
To customize other features, select **Settings**.

➤ **List of customizable options** P. 353

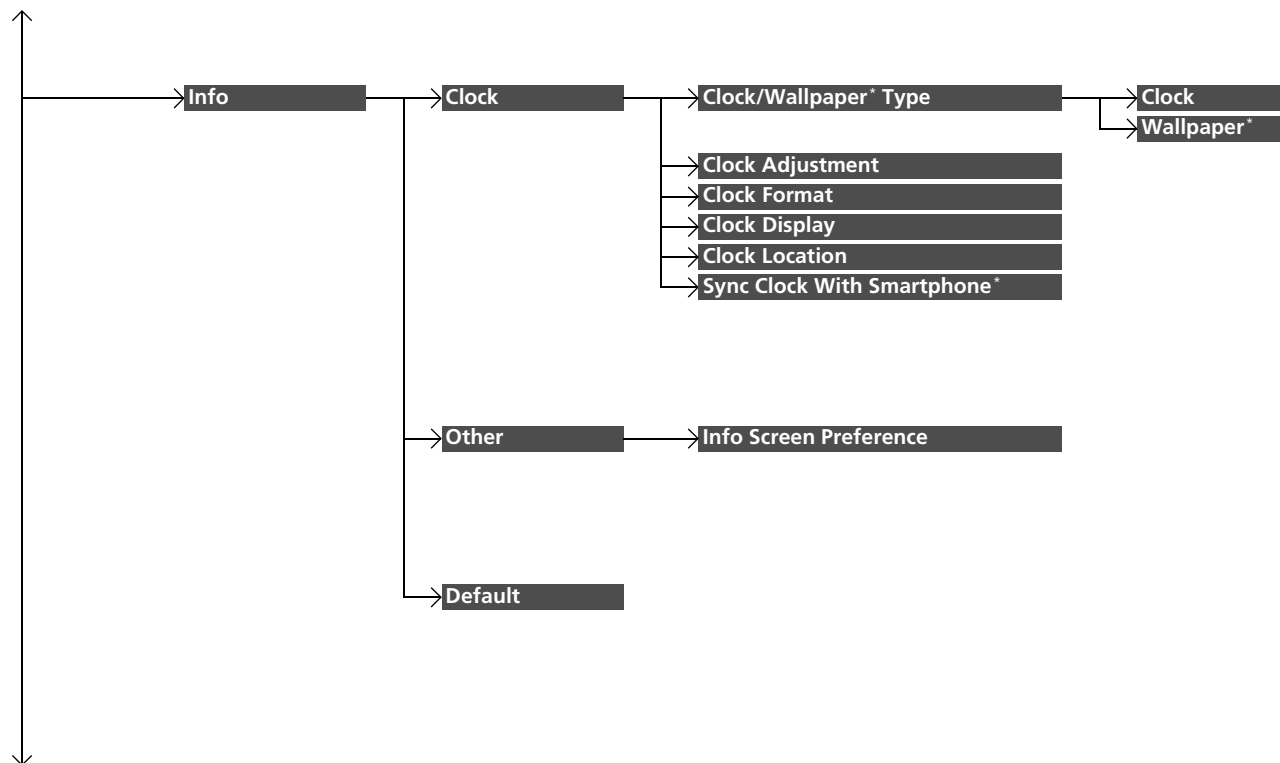
## ■ Customization flow

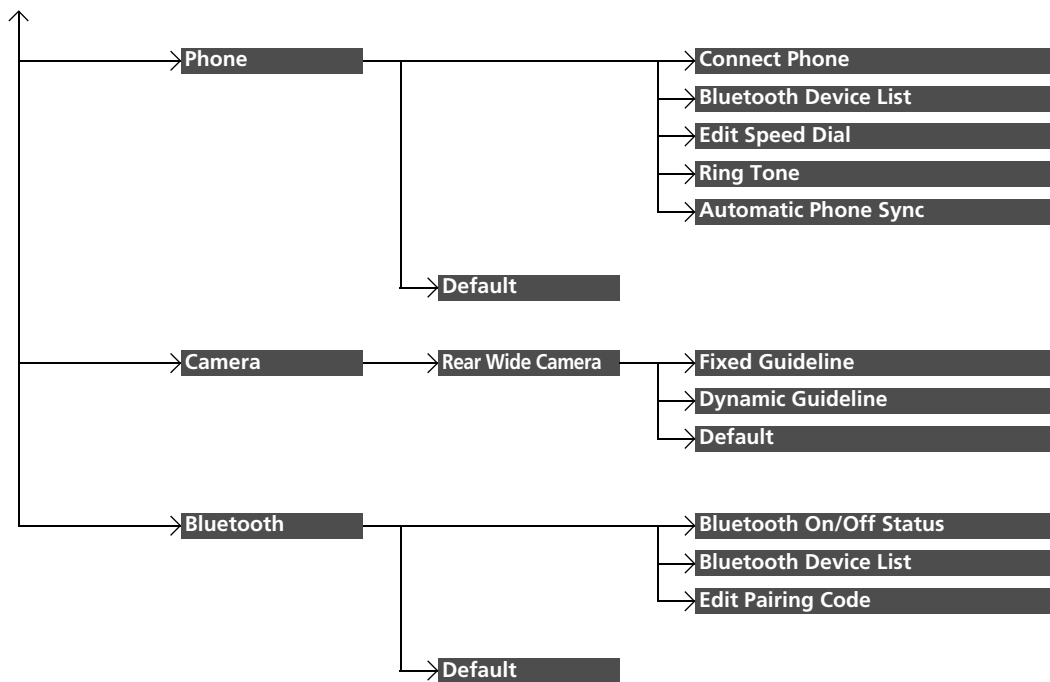


\* Not available on all models



\*1 : May change depending on your currently selected source.







# ■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	HOME	Home Screen Edit Order	Changes the <b>HOME</b> screen icon layout.	—
	Display	Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
		Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
		Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
		Background Color	Changes the background colour of the audio/information screen	Blue <sup>*1</sup> /Amber/Red/Violet
	Sound/Beep	Volume	Changes the sound volume.	0~6 <sup>*1</sup> ~11
		Beep Volume	Changes the beep volume.	Off/1/2 <sup>*1</sup> /3

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Clock	Clock	Changes the clock display type.	Analog/Digital <sup>*1</sup> /Small Digital/Off
		Clock/ Wallpaper <sup>*</sup> Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Changes the wallpaper type.</li><li>Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.</li><li>Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.</li></ul>  Wallpaper Setup <sup>*</sup> P. 312	Blank/Galaxy <sup>*1</sup> /Metallic
		Clock Adjustment	Adjusts Clock.  Clock P. 156	—
		Clock Format	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12H <sup>*1</sup> /24H
		Clock Display	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		Clock Location	Changes the clock display layout.	Upper Right <sup>*1</sup> /Upper Left/ Lower Right/Lower Left/Off
		Sync Clock With Smartphone <sup>*</sup>	Selects whether the clock links to the device you connect.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System	Others	Language Changes the display language.	English/French/Spanish
			English/Thai/Malay/Indonesian
			Chinese (hantai)/English/Portuguese
	Remember Last Screen	Selects whether the device remembers the last screen.	On/Off* <sup>1</sup>
	Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default. ▶ <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 360	Yes/No
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>System</b> group as default.	Yes/No
Audio	Sound	Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound ▶ <b>Adjusting the Sound</b> P. 314	-6 ~ 0* <sup>1</sup> ~ +6 (BASS and TREBLE), RR9~0* <sup>1</sup> ~FR9 (FADER), L9~0* <sup>1</sup> ~R9 (BALANCE), Off/Low/Mid* <sup>1</sup> /High (SVC)
	Audio Source Pop-Up	Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on when <b>Audio</b> is selected on the <b>HOME</b> screen.	On/Off* <sup>1</sup>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	<div>iPod or USB mode</div> <div>[Your selected media]</div> <div>Cover Art</div>	Turns on and off the cover art display.	On* <sup>1</sup> /Off
	<div> <div>Display</div> <div>Brightness</div> <div>Contrast</div> <div>Black Level</div> </div> <div> <div>Color</div> <div>Color</div> <div>Tint</div> </div>	<div> <div>System P. 353</div> <div>Changes the colour of the audio/information screen.</div> <div>Changes the tint of the audio/information screen.</div> </div>	—
	<div>USB, HDMI™ mode</div> <div>Display Adjustment</div>	Changes the aspect ratio and zoom settings of the audio/information screen.	Normal/Full* <sup>1</sup> /Zoom
	<div>Bluetooth® Audio mode</div> <div>Bluetooth Device List</div>	<div>Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone.</div> <div>Phone Setup P. 411</div>	—
	<div>Bluetooth® Audio mode</div> <div>Change Bluetooth Audio Device</div>	Connects, disconnects or pairs a Bluetooth® Audio device to HFT.	—
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Audio group as default.	Yes/No

\*1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Info	Clock	Clock/ Wallpaper* Type	Clock Wallpaper*	System P. 354
		Clock Adjustment		
		Clock Format		
		Clock Display		
		Clock Location		
		Sync Clock With Smartphone*		
	Other	Info Screen Preference	Changes the <b>Info</b> screen type.	Info Top/Info Menu/Off* <sup>1</sup>
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Info</b> group as default.	Yes/No

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone	Connect Phone	Pairs a new phone to HFT, connects or disconnects a paired phone. 📶 Phone Setup P. 411	—
	Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. 📶 Phone Setup P. 411	—
	Edit Speed Dial	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. 📶 Speed Dial P. 417	—
	Ring Tone	Selects the ring tone.	Fixed/Mobile Phone*1
	Automatic Phone Sync	Sets a phonebook data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.	On/Off
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone group as default.	Yes/No

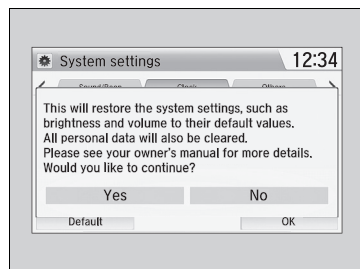
\* 1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Camera	Rear Wide Camera	Fixed Guideline	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the dynamic guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Rear Wide Camera</b> group as default.	Yes/No
Bluetooth	Bluetooth On/Off Status		Changes the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® status.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
	Bluetooth Device List		Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone, or creates a security PIN. 📱 <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 411	—
	Edit Pairing Code		Edits a pairing code. 📱 <b>To change the pairing code setting</b> P. 412	Random/Fixed <sup>*1</sup>
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Bluetooth</b> group as default.	Yes/No

\*1:Default Setting

## Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
  - The confirmation message will appear.
6. Select **Yes** to reset the settings.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
  - The confirmation message will appear. Select **OK**.

### ►► Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

The following settings will be reset:

- Audio preset settings
- Phonebook entries
- Other display and personal settings.

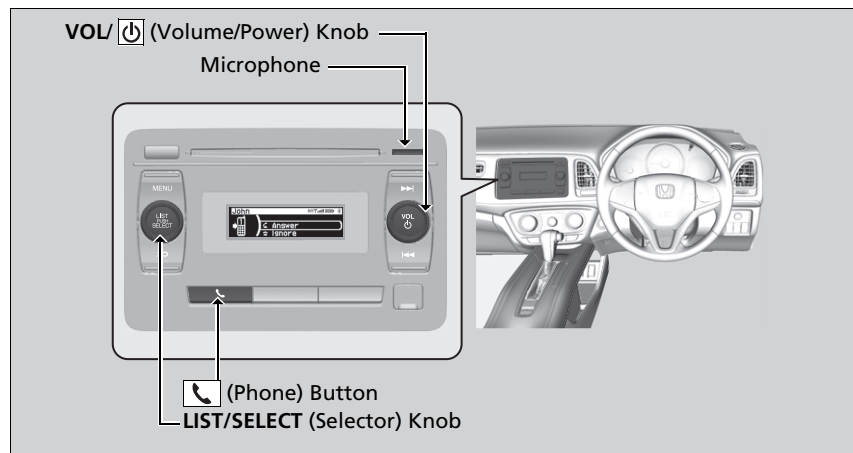
# Hands-Free Telephone System

## Models with monochrome audio system


The Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

## Using HFT

### HFT Buttons



**[Phone icon] (Phone) button:** Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen, or to answer an incoming call.

**LIST/SELECT (Selector) knob:** Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press  to set your selection.

## Hands-Free Telephone System

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

Up to 15 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

➤ **Speed Dial** P. 377

Up to 10 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

To change the volume level, use the audio system's volume knob.

### *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

### HFT Limitations

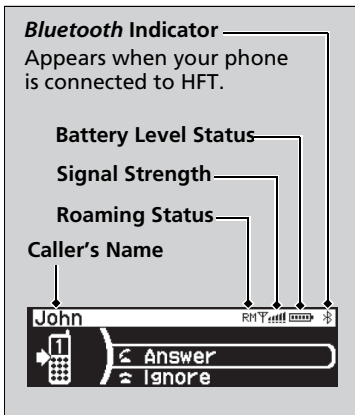
An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

*Continued*



## HFT Status Display



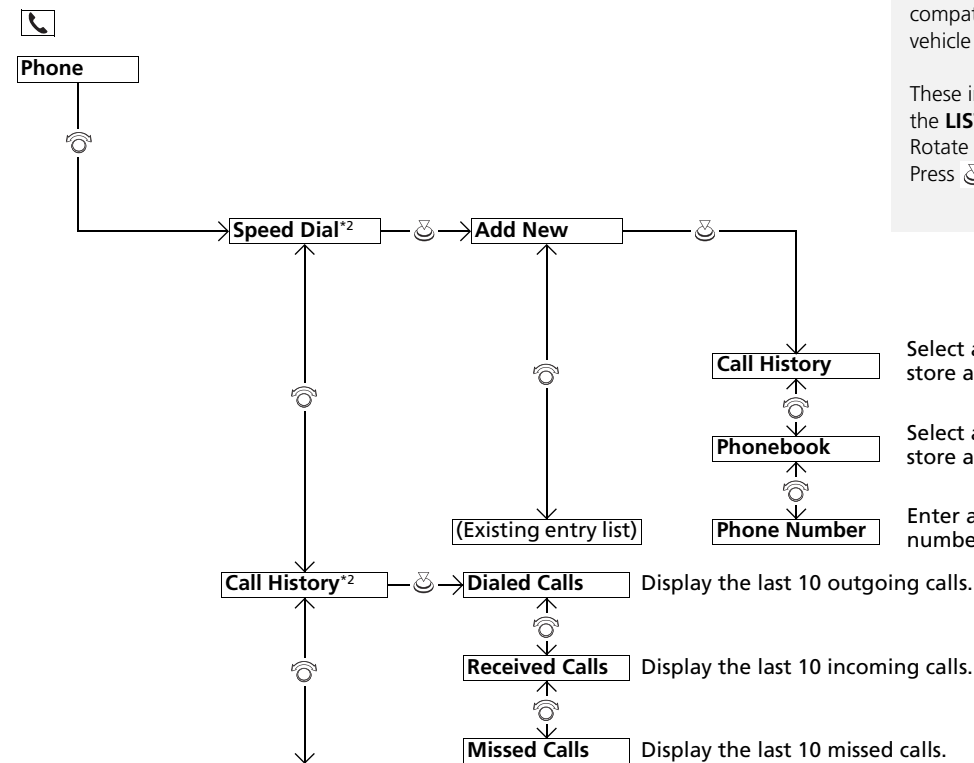
The audio display notifies you when there is an incoming call.

## HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

## HFT Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON \*<sup>1</sup> to use the system.



### HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

These indications are used to show how to operate the **LIST/SELECT** (selector) knob.

Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.

Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.

Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

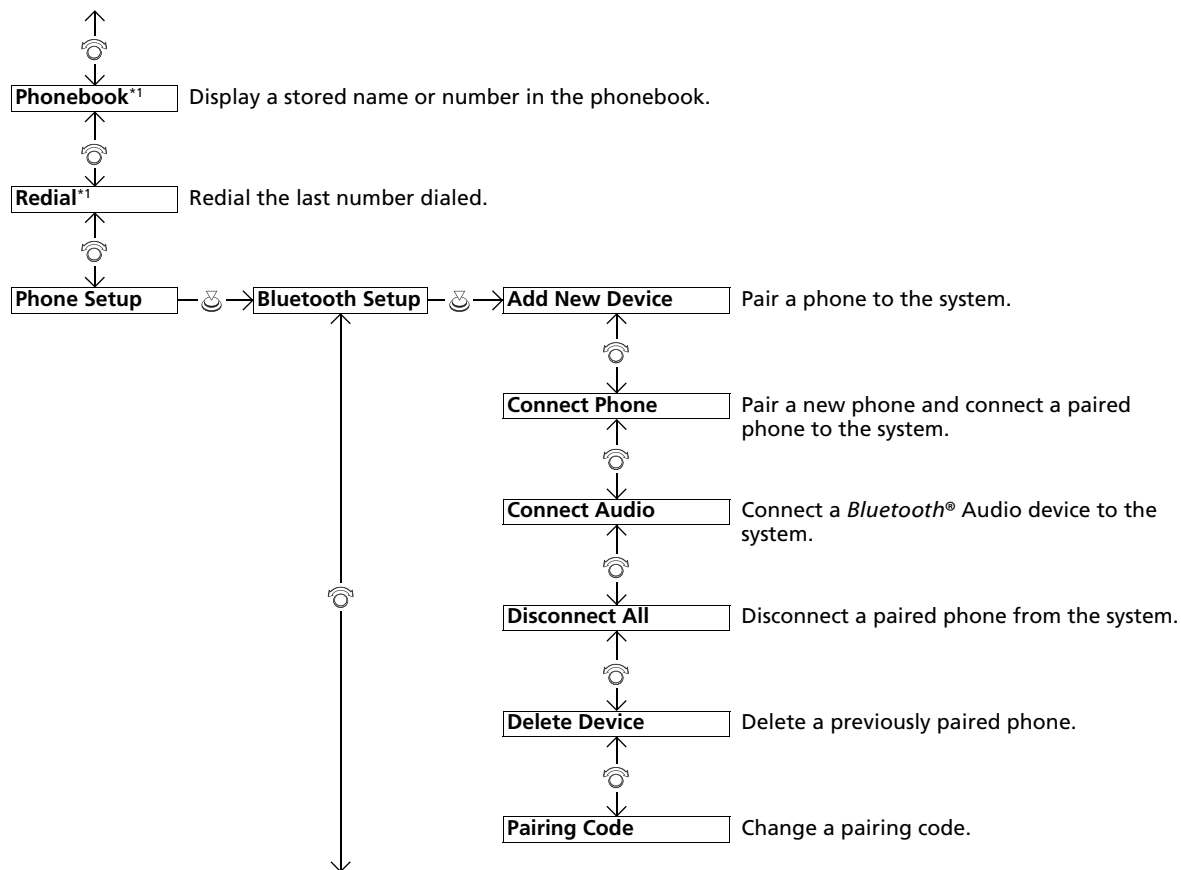
Display the last 10 outgoing calls.

Display the last 10 incoming calls.

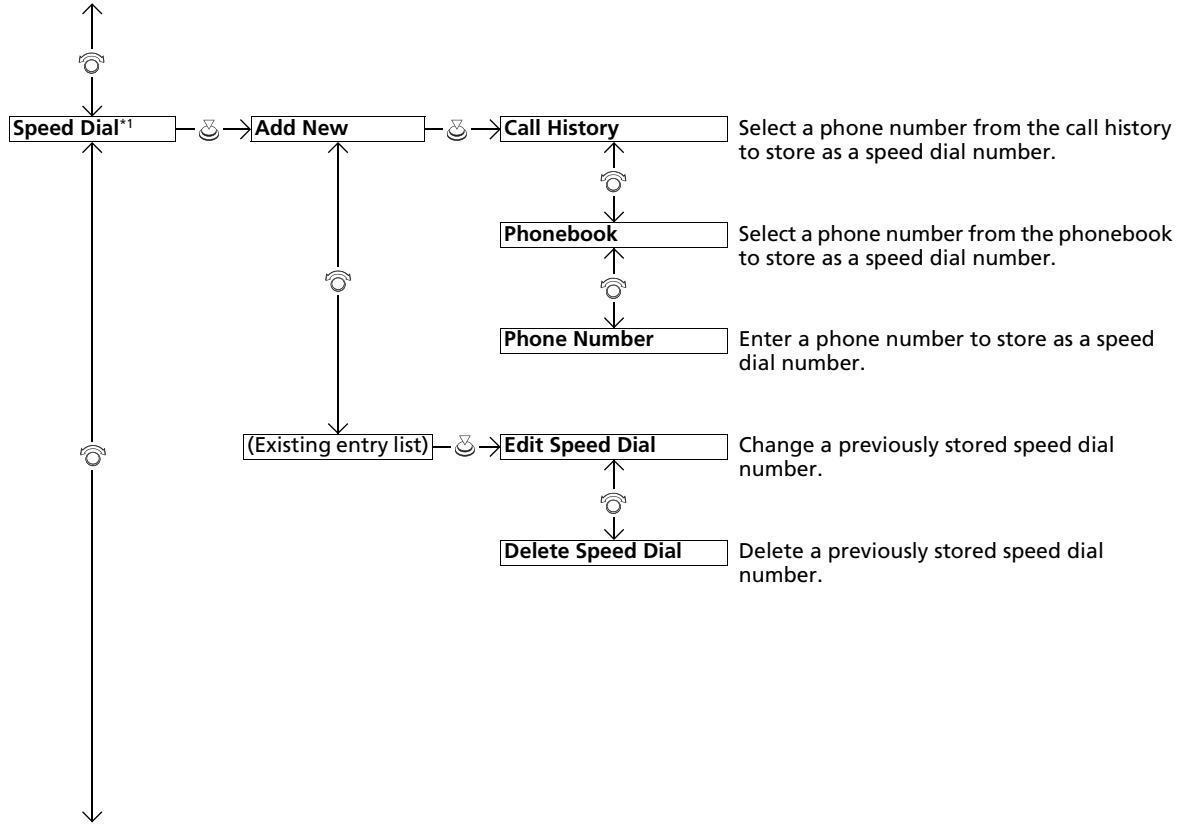
Display the last 10 missed calls.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

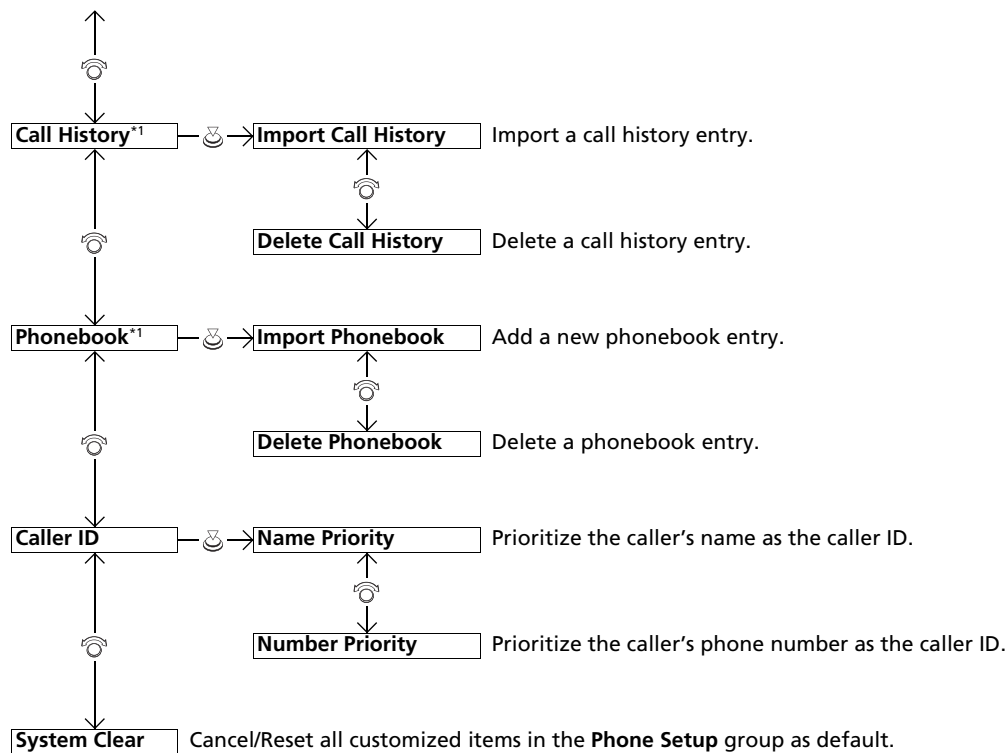
\*2: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



\*1 : Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.







\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.

## ■ Phone Setup

### ■ To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search mode, then press .
4. The system gives you a pairing code on your phone. When your phone prompts you, input the four-digit pairing code.

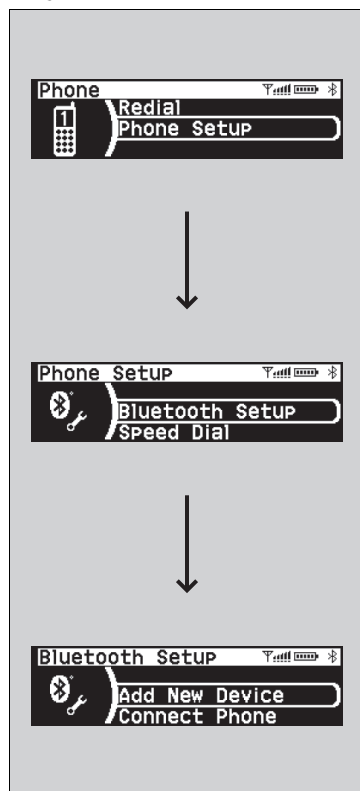
## ☒ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

### Phone Pairing Tips:

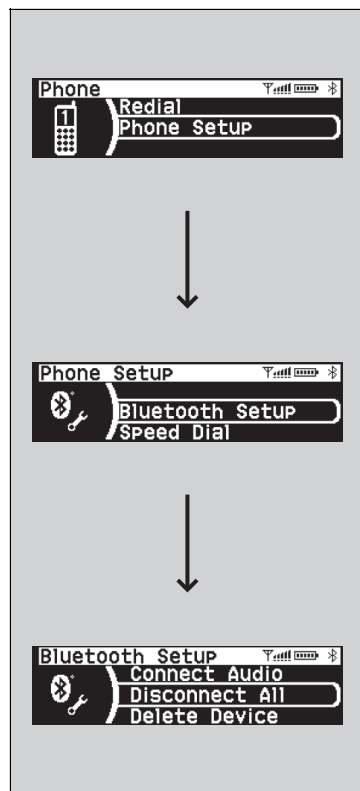
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to five phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is connected to HFT.








■ To pair a mobile phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)



1. Press the button.  
 ► If a prompt appears asking to connect to a phone, select **No** and proceed with step 2.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Add New Device**, then press .
5. Make sure your phone is in search mode, then press .
6. The system gives you a pairing code on your phone.  
 When your phone prompts you, input the four-digit pairing code.

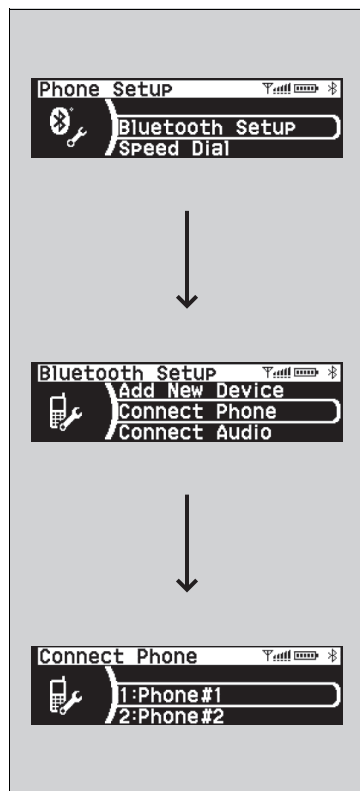
## ■ To disconnect the paired phone



1. Press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Disconnect All**, then press .

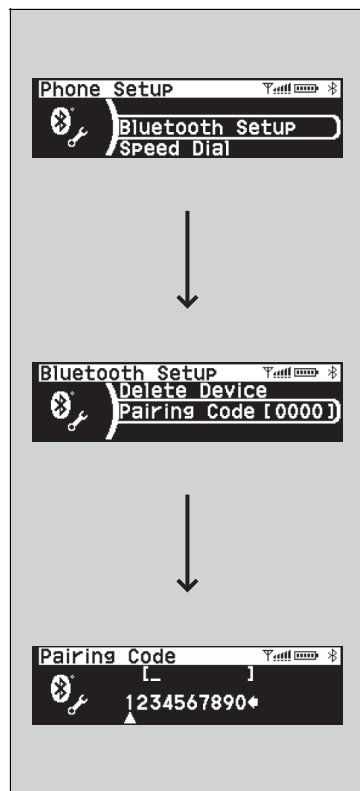


## ■ To change the currently paired phone



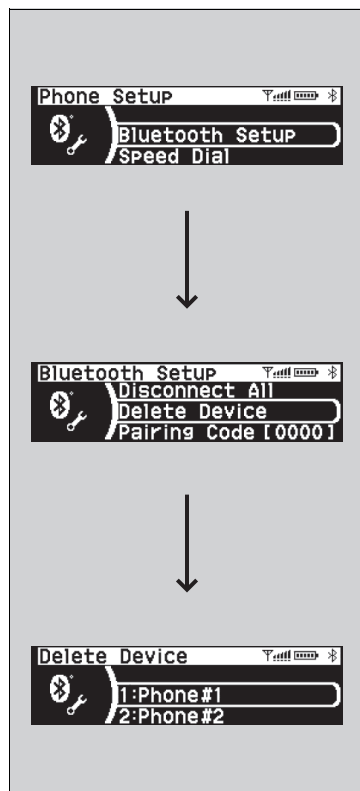
1. Press the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Connect Phone**, then press .
  - The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a desired device name, then press .

## ■ To change the pairing code setting



1. Press the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Pairing Code**, then press .
5. Input a new pairing code, then press .

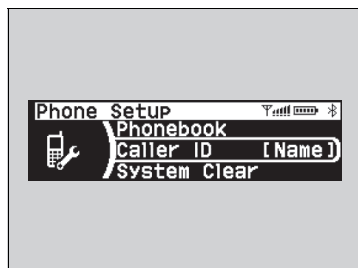
## ■ To delete a paired phone



1. Press the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete Device**, then press .
  - The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

## ■ Caller's ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



1. Press the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Caller ID**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .

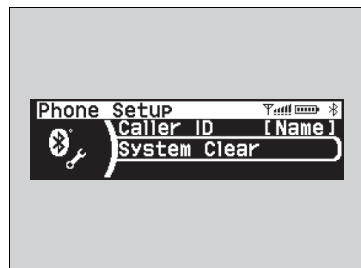
## ☒ Caller's ID Information









**Name Priority:** A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.

**Number Priority:** A caller's phone number is displayed.

## ■ To Clear the System

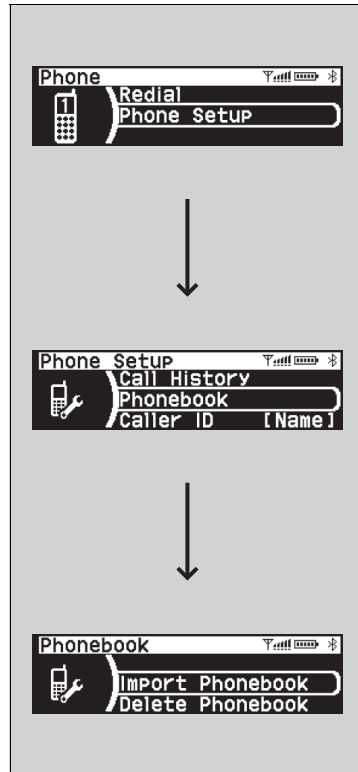
All speed dial entries, all imported phonebook data, all call history data, paired phones, pairing codes, caller's ID settings, and volume settings are reset as default.



1. Press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **System Clear**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press .
5. A notification appears on the screen. Press .

## Mobile Phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are manually imported to the system.



### ■ To import the phonebook data of the mobile phone

1. Press the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Import Phonebook**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
  - ▶ The system will begin importing the phonebook data.

### ■ To delete the imported phonebook data

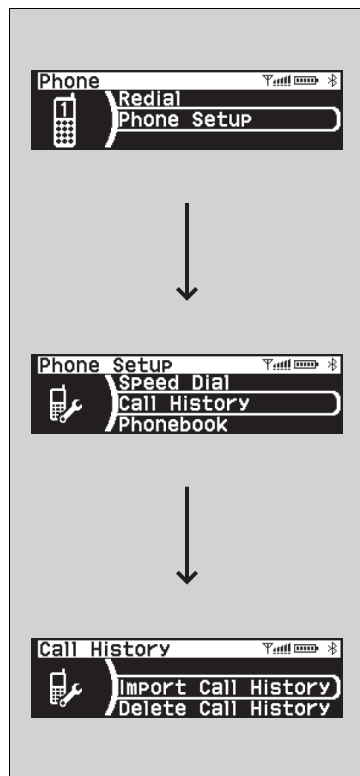
1. Press the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete Phonebook**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

## Mobile Phonebook

For a list of this feature capability, ask a dealer.

## ■ Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its call history are manually imported to the system.



### ■ To import the call history data of the mobile phone

1. Press the button.
  2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
  3. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
  4. Rotate to select **Import Call History**, then press .
  5. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
- ▶ The system will begin importing the phonebook data.

### ■ To delete the imported call history data

1. Press the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete Call History**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .




## ▶ Call History

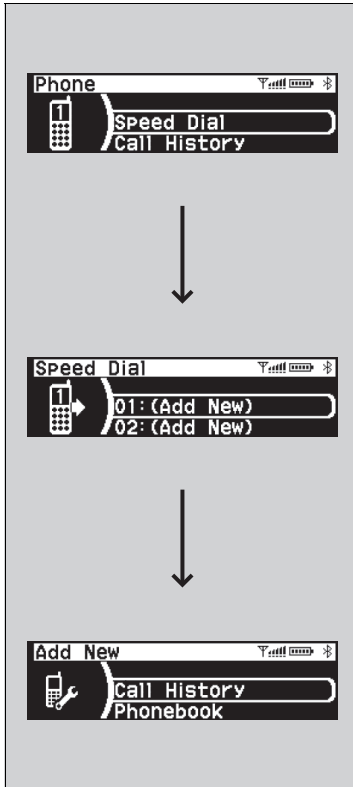
For a list of this feature capability, ask a dealer.

## ■ Speed Dial

Up to 15 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select **Speed Dial**, then press .  
► The screen changes to a speed dial list.



3. Rotate  to select **Add New**, then press .

From **Call History**:

- Select a number from the call history.

From **Phonebook**:









- Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.

From **Phone Number**:









- Input the number manually.



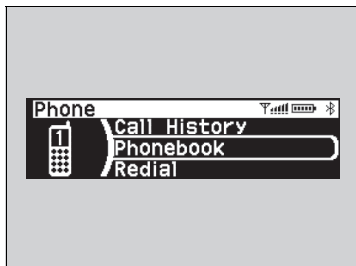
### ■ To edit a speed dial

1. Press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate  to select **Edit Speed Dial**, then press .
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press .

### ■ To delete a speed dial

1. Press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate  to select **Delete Speed Dial**, then press .
6. Select a speed dial number you want to delete, then press .

## Making a Call



You can make calls by using the following:

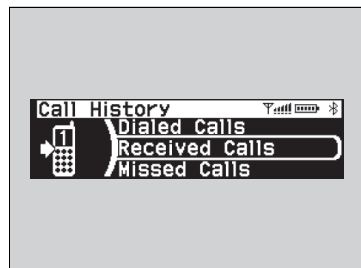
- Call History
- Phonebook
- Speed Dial
- Redial

### ▶▶ Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

*Continued*

## ■ To make a call using the Call History

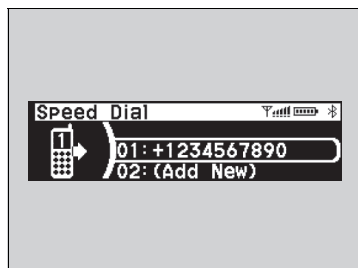
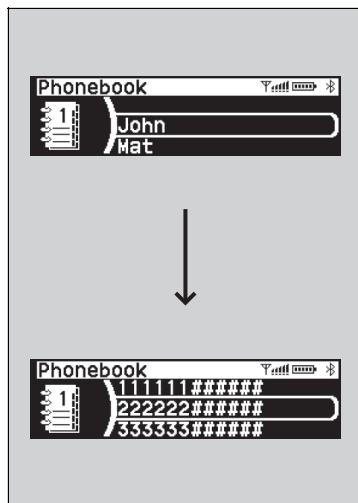


The call history is stored by **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, and **Missed Calls**.

1. Press the button.
2. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls** or **Missed Calls**, then press .
  - The screen changes to each list.
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
  - Dialing starts automatically.

## ► To make a call using the Call History

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to the system, and displays the last 10 dialed, received, or missed calls.



### ■ To make a call using the phonebook

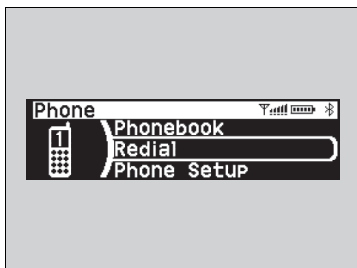
1. Press the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
  - ▶ The phonebook is stored alphabetically.
3. Rotate to select a name on the list, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number on the list, then press .
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ■ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

1. Press the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.




### ▶▶ To make a call using the phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are manually imported to the system.

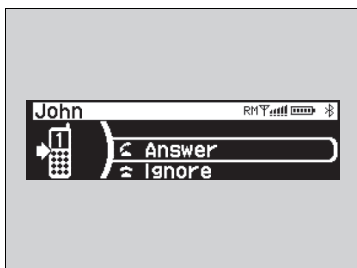


### ■ To make a call using redial



The latest dialed call can be redialled.



1. Press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select **Redial**, then press .
  - Dialing starts automatically.

## ■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the incoming call screen appears.

Rotate  to select **Answer**, then press  to answer the call.

Rotate  to select **Ignore** or **Hang Up**, then press  to decline or end the call.

### ▣ Receiving a Call

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.  
Select **Hang Up** if you want to hang up the current call.

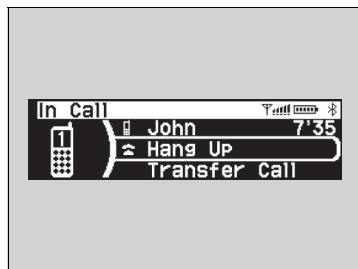
## Options During a Call




The following options are available during a call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer Call:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

**Dial tone\*:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



1. To view the available options, press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select the option, then press .  
▶ Select **Mute** to turn on, then select **Mute** again to turn off.

## Options During a Call

**Dial tone\*:** Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

\* Not available on all models

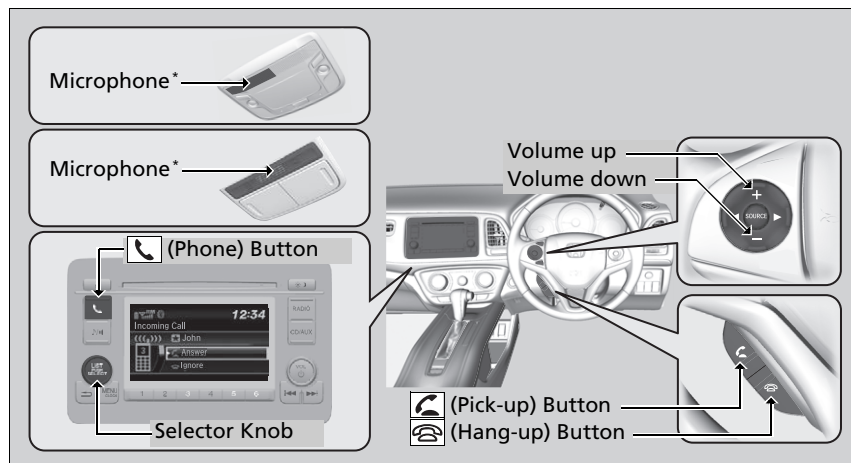
# Hands-Free Telephone System


## Models with colour audio system

The Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.


## Using HFT



### HFT Buttons



 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up) button:** Press to end a call.

 **(Phone) button:** Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen.

**LIST/SELECT (Selector):** Rotate  to select an item on the screen, then press .

## Hands-Free Telephone System


To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

### Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- To change the volume level, use the audio system's volume knob or the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.

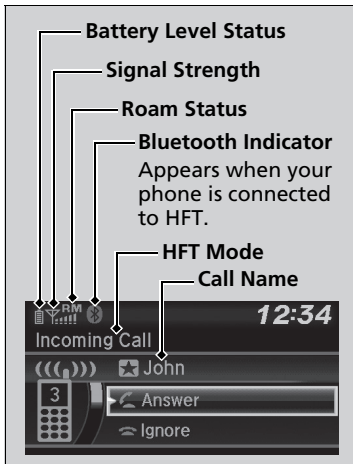
Up to 20 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

 **Speed Dial** P. 397

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

## HFT Status Display



The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

## Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

### Hands-Free Telephone System

#### Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth SIG, Inc.*, and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

#### HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

### HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

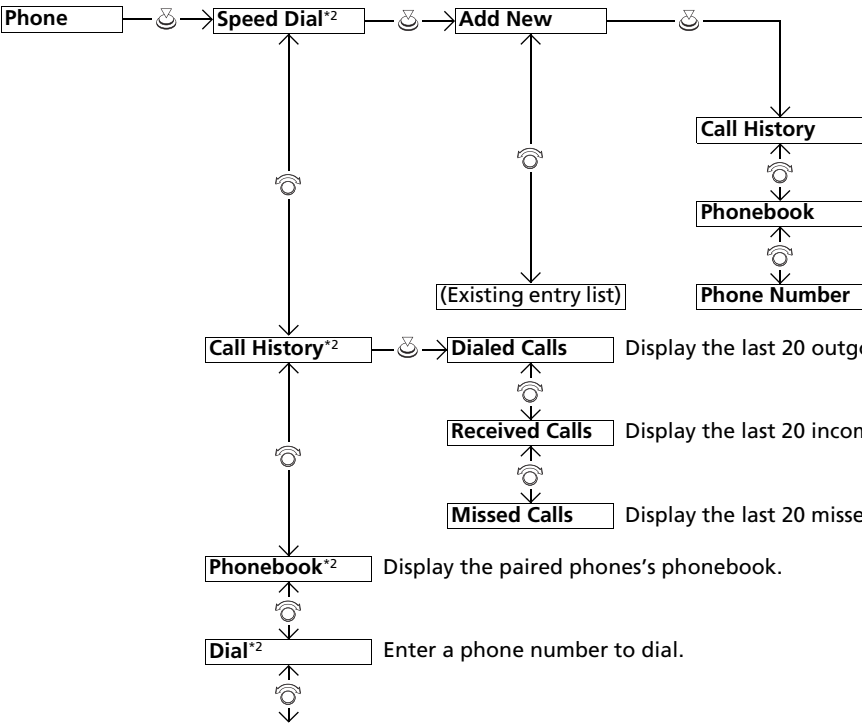
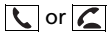
You can change the system language.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 341



# HFT Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON \*1 to use HFT.



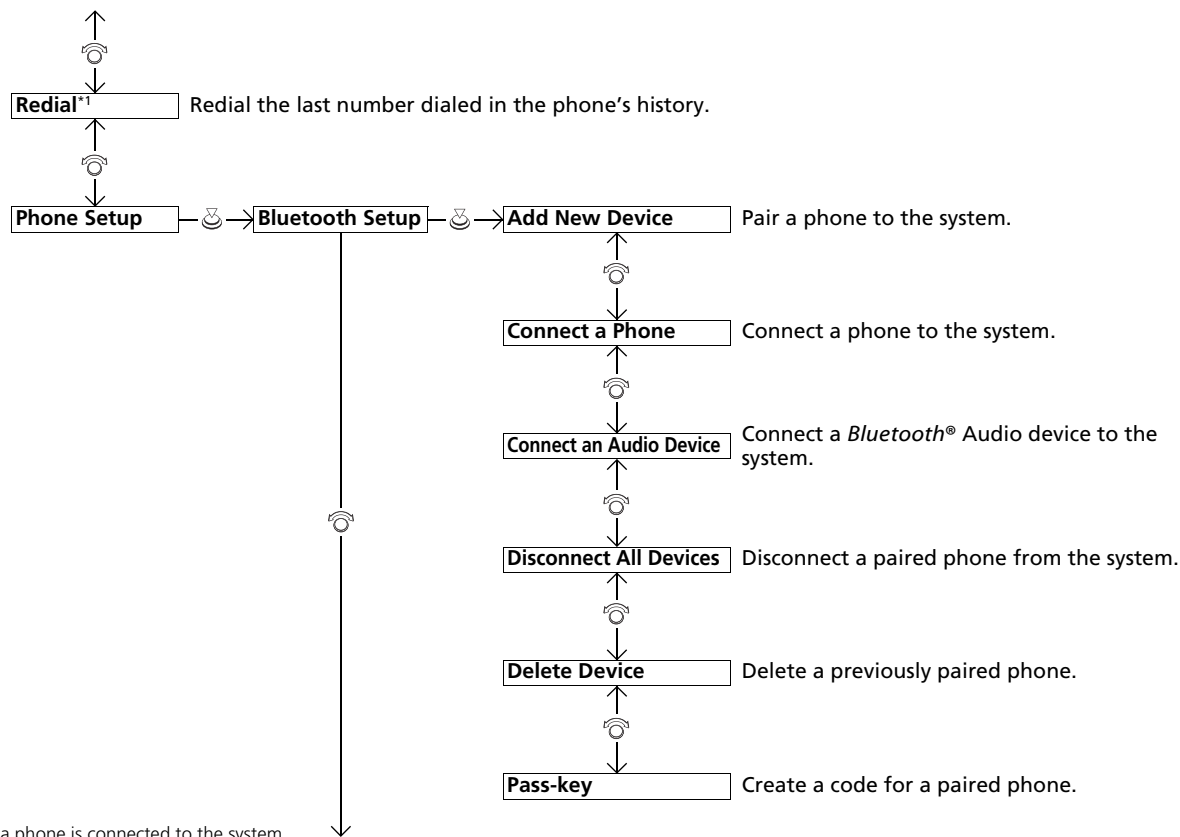
## HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your Bluetooth-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

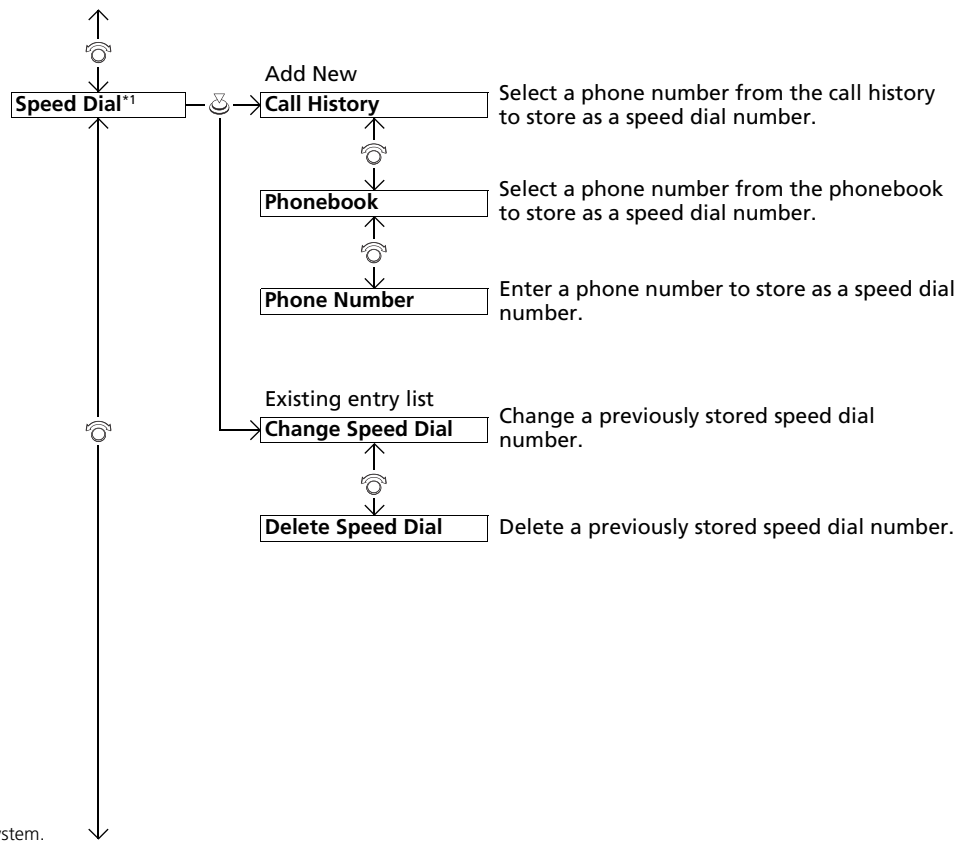
Some functions are limited while driving.

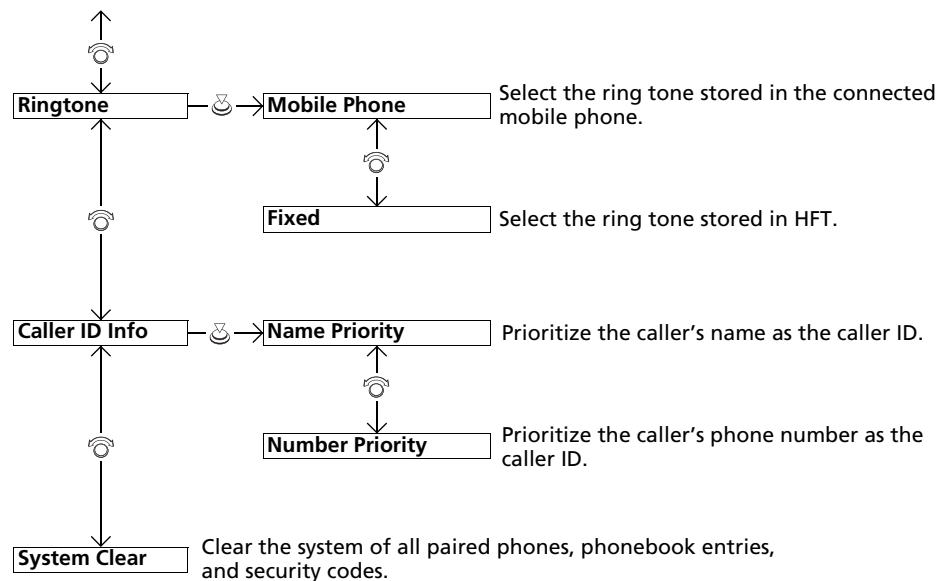
- Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
- Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
- Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.  
\*2: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

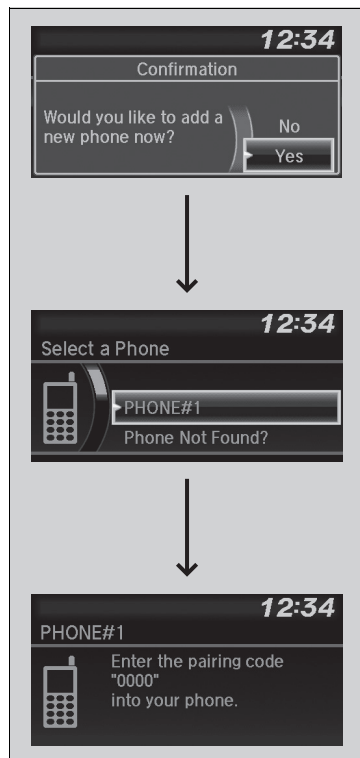


\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.





## Phone Setup



### ■ To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
  - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
  - ▶ If your phone doesn't appear, select **Phone Not Found?** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

## ▶▶ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

### Phone Pairing Tips:

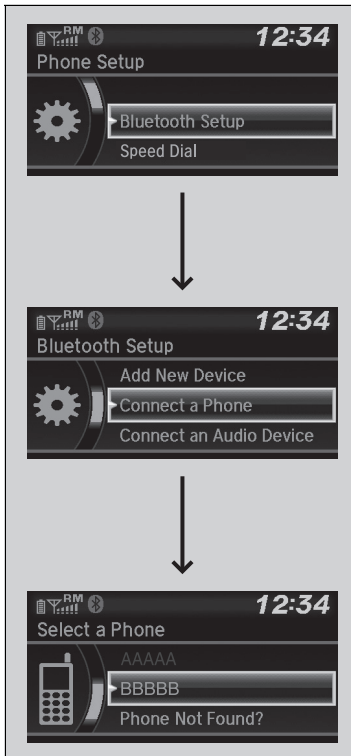
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is connected to HFT.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

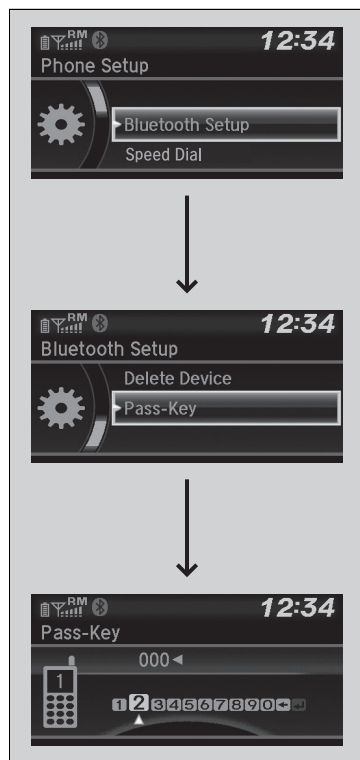
: The phone can be used with HFT.

: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.



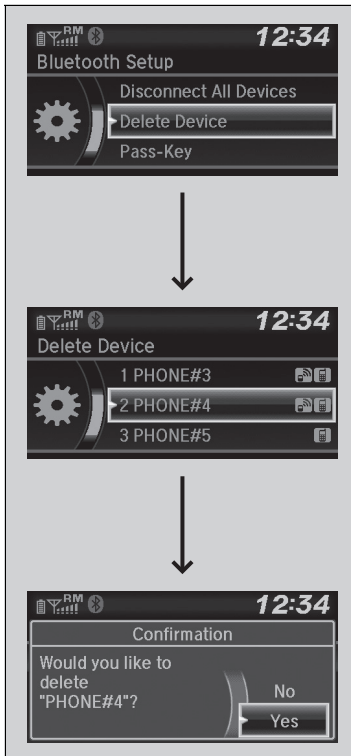
### ■ To Change the currently paired phone

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Connect a Phone**, then press .
  - ▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a desired device name, then press .
  - ▶ The system disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.



### ■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Pass-Key**, then press .
5. Input a new pairing code, then press .



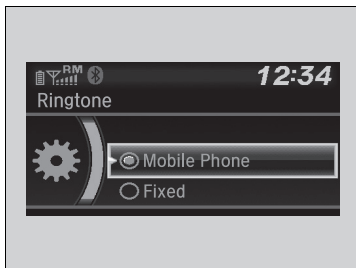
### ■ To delete a paired phone

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete Device**, then press .  
▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .



## ■ Ring Tone

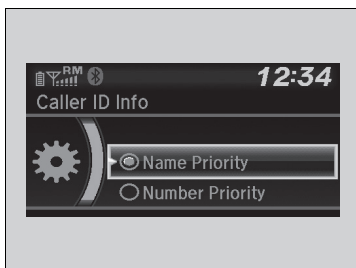
You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Ringtone**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**, then press .

## ■ Caller's ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Caller ID Info**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .

### » Ring Tone

**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

**Mobile Phone:** The ring tone stored in the connected mobile phone sounds from the speakers.

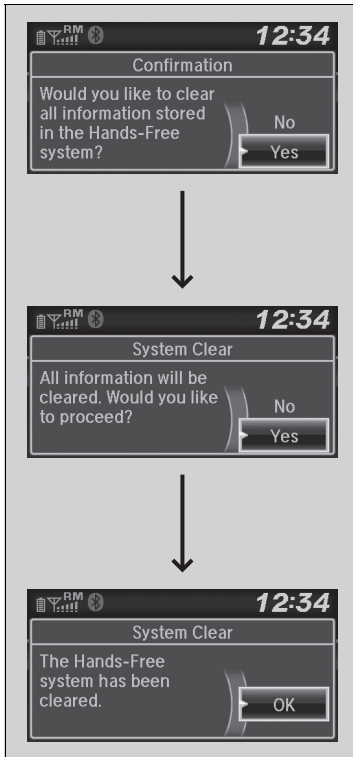
### » Caller's ID Information

**Name Priority:** A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.

**Number Priority:** A caller's phone number is displayed.

## ■ To Clear the System

Pairing codes, paired phones, all speed dial entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **System Clear**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
6. A notification appears on the screen. Press .

Continued

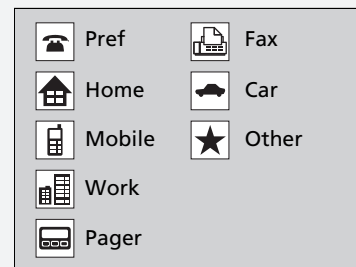
## ■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.



## ► Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



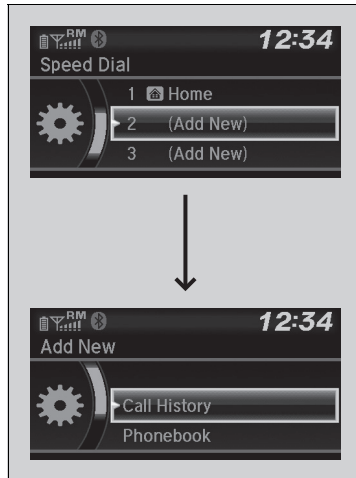
If a name has four or more numbers, ... appears instead of category icons.

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

## Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



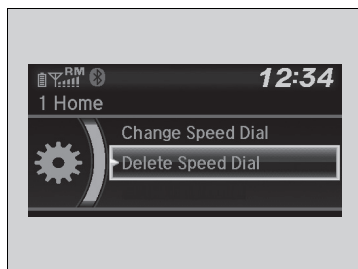
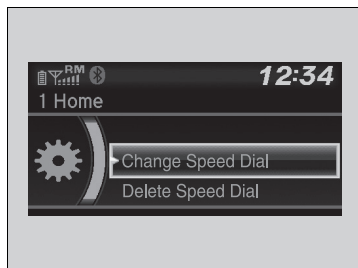
To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Add New**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a place to choose a number from, then press .
  - From **Call History**:
    - ▶ Select a number from the call history.
  - From **Phonebook**:
    - ▶ Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.
  - From **Phone Number**:
    - ▶ Input the number manually.

## Speed Dial

You can use the audio preset buttons during a call to store a speed dial number:

1. Press and hold the desired audio preset button during a call.
2. The contact information for the active call will be stored for the corresponding speed dial.



### ■ To edit a speed dial

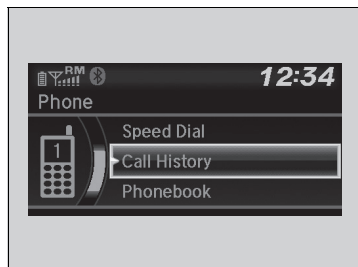
1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Change Speed Dial**, then press .
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press .

### ■ To delete a speed dial number

1. Press the button or the button.
  2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
  3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
  4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
  5. Rotate to select **Delete Speed Dial**, then press .
- A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

## ■ Making a Call

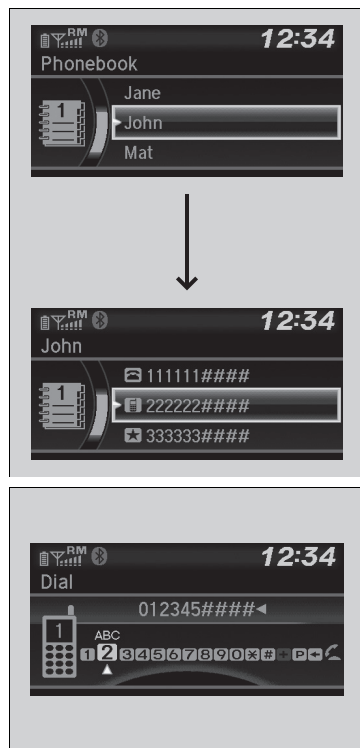
You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.



## » Making a Call

The maximum range between your phone and vehicles is 10 metres.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



### ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to the system.

1. Press the button or the button.
  2. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
  3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Rotate to select the initial, then press .
  4. Rotate to select a name, then press .
  5. Rotate to select a number, then press .
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ■ To make a call using a phone number

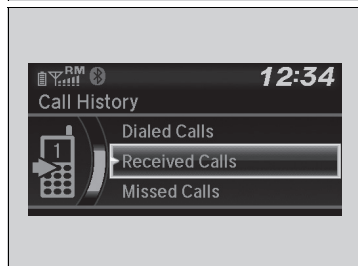
1. Press the button or the button.
  2. Rotate to select **Dial**, then press .
  3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
  4. Rotate to select , then press .
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ▶▶ To make a call using the imported phonebook

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving.

### ▶▶ To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving.



### ■ To make a call using redial

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Redial**, then press .

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, and **Missed Calls**.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, or **Missed Calls**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

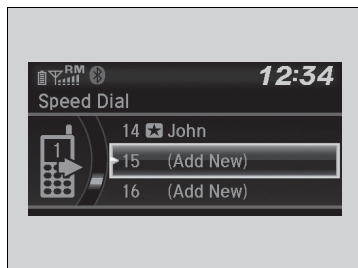
### ▶▶ To make a call using redial

Press and hold the button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's call history.

### ▶▶ To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to the system, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.





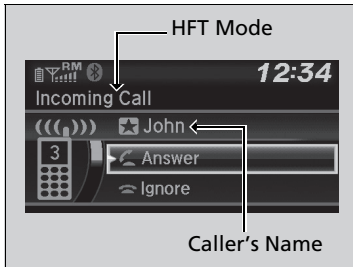
### ■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ▶▶ To make a call using a speed dial entry


On the **Phone** screen, the first six speed dials on the list can be directly selected by pressing the corresponding audio preset buttons (1-6).

## Receiving a Call




When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming Call** screen appears.


Press the  button to answer the call.

Press the  button to decline or end the call.


### Receiving a Call





#### Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  buttons. Rotate  to select the icon, then press .

## ■ Options During a Call

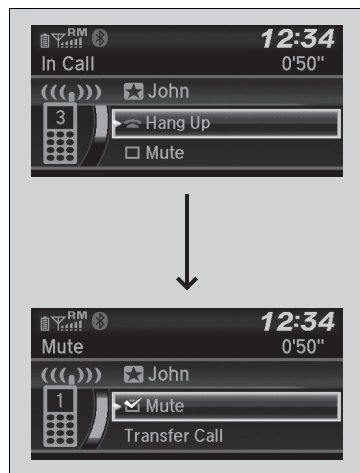
The following options are available during a call.




**Swap Call:** Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer Call:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

**Dial Tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



1. To view the available options, press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select the option, then press .
  - The check box is checked when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

## ►► Options During a Call

**Dial Tones:** Available on some phones.

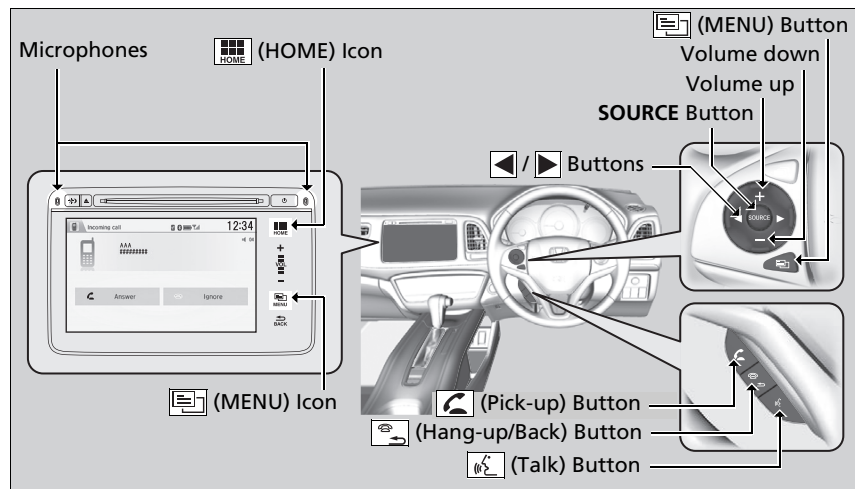
# Hands-Free Telephone System


## Models with display audio system


The Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

## Using HFT

### HFT Buttons



 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen, or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up/Back) button:** Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

 **(Talk) button:** Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.


## Hands-Free Telephone System

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 348

### Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press and release the  button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

Up to 6 speed dial entries can be display among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no entries in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

➤ **Speed Dial** P. 417

Up to six call histories can be displayed. If there is no call histories, Call History is disabled.

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

*Continued*

**[MENU] (MENU) button:** Press to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Redial** on the **Phone** screen.

**◀ / ▶ button:** Press to select an item displayed on the **Phone** screen.

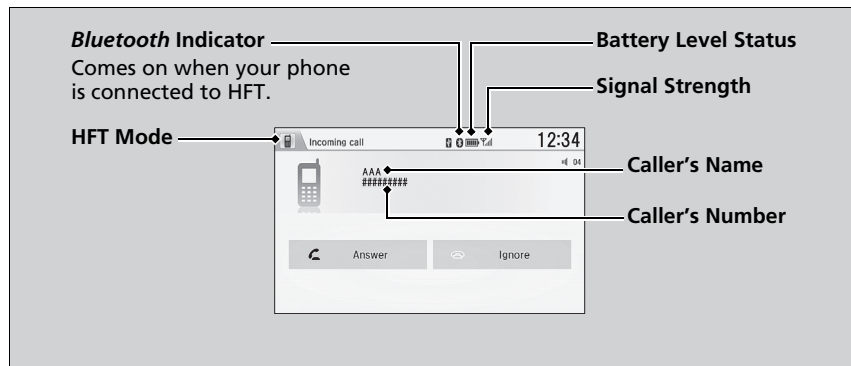
**SOURCE button:** Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the **Phone** screen.

To go to the **Phone Menu** screen:

1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Phone** to switch the display to the **Phone** screen.
3. Select **MENU**.

## HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



## Hands-Free Telephone System

### Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth SIG, Inc.*, and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

### HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

## HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 348

## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

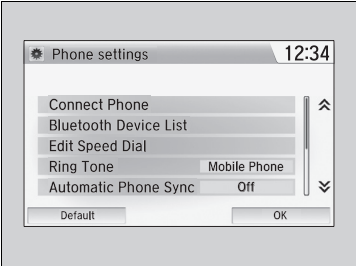
Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

📞 **Speed Dial** P. 417

# HFT Menu

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.

## ■ Phone settings screen

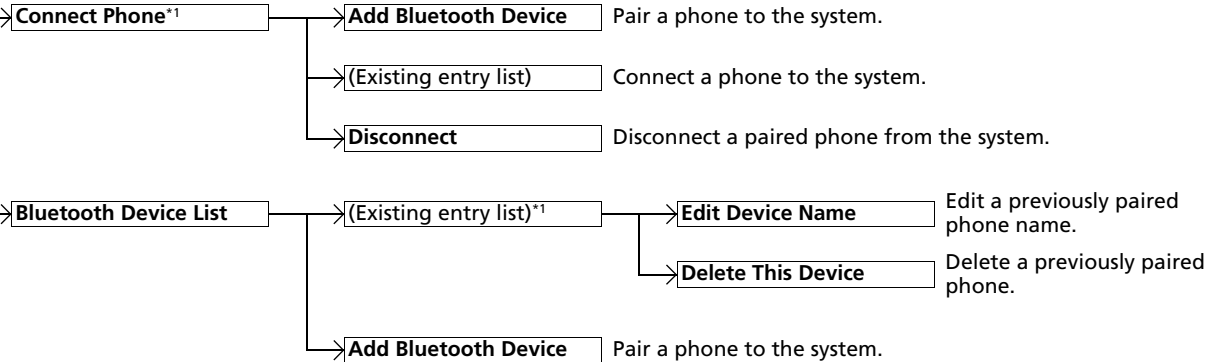


- 1. Select **HOME**.
- 2. Select **Settings**.
- 3. Select **Phone**.

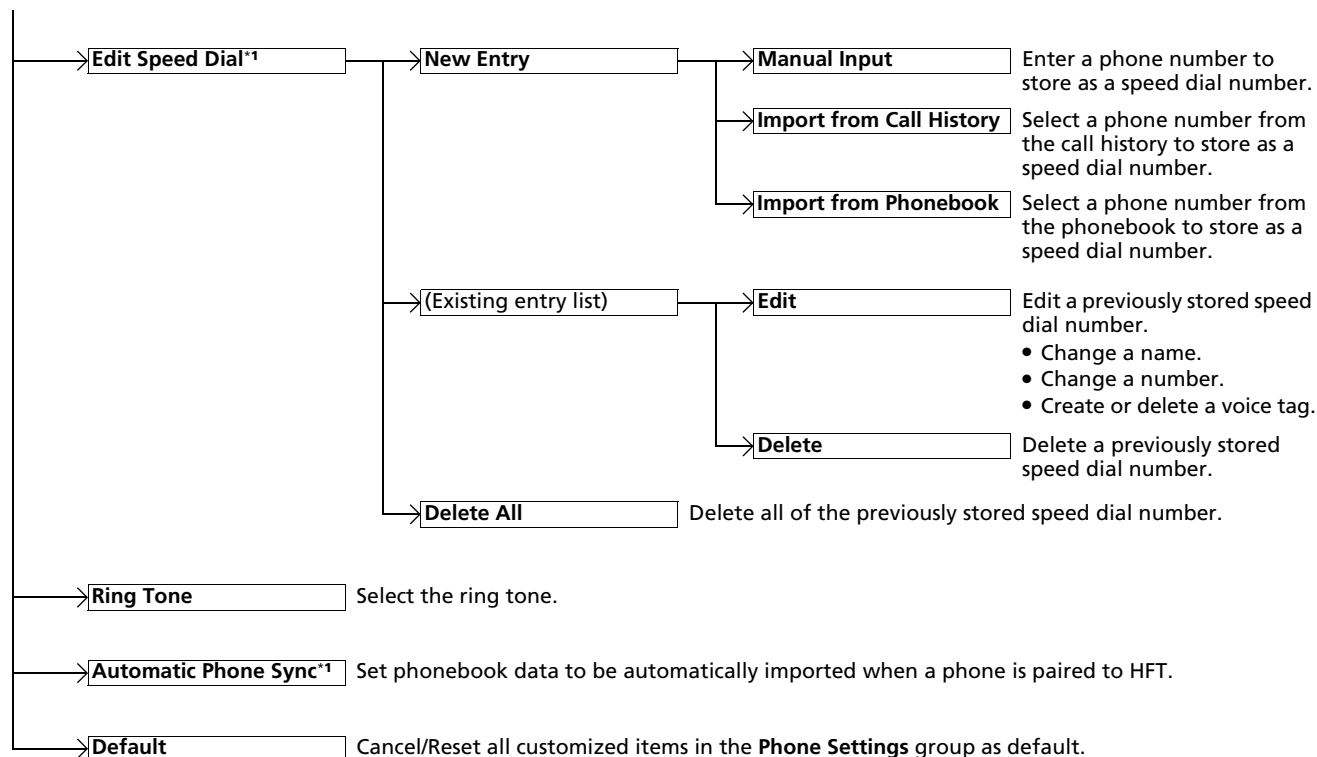
▶▶ HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.



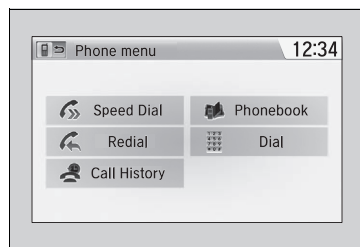
\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.



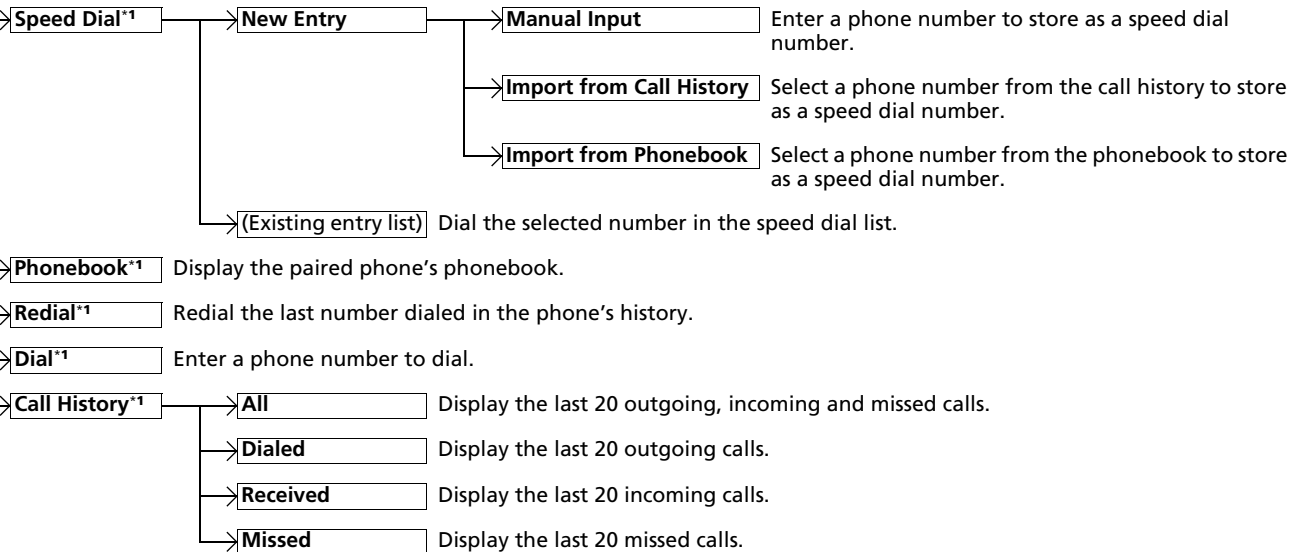
\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.



## ■ Phone menu screen

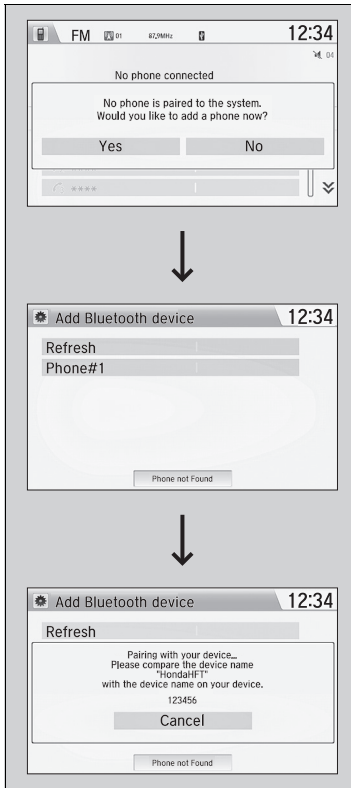


1. Press or select **HOME**, then select **Phone**.
2. Press (MENU) on the steering wheel, or select **MENU**.



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

## Phone Setup



### ■ To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

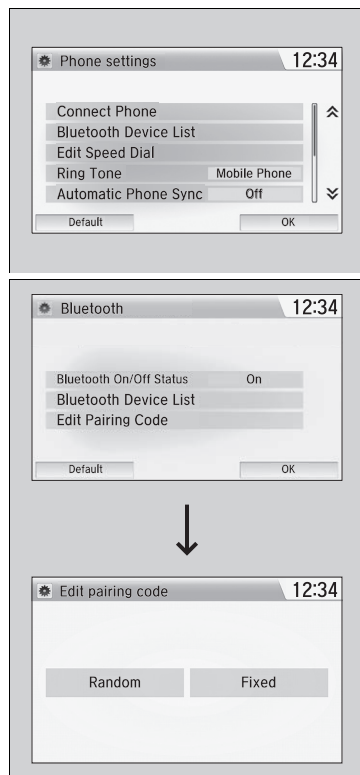
1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is search or discoverable mode, then select **Continue**.
  - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth* device.
4. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
  - ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
  - ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone not found** and search for *Bluetooth* devices using your phone. From your phone, search for **Honda HFT**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

## Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

### Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is connected to HFT.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system, the system will return to the previous screen.



## ■ Changing the currently paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 408
2. Select **Connect Phone**.
3. Select a phone to connect.  
 ► HFT disconnects the current phone and starts searching for another paired phone.

## ■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Select **HOME**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth**.
4. Select **Edit Pairing Code**.
5. Select **Fixed** or **Random**.

## » Changing the currently paired phone

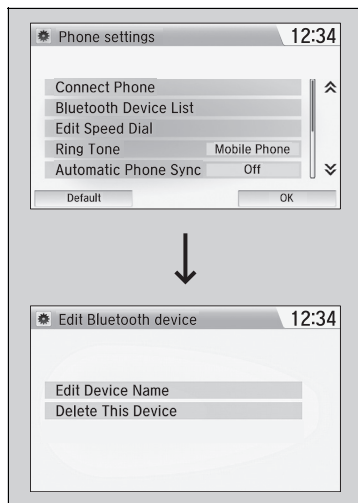
If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

## » To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

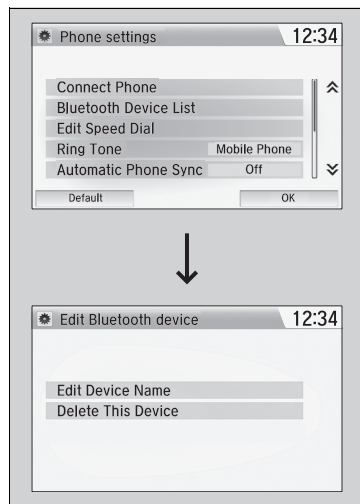
To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.



## ■ To edit an already-paired phone name

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 408
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a paired phone you want to edit.
4. Select **Edit Device Name**.
5. Edit the name and select **OK**.
6. A notification appears if the change is successful.

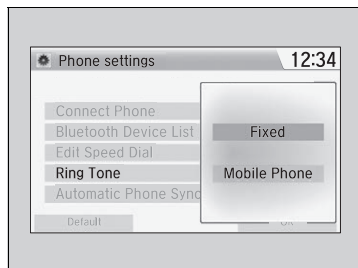


### ■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ■ **Phone settings screen** P. 408
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select **Delete This Device**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.
6. A notification appears if the deletion is successful.

## Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



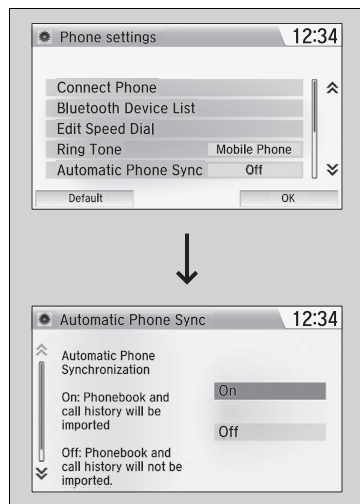
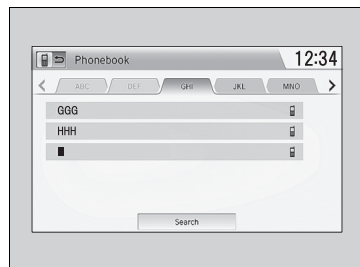
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 **Phone settings screen** P. 408
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**.

### Ring Tone

**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speaker.

**Mobile Phone:** The ring tone stored in the connected mobile phone sounds from the speaker.


## ■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History



### ■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

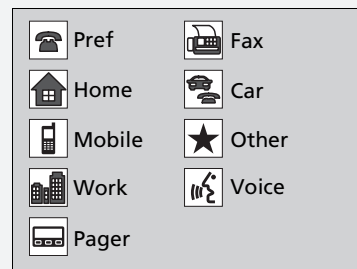
### ■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 **Phone settings screen** P. 408
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.

3. Select **On** or **Off**.

## ► Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

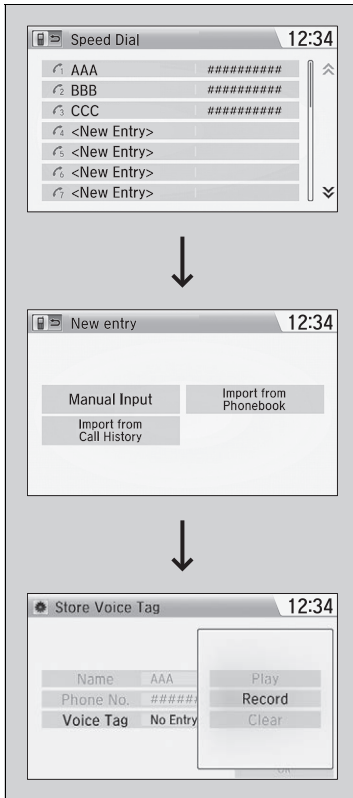


On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

## Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.

▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 410

2. Select **Speed Dial**.

3. Select **New Entry**.

4. Select a place to choose a number.

From **Import from Call History**:

▶ Select a number from the call history.

From **Manual Input**:


▶ Input the number manually.

From **Import from Phonebook**:


▶ Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.

5. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.

6. Select **Record** to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

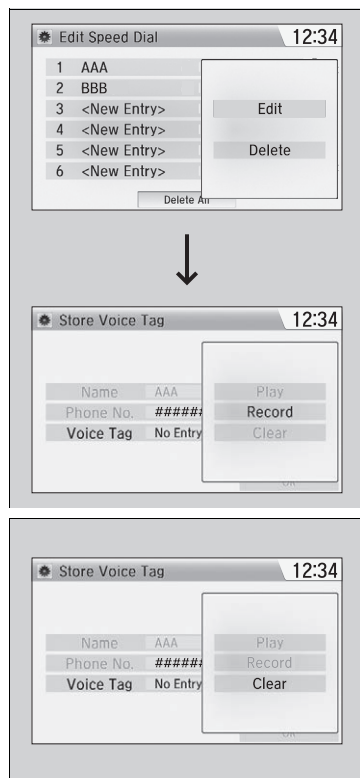
▶ Using the  button, follow the prompts to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

### Speed Dial


When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag. Say "Call" and the voice tag name.

Continued





## ■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

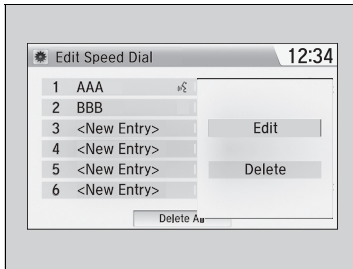
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 408
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.  
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record** to store the voice tag.
6. Using the  button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

## ■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 408
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.  
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## » Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.  
 Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.  
 It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name.  
 For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



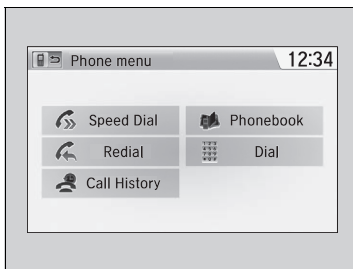
### ■ To edit a speed dial

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 408
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
 ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select a setting you want.

### ■ To delete a speed dial

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 408
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
 ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.


## ■ Making a Call



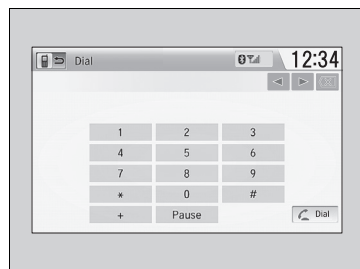
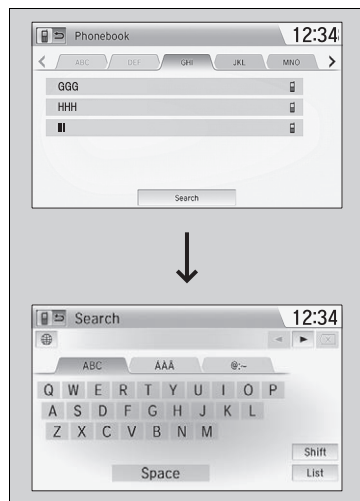
You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

### ▶ Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the  button and say "Call" and the voice tag name.


Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



## ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 410
2. Select **PhoneBook**.
3. Select a name.  
 ► You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.  
 ► Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering letters.
4. Select a number.  
 ► Dialing starts automatically.

## ■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 410
2. Select **Dial**.
3. Select a number.  
 ► Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select .  
 ► Dialing starts automatically.

## ► To make a call using the imported phonebook

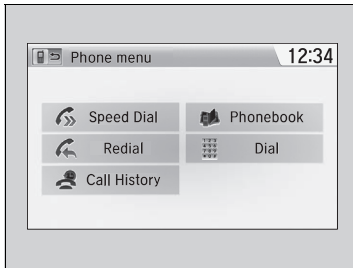
This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

- **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 407
- **Speed Dial** P. 417

## ► To make a call using a phone number

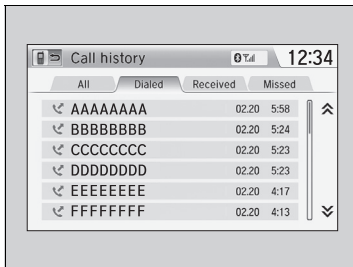
This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

- **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 407
- **Speed Dial** P. 417



### ■ To make a call using redial

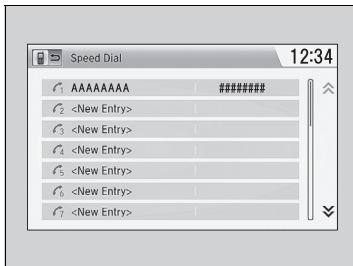
1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 410
2. Select **Redial**.  
 ► Dialing starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.


1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 410
2. Select **Call History**.
3. Select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**.
4. Select a number.  
 ► Dialing starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.  
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 410
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.  
 ► Dialing starts automatically.


### ► To make a call using redial

Press and hold the  button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's history.

### ► To make a call using the call history


The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFT, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.

### ► To make a call using a speed dial entry

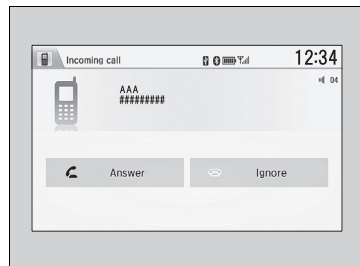
When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag.

► **Speed Dial** P. 417



Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.

Press the  button and follow the prompts.

## ■ Receiving a Call

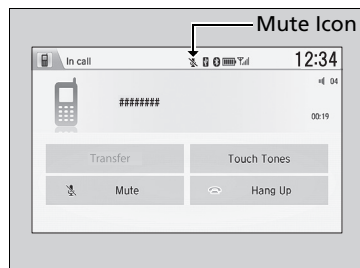


When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.  
Press the  button to decline or end the call.

## ■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.



**Mute:** Mute your voice.


► The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.


**Transfer:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

**Touch Tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.


## » Receiving a Call



**Call Waiting**

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the touch screen instead of the  and  buttons.

## » Options During a Call

**Touch Tones:** Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the touch screen.

# Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

<b>Before Driving</b> .....	424
<b>Towing a Trailer</b> .....	428
<b>Off-road Guidelines</b> .....	433
<b>When Driving</b>	
Models without keyless access system	
Starting the Engine .....	435
Models with keyless access system	
Starting the Engine .....	438
Precautions While Driving.....	442
Continuously Variable Transmission* ...	444
Continuously variable transmission models without paddle shifters	
Shifting .....	445

Continuously variable transmission models with paddle shifters	
Shifting.....	447
Manual transmission models	
Shifting.....	451
Auto Idle Stop* .....	453
ECON Button* .....	457
Cruise Control* .....	458
Forward Collision Warning* .....	461
Lane Departure Warning* .....	465
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System.....	468
Except Taiwanese models	
Deflation Warning System* .....	470
Taiwanese models	
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ...	473

REAL TIME AWD with Intelligent Control System* .....	476
<b>Braking</b>	
Brake System.....	477
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	484
Brake Assist System .....	485
City-Brake Active system* .....	486
Emergency Stop Signal .....	491
<b>Parking Your Vehicle</b>	
When Stopped .....	492
Parking Sensor System* .....	493
<b>Multi-View Rear Camera*</b> .....	497
<b>Refueling</b>	
Fuel Information .....	499
How to Refuel .....	500
<b>Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions</b> .....	501

\* Not available on all models

## Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

### Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
    - ✎ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 543
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

### Exterior Checks

#### NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

## Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
    - ✎ **Load Limit** P. 427
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat\*.
  - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - Adjust the head restraint, too.
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 222
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Head Restraints** P. 225
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
  - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 218
    - ✎ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 217

## Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer\*, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

### Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

✎ **Headlight Adjuster\*** P. 206

### Models with LED type headlights

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vehicle angle of the headlights.

\* Not available on all models



- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  - They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  - 📌 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 47
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  - Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
    - 📌 **Indicators** P. 96

## Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

➤ **Specifications** P. 614, 617

Australian, South African, and 1.8L engine models for New Zealand

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

➤ **Specifications** P. 614, 617

### Load Limit

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

# Towing a Trailer

Except Australian, South African, and 1.8L engine models for New Zealand

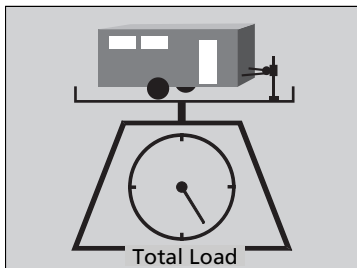
Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Australian, South African, and 1.8L engine models for New Zealand

## Towing Preparation

### Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



#### ■ Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum towing weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes), luggage and everything in or on it.

Towing loads in excess of the maximum towing weight can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.

### » Towing Load Limits

#### ⚠ WARNING

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

**Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.**

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your luggage load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and the trailer nose load.

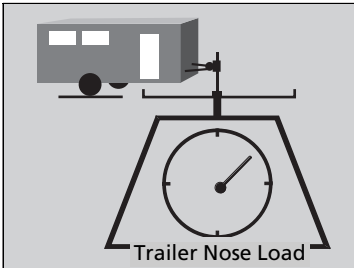
#### Break-in Period

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km.

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle and trailer weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 metres of elevation.

Never exceed the maximum towing weight and specified load limit.

📖 **Specifications** P. 616, 619



### ■ Trailer Nose load

The trailer nose load should never exceed 70 kg. This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 700 kg, the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

- Excessive trailer nose load reduces front tyre traction and steering control. Too little trailer nose load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper trailer nose load, start by loading 60% of the load towards the front of the trailer and 40% towards the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

## ■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

### ■ Towbars

The towbar must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

### ■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

### ■ Trailer brakes

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

### ■ Additional towing equipment

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

### ■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the regulations of the country where you are driving. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.

## ► Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the regulations of the country where you are driving.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

## Driving Safely with a Trailer

### ■ Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.  
**📄 Towing Load Limits** P. 428
- Securely attach the tow bar, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressures of the trailer tyres, including the spare.
- Check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.

### ■ Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Use the **[D]** position when towing a trailer on level roads.

#### 📄Driving Safely with a Trailer

Operating speed when towing a trailer must not exceed 100 km/h.

#### Parking

In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

We recommend you drive uphill or less than 12% slope. Follow the trailer association's recommendations for suitable roads.

Winds caused by passing large vehicles can sway your trailer, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead.

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when reversing.

## ■ Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

## ■ Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Closely watch your high temperature indicator. If the indicator remains on, turn off the heating and cooling system\*/climate control system\* and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.
- Shift to the **S** position if the transmission shifts frequently.

## General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement, however, its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads. It is not designed for trail-blazing, or other challenging off-road activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills and that your vehicle will handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Pay attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

## Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations:

- Be sure to store luggage properly and do not exceed your luggage load limits.  
    📖 **Specifications** P. 614, 617
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

### Off-road Guidelines

#### **WARNING**

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off pavement can cause an accident or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

📖 **Important Handling Information** P. 38

📖 **Precautions While Driving** P. 442

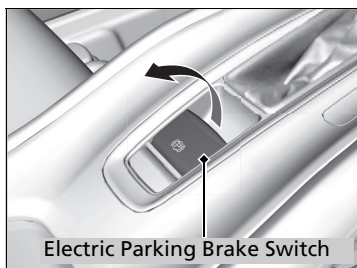


## Avoiding Trouble

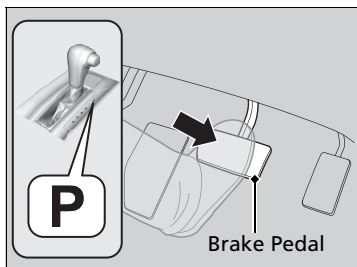
- **Check Out Your Vehicle** before you leave the pavement and make sure that all scheduled maintenance has been completed. Pay special attention to the condition of the tyres, and check the tyre pressures.
- **Remember** the route you choose presents limits (too steep or bumpy), you have limits (driving skill and comfort), and your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power). Failing to recognize these limits will likely put you and your passengers in a hazardous situation.
- **Accelerating and Braking** should be done slowly and gradually. Trying to start or stop too fast can cause a loss of traction and you could lose control.
- **Avoiding Obstacles and Debris** in the road reduces the likelihood of a rollover or damage to your suspension or other components.
- **Driving on Slopes** increasing your risk of a rollover, particularly if you attempt to drive across a slope that is too steep. Going straight up or down a slope is usually the safest. If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk it before you drive it. If there is any doubt whether you can safely pass, don't try it. Find another route. If you get stuck when climbing, do not try to turn around. Back down slowly following the same route you took up the hill.
- **Crossing a Stream** - Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route. Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.
- **If You Get Stuck**, carefully go in the direction that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tyres as this will only make things worse and could damage the transmission. If you are unable to free yourself, your vehicle will need to be towed. Front and rear tow hooks are provided for this purpose.

Models without keyless access system

## Starting the Engine

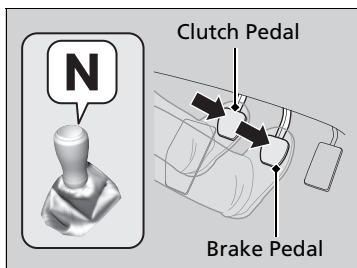


1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
  - The electric parking brake indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.



### Continuously variable transmission models

2. Check that the transmission is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
  - Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.



### Manual transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in **N**. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.
  - The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

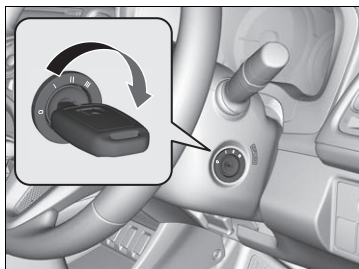
### Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, heating and cooling system 'climate control system', and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.



3. Turn the ignition switch to START **III** without depressing the accelerator pedal.

#### ►► Starting the Engine

Do not hold the key in START **III** for more than 10 seconds.

- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 30 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

► **Immobilizer System** P. 186

#### ►► Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.

When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

## Starting to Drive

### Continuously variable transmission models

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the transmission into **D**. Select **R** when reversing.
  2. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
    - Make sure the electric parking brake indicator goes off.
- **Parking Brake** P. 477

## ■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

### Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

### Continuously variable transmission models

Put transmission into **[D]**, **[S]**, or **[L]** \* when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

### ⌘ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

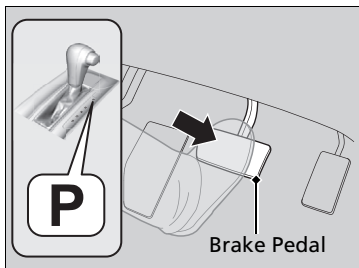
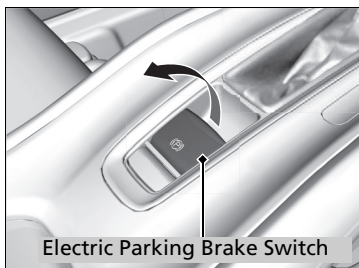
Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

\* Not available on all models

Models with keyless access system

## Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
  - The electric parking brake indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.
2. Check that the transmission is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
  - Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

### Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

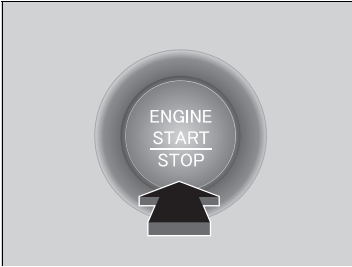
The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, heating\* and cooling system\*/climate control system\*, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

► **Immobilizer System** P. 186



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

#### ▶▶ Starting the Engine

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

▶ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 587

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

## ■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Put transmission into **P**.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

## ■ Starting to Drive

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the transmission into **D**. Select **R** when reversing.
2. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
  - Make sure the electric parking brake indicator goes off.  
🚘 **Parking Brake** P. 477

### 🚘 Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.

When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

## ■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Put transmission into **[D]**, **[S]**, or **[L]** \* when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

### ⌘ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

\* Not available on all models



## Precautions While Driving

### ■ Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers whenever possible.
- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the centre of gravity.
- Do not carry heavy luggage on the roof.

### ■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

### ►► Precautions While Driving

**CAUTION:** Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

#### NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

#### NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY **I**<sup>\*1</sup> while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in **N**, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

## ▣ Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km. You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

## Continuously Variable Transmission \*

---

### ■ Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases.  
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

### ■ Kickdown

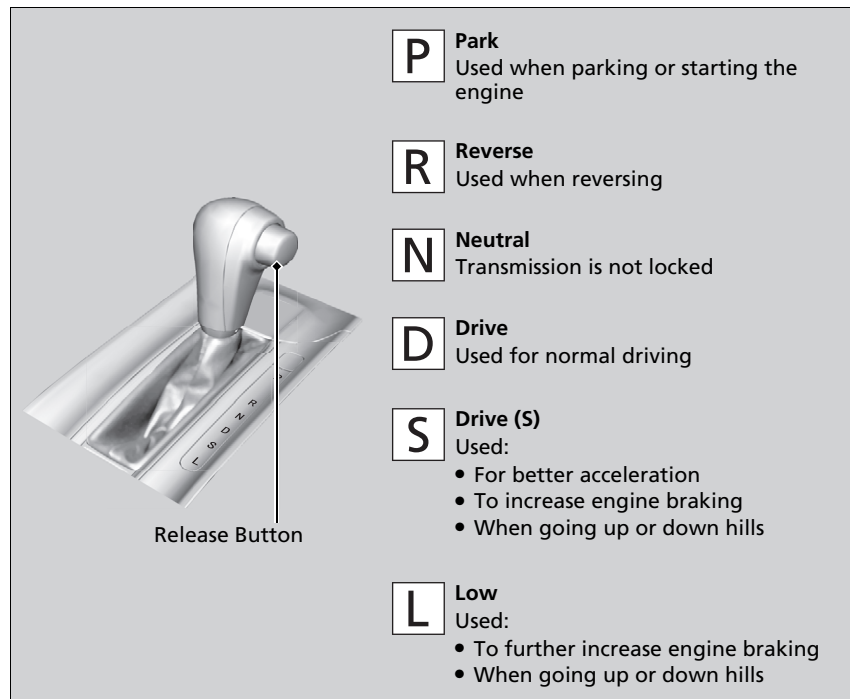
Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed.  
Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Continuously variable transmission models without paddle shifters

## Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

### ■ Shift lever positions



### ▶▶ Shifting

#### Models without keyless access system

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK [O] and remove the key unless the shift lever is in [P].

#### Models with keyless access system

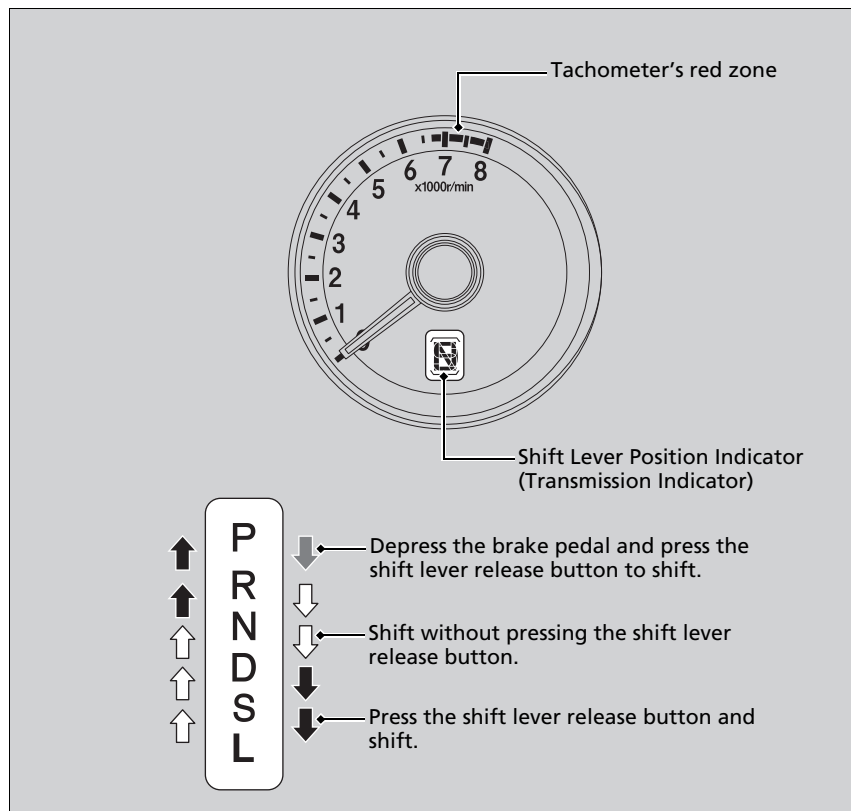
You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in [P].

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in [N] while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

## ■ Shift Lever Operation



## ►► Shift Lever Operation

### NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

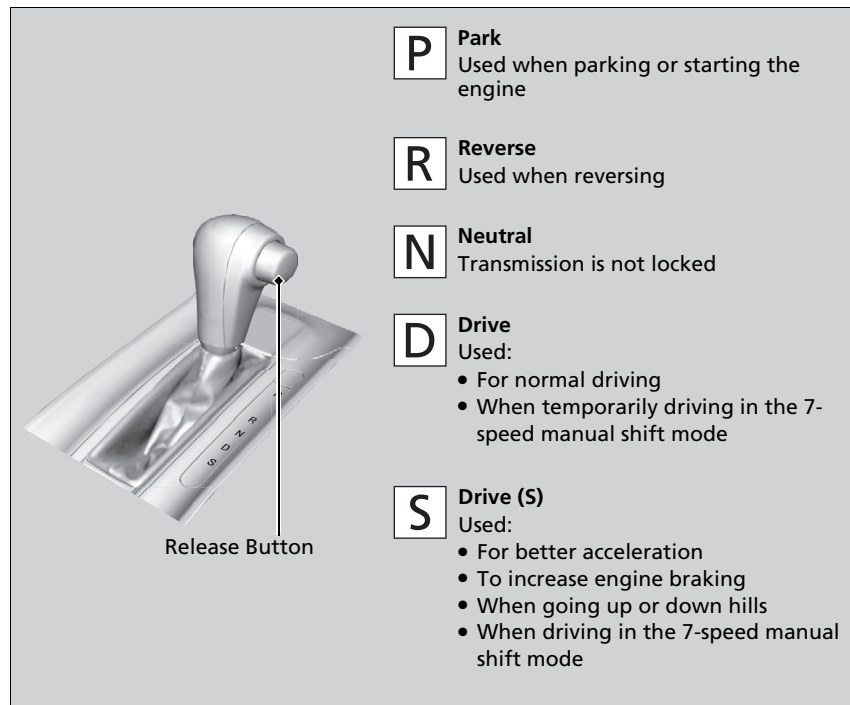
Depress the brake pedal first.

Continuously variable transmission models with paddle shifters

## Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

### ■ Shift lever positions



### ►► Shifting

#### Models without keyless access system

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK [O] and remove the key unless the shift lever is in [P].

#### Models with keyless access system

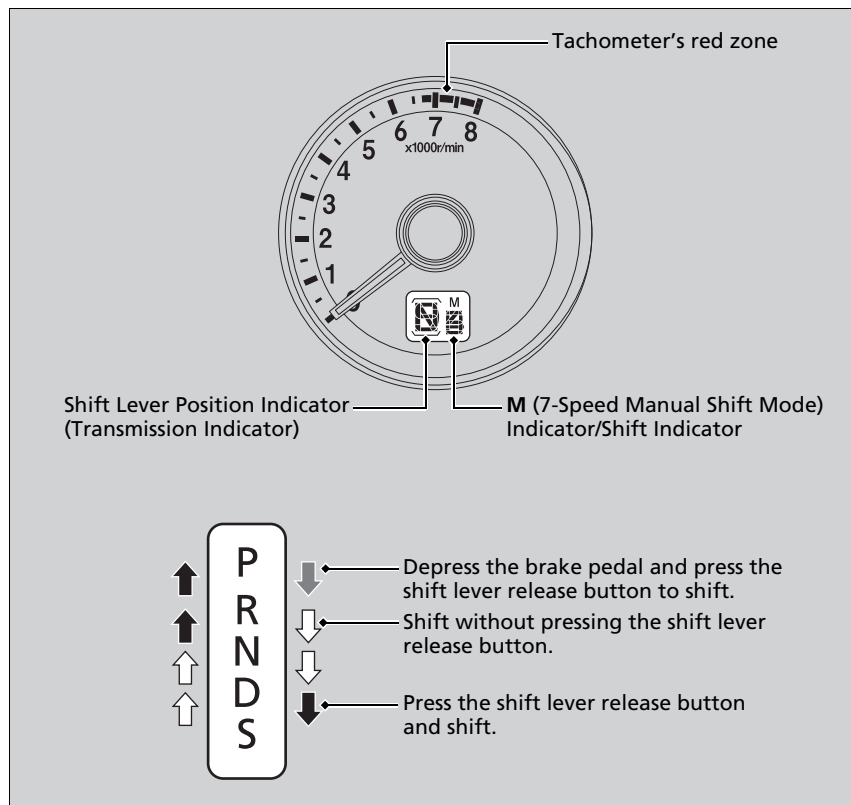
You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in [P].

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in [N] while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

## ■ Shift Lever Operation



## ►► Shift Lever Operation

### NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

Depress the brake pedal first.

## ■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without removing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

### ■ When the shift lever is in **[D]**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.

You can cancel this mode by pulling the **[+]** paddle shifter for a few seconds.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

### ■ When the shift lever is in **[S]**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, move the shift lever from **[S]** to **[D]**. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator go off.

## ⌘ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:

Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.

Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

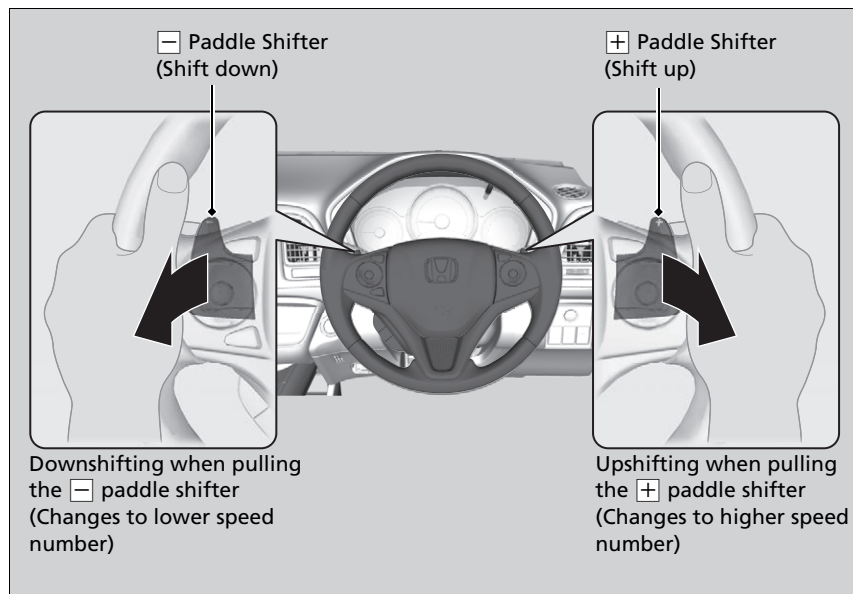
When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.

When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal D driving mode.



## ■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



## ►► 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.

To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.

Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

The shift indicator may also blink when you cannot shift down while driving in low speed. This prevents the transmission from being damaged.

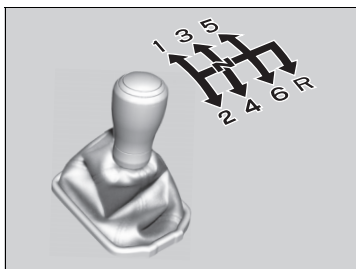
Manual transmission models

## Shifting

### Shift Lever Operation

Fully depress the clutch pedal to operate the shift lever and change gears, then slowly release the pedal.

Depress the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into **[R]**, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they do not “grind.”



When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

### Shifting

#### NOTICE

Do not shift to **[R]** before the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Shifting to **[R]** before stopping can damage the transmission.

#### NOTICE

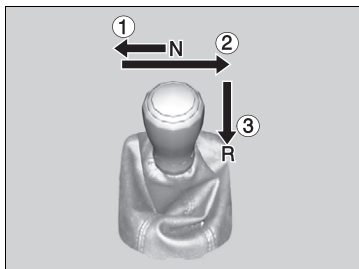
Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone. Should this occur, it can severely damage your engine.

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. When this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

## ■ Reverse Lockout

The manual transmission has a lockout mechanism that stops you from accidentally shifting into **R** from a forward gear while the vehicle is moving at a certain speed.

If you cannot shift to **R** when the vehicle is stopped, do the following:

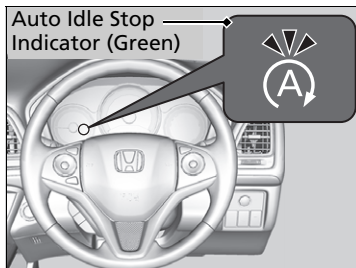


1. Depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever all the way to the left, and shift to **R**.
2. If you still cannot shift into **R**, apply the parking brake, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY **I** or LOCK **0**.
3. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into **R**.
4. Keep depressing the clutch pedal and start the engine.

Have the vehicle checked by a dealer if you have to go through this procedure repeatedly.

## Auto Idle Stop\*

To help to maximise fuel economy, the engine automatically stops when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The indicator (green) comes on at this time.

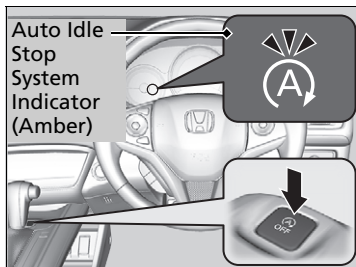


The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again, and the indicator (green) goes off.

➤ **Indicators** P. 123

If the driver's door is opened while the indicator (green) is on, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

## Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF



To turn the Auto Idle Stop system off, press this button. The Auto Idle Stop system stops.

▶ Auto Idle Stop system will stop and the indicator (amber) will come on.

The Auto Idle Stop system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

### Auto Idle Stop\*

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the 12-volt battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the 12-volt battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

➤ **Specifications** P. 614

The duration of the Auto Idle Stop operation:

- **Increase** in the ECON mode, compared to when the ECON mode is off, with climate control in use.


### Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

Pressing the Auto Idle Stop system **OFF** button restarts the engine during the Auto Idle Stop activated.

## ■ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

The vehicle stops with the shift lever in **[D]** and the brake pedal depressed.

### ■ Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:

- The Auto Idle Stop system **OFF** button is pressed.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The engine coolant temperature is low or high.
- The engine is started with the bonnet open.
  - Turn off the engine. Close the bonnet before you restart the engine to activate Auto Idle Stop.
- The battery charge is low.
- The internal temperature of the battery is 5°C or less.
-  is on (indicator on).
- The climate control system is in use, and the temperature is set to **Hi** or **Lo**.
- The climate control system is in use, and the outside temperature is below -20°C or over 40°C.
- The transmission fluid temperature is low or high.
- The transmission is in a position other than **[D]**.
- The vehicle comes to a stop again before the vehicle speed reaches 5km/h after the engine starts.
- Stopped on a steep incline.
- The capacitor unit condition is not good.
  - The capacitor unit is used for a condenser to charge or discharge in a short time.

## ► Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

Do not open a bonnet during Idling Stop function is activated.

If the bonnet is opened, the engine will not restart automatically.

In this case, restart the engine with the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

► **Starting the Engine** P. 438

Pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes the power mode to **ACCESSORY** even while Auto Idle Stop is in operation. Once in **ACCESSORY**, the engine no longer restarts automatically. Follow the standard procedure to start the engine.

► **Starting the Engine** P. 438

### ■ Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:

- The steering wheel is operated.
- Altitude is high.
- The vehicle is stopped by braking suddenly.
- The vehicle is repeatedly accelerated and decelerated at a low speed.
- The climate control system is in use, and there is a significant difference between the set temperature and the actual interior temperature.
- Humidity in the interior is high.
- The fan speed is high.

### ■ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:


The brake pedal is released (without the automatic brake hold system activated).  
The accelerator pedal is depressed (with the automatic brake hold system activated).

🔧 **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 481

### ⌘ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

If you are using an electronic device during Auto Idle Stop, the device may temporarily be turned off when the engine restarts.

### ■ The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed when\*1:

- The Auto Idle Stop system **OFF** button is pressed.
- A steering wheel is operated.
- The transmission is put into **[R]**, **[S]**, and **[L]**\*, or when it is set from **[N]** and put into **[D]**.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is reduced and the vehicle starts moving while stopped on an incline.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is repeatedly applied and released slightly during a stop.
- The battery charge becomes low.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The driver's seat belt is unlatched.
-  is on (indicator on).
- The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.
- The climate control system is being used to dehumidify the interior.

### ■ Starting Assist Brake Function

Briefly keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal to restart the engine. This can keep your vehicle from unexpectedly moving while on an incline.

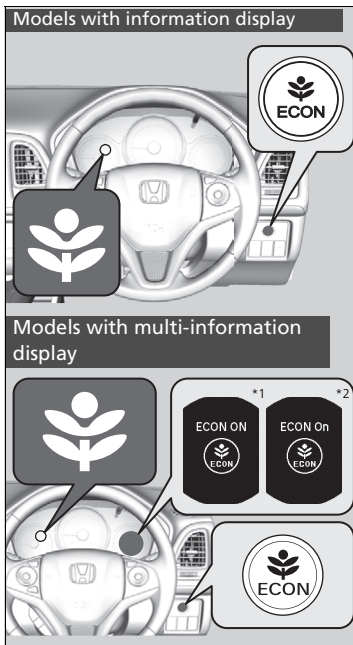
### ►► The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed when\*1:

\*1 : With the automatic brake hold system activated, you can release the brake pedal during Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

If the automatic brake hold system has been turned off, or if there is a problem with the system, the engine will restart automatically when you release the brake pedal.

► **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 481

## ECON Button\*



\*1: Except Taiwanese, Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian and Myanmar models

\*2: Taiwanese, Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian and Myanmar models

The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.

The ECON mode helps you to improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission, heating\* and cooling system\*/climate control system\*, and cruise control\*.

### ▶▶ ECON Button\*

#### Models with climate control system

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.



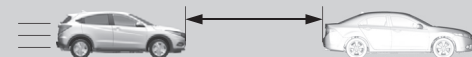
## Cruise Control \*

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator pedal. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

### When to use

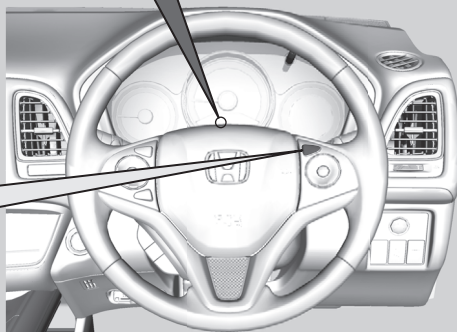
- Vehicle speed for cruise control:  
Desired speed in a range above  
roughly 40 km/h ~
- Shift positions for cruise control:  
In **D** or **S**

Always keep sufficient distance between  
you and the vehicle in front of you.



### How to use

- Press the **CRUISE** button on the steering wheel.



**CRUISE MAIN** is on in the  
instrument panel.  
Cruise control is ready to use.

### ⓘ Cruise Control \*

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead  
to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling  
on open motorways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed  
when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:  
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE**  
button.

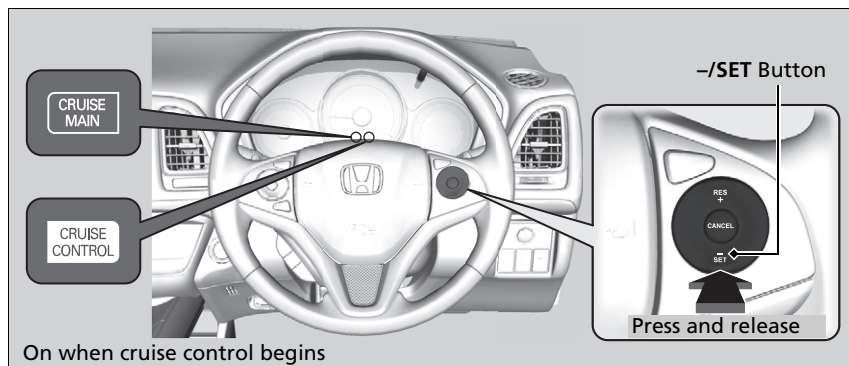
### Models with Auto Idle Stop system

Setting the power mode to **ACCESSORY** or **VEHICLE**  
**OFF (LOCK)** turns off cruise control automatically.

### Models with ECON button

While in **ECON** mode, it may take relatively more time  
to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

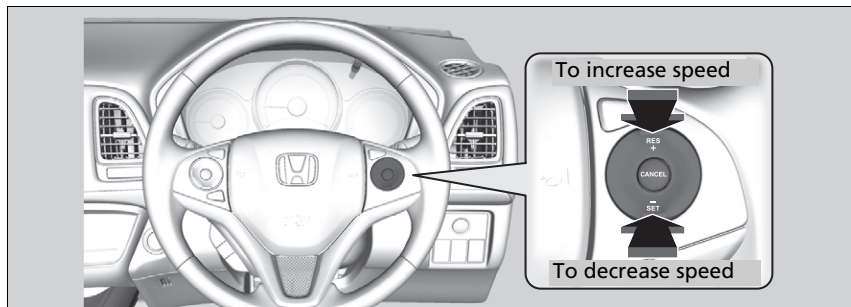


Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

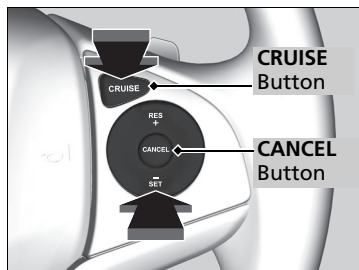
## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1.6 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

## ■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

## ▶▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **-/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

## ▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 40 km/h or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 35 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

## Forward Collision Warning\*

Alerts you when it detects the possibility of your vehicle colliding with the vehicle in front of yours.

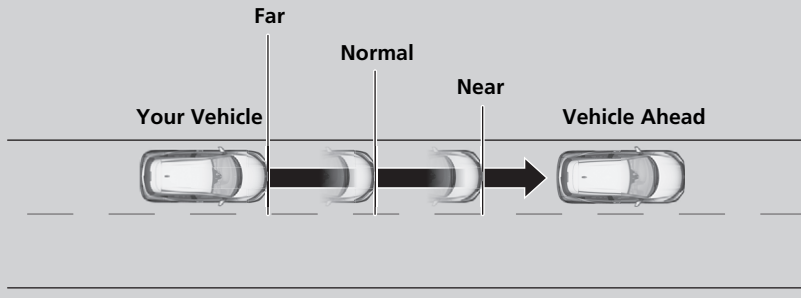
If the system determines a collision is possible, it gives both visual and audible alerts.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.).

### ■ How the system works

The system may give warnings of potential collisions when your vehicle speed is above 15 km/h.

You can set **Far**, **Normal** or **Near** for when warnings start:



### ⚠ Forward Collision Warning\*

#### Important Safety Reminder

Forward Collision Warning cannot detect all objects ahead and may not detect a given object; accuracy of the system will vary based on weather, speed and other factors. Forward Collision Warning does not include a braking function. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can change the Forward Collision Warning Distance setting or turn the system on and off.

📖 **Customized Features** P. 143

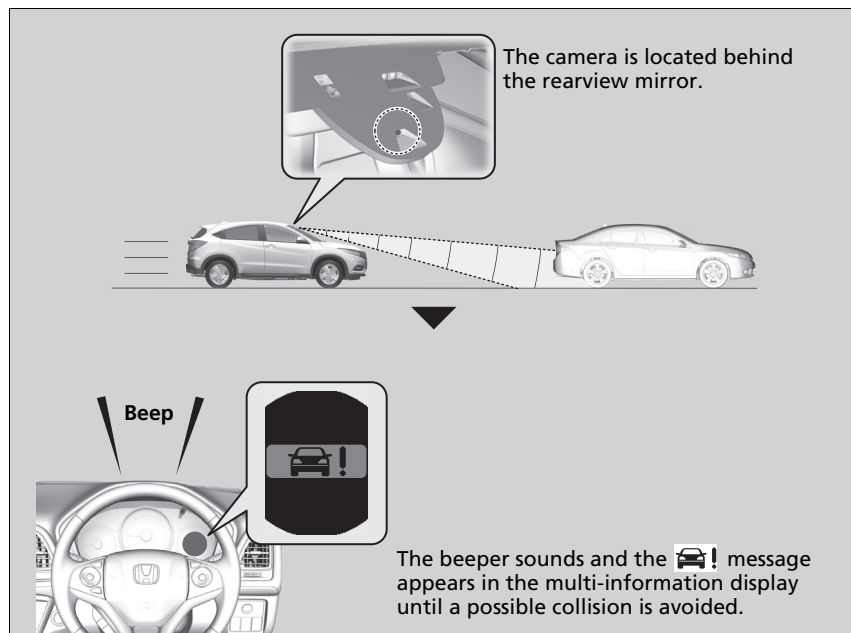
The camera is shared with Lane Departure Warning and Auto High-Beam.

For the system's proper operation:

- Do not impact the camera or the area around the camera when you clean the windscreen.
- Keep the upper windscreen clean. Wipe away any debris including ice and frost.

Consult a dealer in the following cases.

- The camera or the area around the camera is severely impacted.
- The area around the windscreen needs repair.




#### Forward Collision Warning\*

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the Forward Collision Warning camera's field of vision.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the Forward Collision Warning camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the Forward Collision Warning camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

## ■ Automatic shutoff

Forward Collision Warning may automatically shut itself off and the  indicator comes and stays on when:

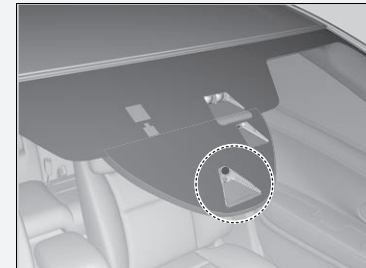
- The temperature inside the system is high.
- The windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.


Once the conditions that caused Forward Collision Warning to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

## ▶▶▶ Automatic shutoff


To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun.

If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on the camera.



If the  message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, the demister mode when windows are fogged.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the Forward Collision Warning camera.

If the  message appears:

Park your vehicle in a safe place. Wipe away debris blocking the windscreen, then start driving again. If the message remains on even after driving for a while with the clean windscreen, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Forward Collision Warning Limitations

Forward Collision Warning may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle, and may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead, under the following conditions.

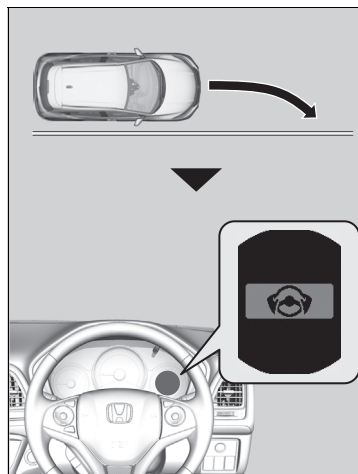
### Condition

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- When either your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you accelerates rapidly.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, a small vehicle, or a unique vehicle such as a tractor.
- When you drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period that makes it difficult for the camera to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- When there are pedestrians or animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive in bad weather (rain, fog, etc.).
- A heavy load in the rear or modifications to the suspension tilts your vehicle.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).
- When the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- When the temperature inside the system is high.
- A sudden change between light and dark such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- You drive into the sunlight (e.g. at dawn or dusk).
- When the windscreen is dirty or cloudy.
- When streetlights are perceived as the taillight of a vehicle in front of yours.
- When driving at night, the vehicle ahead of you is running with either taillight bulb burned out.
- When you drive in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer\*.


## Lane Departure Warning\*

Alerts you when the system determines a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings.

### How the System Works



If your vehicle is getting too close to detected left or right side lane markings without a turn signal activated, Lane Departure Warning will give audible and visual alerts.

The beeper sounds and the  message appears on the multi-information display, letting you know that you need to take appropriate action.

### How the System Activates

The system begins to search for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is travelling above 64 km/h.
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

\* Not available on all models

### ⚠ Lane Departure Warning\*


#### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, Lane Departure Warning has limitations.

Over-reliance on Lane Departure Warning may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

Lane Departure Warning only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. Lane Departure Warning may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

### ⚠ How the System Activates

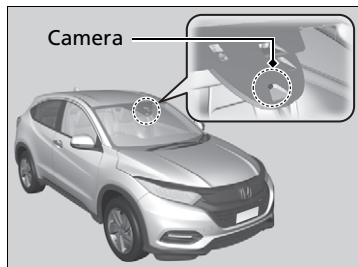
Lane Departure Warning may automatically shut off and the  indicator comes and stays on.

➡ **Indicators** P. 120

Continued

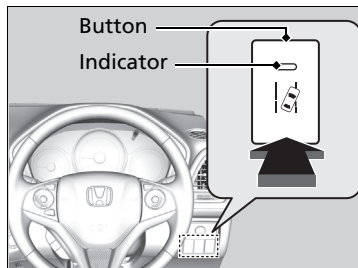


## ■ Lane Departure Warning Camera



The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

## ■ Lane Departure Warning On and Off



Press the Lane Departure Warning button to turn the system on and off.

- The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

## ► Lane Departure Warning Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the Lane Departure Warning camera's field of vision.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the Lane Departure Warning camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the Lane Departure Warning camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun.

If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on the camera.


## ■ Lane Departure Warning Limitations

Lane Departure Warning may not activate or may not recognize lanes, and may activate even when keeping in the middle of a lane, under the following conditions.

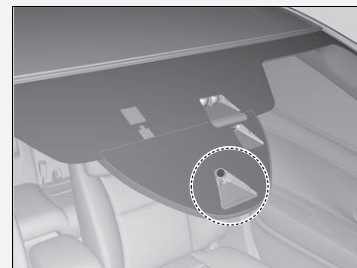
### Condition


- When you drive in bad weather (rain, fog, etc.).
- A heavy load in the rear or modifications to the suspension tilts your vehicle.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).
- When the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- When the temperature inside the system is high.
- A sudden change between light and dark such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- You drive into the sunlight (e.g. at dawn or dusk).
- When the windscreen is dirty or cloudy.
- When you drive in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer\*.
- When you drive on a wet road surface following another vehicle.
  - ▶ The camera may perceive the tyre tracks in the water as lane lines.
- When there is snow or wheel tracks on the side of the road.
- When the road has many repaired area or an erased lane line.
- When the vehicle is running over painted signs or crosswalk markings.
- When you drive in a lane with worn-out lane markings.

### 📷 Lane Departure Warning Camera

If the  message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, the demister mode when windows are fogged.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the Lane Departure Warning camera.



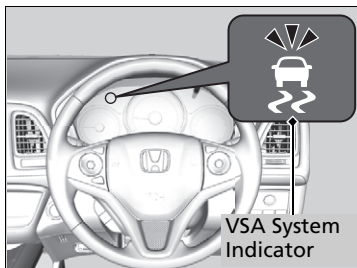
If the  message appears:

Park your vehicle in a safe place. Wipe away debris blocking the windscreen, then start driving again. If the message remains on even after driving for a while with the clean windscreen, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

### VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

### Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

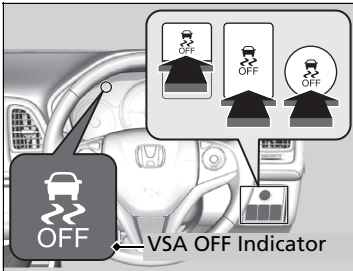
VSA may not function properly if tyre types and sizes are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures are as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.


The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

## ■ VSA On and OFF



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.


Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the  (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## ▣ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Except Taiwanese models

## Deflation Warning System \*

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the multi-information display\*.


### Deflation Warning System Calibration

You must start deflation warning system calibration every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

 **Checking Tyres** P. 543

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift lever is in **P**.
- The ignition switch is in ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup>.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### ►► Deflation Warning System \*

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.


Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre types and sizes are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

 **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 543

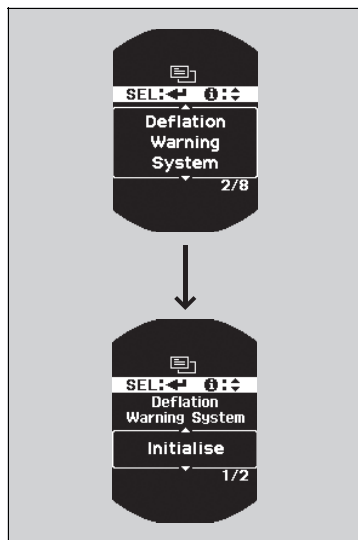
The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- A compact spare tyre\* is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer\*, than the condition at calibration.
- Snow chains are used.

# Models with multi-information display



You can calibrate the system from the customized features on the multi-information display.

1. Press the button until (customize settings) appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
2. Press the button until **Deflation Warning System** appears on the display.
3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
  - ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.
4. Press the button and select **Initialise**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
  - ▶ **Completed** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

## Deflation Warning System Calibration

- Deflation Warning System cannot be calibrated if a compact spare tyre\* or full-size spare tyre\* is installed.
- The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40–100 km/h.
- During this period, if the ignition is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

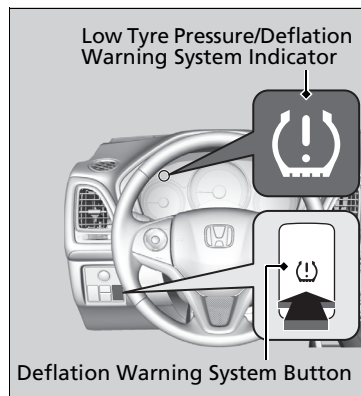
If the snow chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

\* Not available on all models

Models with information display



Press and hold the deflation warning system button until the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator blinks twice, indicating the calibration process has begun.

- If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator does not blink, confirm the above conditions then press and hold the deflation warning system button again.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

## Taiwanese models

# Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the multi-information display\*.

## TPMS Calibration

You must start TPMS calibration every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the TPMS:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

➤ **Checking Tyres** P. 543

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift lever is in **P**.
- The power mode is in ON.

## ⌘ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The TPMS may not function properly if tyre types and sizes are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

➤ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 543

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

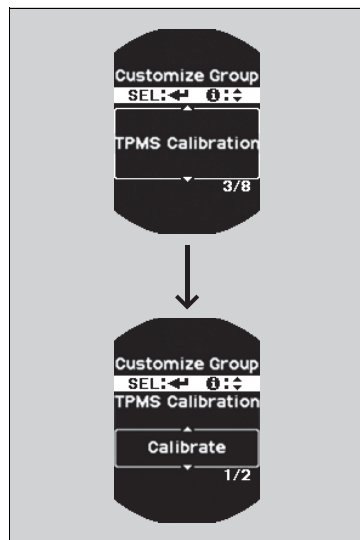
The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- A compact spare tyre is used.
- Snow chains are used.

\* Not available on all models



#### Models with multi-information display



You can calibrate the system from the customized features on the multi-information display.

1. Press the button until **Clock & Vehicle Settings** screen appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
  2. Press the button until **TPMS Calibration** appears on the display.
  3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
    - ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Calibrate**.
  4. Press the button and select **Calibrate**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
    - ▶ **Completed** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

#### ▶▶ TPMS Calibration

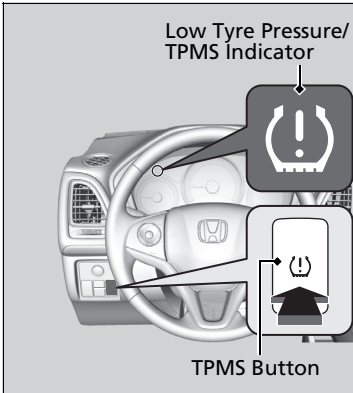
- TPMS cannot be calibrated if a compact spare tyre is installed.
- The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40–100 km/h.
- During this period, if the ignition is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the snow chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the TPMS.

If the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

Models with information display



Press and hold the TPMS button until the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator blinks twice, indicating the calibration process has begun.

- If the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator does not blink, confirm the above conditions then press and hold the TPMS button again.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

## REAL TIME AWD with Intelligent Control System \*

Your vehicle is equipped with the AWD system. When the system senses a loss of front wheel traction, it automatically transfers some power to the rear wheels. This allows you to utilize all available traction and may increase mobility.

You still need to exercise the same care when accelerating, steering, and braking that you would in a two wheel drive vehicle.

If you excessively spin all four wheels and overheat the AWD system, only the front wheels receive power. Stop until the system cools down.

### ►► REAL TIME AWD with Intelligent Control System \*

#### NOTICE

Do not continuously spin the front tyres of your vehicle. Continuously spinning the front tyres can cause transmission or rear differential damage.

The AWD system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

► **Tyre and Wheel Replacement** P. 545

## Brake System

### Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



#### ■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the ignition switch\*1 is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- The electric parking brake indicator comes on.

### » Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake, or turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]\*1. This is normal.

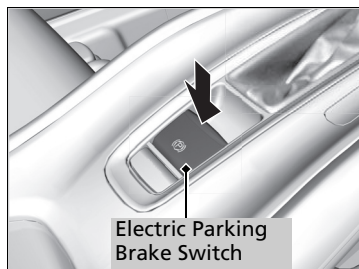
The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.

➤ **Jump Starting** P. 589

**If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.**

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



### ■ To release

The ignition switch must be ON **II**\*1 in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
  - The electric parking brake indicator goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

### ►► Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and the automatic brake hold system is applied.
- When the engine is turned off while the automatic brake hold system is applied.
- When there is a problem with the automatic brake hold system while brake hold is applied.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ■ To release automatically

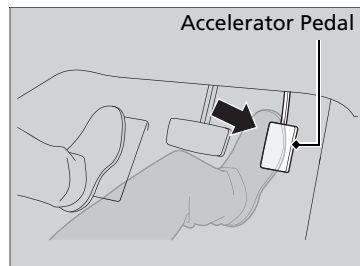
Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.

### Continuously variable transmission models

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

### Manual transmission models

Depressing the accelerator pedal while releasing the clutch pedal releases the parking brake.



### Continuously variable transmission models

Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

► The electric parking brake indicator goes off.

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in **P** or **N**.

## ►► Parking Brake

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

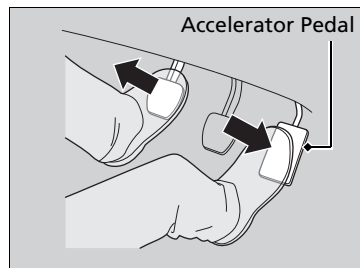
When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Electric parking brake system indicator
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator



#### Manual transmission models

Gently depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

- The electric parking brake indicator goes off.

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in **N**.

### Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps to reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you to retain steering control when braking very hard.

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 485

➤ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 484

#### ⌘ Parking Brake

The clutch pedal is fully depressed, and the clutch pedal is released after the accelerator pedal is gently depressed.

#### ⌘ Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.


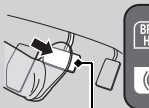
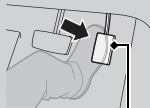
Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear/speed position. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

## Automatic Brake Hold

### Continuously variable transmission models

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system	■ Activating the system	■ Cancelling the system
 <p>Automatic Brake Hold Button</p> <p>Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.</li> </ul>	 <p>Brake Pedal</p> <p>Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The shift lever must be in other than <b>P</b> or <b>R</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.</li> <li>Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.</li> </ul>	 <p>Accelerator Pedal</p> <p>Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in other than <b>P</b> or <b>N</b>. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.</li> </ul>

### Automatic Brake Hold

## ⚠ WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

## ⚠ WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in **P** and applying the parking brake.



### Manual transmission models

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until you shift into one of the gears other than **N** and:

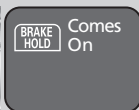
- Release the clutch pedal on a level road or when facing downhill.
- Release the clutch pedal and depress the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.

You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

#### ■ Turning on the system



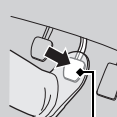
Automatic Brake Hold Button



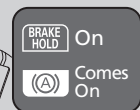
Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

#### ■ Activating the system



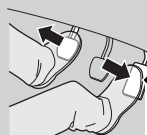
Brake Pedal



Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

#### ■ Cancelling the system



Accelerator Pedal



Shift into one of the gears other than **N** and:

- Release the clutch pedal on a level road or when facing downhill.
- Release the clutch pedal and depress the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.

The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

### ■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.

#### Continuously variable transmission models

- You depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever to **P** or **R**.

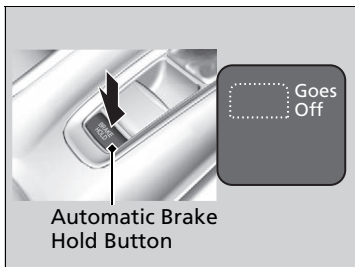
### ■ The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

#### Manual transmission models

- The engine stalls.

### ■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

#### Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

#### When Stopped P. 492

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

#### Manual transmission models

The system turns off if the engine stalls while automatic brake hold is active or the system is on.

#### Turning on the system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation. The system generates sound while holding the vehicle and it moves.

## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

### ■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

### ►► Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

#### NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with snow chains.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

## Brake Assist System

### ■ Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

#### ■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

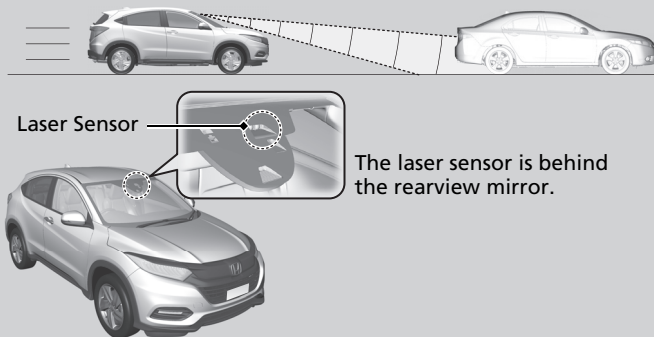
When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

## City-Brake Active system\*

Can assist you when driving at a low speed, and there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle detected right in front of yours. The City-Brake Active system is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed when a collision is deemed unavoidable to help to minimise collision severity.

### How the System Works

A laser sensor starts to monitor if there is a vehicle in front of you when your vehicle speed is between about 5 km/h and about 32 km/h.



The system activates when the speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle detected in front of you is about 5 km/h to 32 km/h with a high chance of collision.

### City-Brake Active system\*

#### **⚠ WARNING**

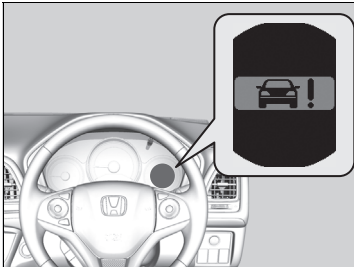
**Do not rely on the city-brake active system to avoid every possible frontal collision.**


Failure to pay close attention to a vehicle ahead of you, and to operate the brake pedal appropriately according to the situation can cause serious injury or death.

#### **For the system to work properly:**

- **Always keep the upper part of the windscreen clean. Wipe away any dirt, ice, frost, etc.**
- Do not impact the area around the laser sensor when cleaning the windscreen.
- Do not remove the laser sensor from the unit.

## ■ Collision Alert Stages



The beeper sounds, and a  blinks on the multi-information display, and hard braking is applied when a possible collision becomes likely unavoidable.

This automatic braking with the system activated is cancelled after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Apply the brakes accordingly.

A message indicating that the system has activated appears on the multi-information display after the vehicle is stopped.

### ❏ **Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages**\* P. 125

The system may be cancelled if you operate the brake pedal, the accelerator pedal, or the steering wheel to avoid the collision.

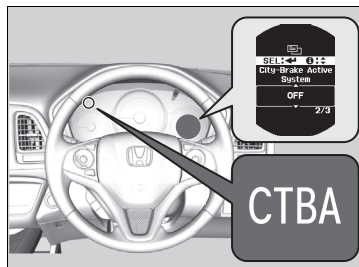
## ❏ **City-Brake Active system\***

The system may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under the following conditions:

- A vehicle in front of you is diagonally, horizontally, or frontally positioned.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle ahead of you is large.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you, and brakes suddenly.
- You rapidly accelerate your vehicle, getting closer to a vehicle ahead.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly drifts in front of you.
- Your vehicle suddenly drifts into the oncoming lane.
- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you at intersections.
- When driving in bad weather (heavy rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- When driving on a curved or winding road.
- A vehicle in front of you is extremely dirty, making it difficult to reflect radio waves well.
- You depress the brake pedal or turn the steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- A vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle or other small vehicle the sensor cannot detect properly.
- The upper part of the windscreen around the laser sensor is covered with dirt, ice frost, etc.

The system may not activate while you are fully depressing the accelerator pedal.

## ■ The System On and Off



You can turn the system on and off using the multi-information display.

► **Customized Features** P. 143

When the system is off, the **CTBA** indicator in the instrument panel comes on.

The City-Brake Active system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## ► City-Brake Active system\*

The system may automatically shut off, and the **CTBA** indicator can come on and the message can appear on the multi-information display when:

- The temperature around the laser sensor on the upper part of the windscreen becomes high.
- The area around the laser sensor, which is located in the upper part of the windscreen, is covered with obstacles, such as dirt, ice and frost.
- The bonnet is covered with obstacles such as snow.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and

- Use the air conditioning system to cool down the interior if the laser sensor temperature is high.
- Remove any obstacles such as dirt and snow from the windscreen and bonnet.

► **Indicators** P. 121

Once the conditions that caused the system to shut off improve, the system comes back on.

Turn off the system when:

- You use a dynamometer or put the wheels on a roller.
- Driving off road or on a mountainous road obstructed with branches and leaves.

## ■ With Little Chance of a Collision

The system may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

### ■ When passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

### ■ At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

### ■ Through a low bridge

You drive under a low or narrow bridge.

### ■ Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects, such as a traffic sign and guard rail, on a curve.

### ■ When parking

Your vehicle approaches a stationary vehicle or wall.

## ⌘ City-Brake Active system\*

Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the laser sensor or area around it to be repaired, or removed, or the area around the laser sensor is strongly impacted.

Do not alter your vehicle's suspension. Changing the vehicle height prevents the system to work properly.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre for all four wheels. Use the tyres that are all in about the same condition with adequate tread. If not, the system may operate abnormally.

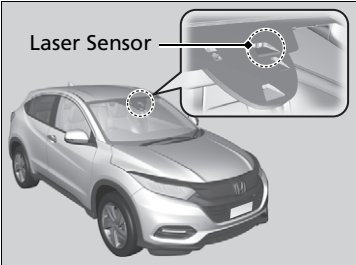
The system may not work properly if:

- Your vehicle has heavy load in the rear.
- Tyres are over- or underinflated.

\* Not available on all models



■ About the Laser Equipped in the System



The City-Brake Active system unit, including the laser sensor, is located behind the rearview mirror.

Following lists the classified specifications of the laser used in this system according to the IEC requirements. The same information can be found in the IEC60825-1 standard labels.

Laser classification	
Max average power:	45 mW
Pulse duration:	33 ns
Wavelength:	905 nm
Average power angle (horizontal × vertical)	28 × 12

Laser Classification Label	<div>INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS (MAGNIFIERS) CLASS 1M LASER PRODUCT</div>
Laser Explanation Label	<div>Max average power: 45 mW Pulse duration: 33 ns Wavelength: 905 nm  IEC 60825-1:2007 Complies with FDA performance standards for laser products except for deviations pursuant to Laser Notice No. 50, dated July 26<sup>th</sup>, 2001</div>

▶▶ City-Brake Active system\*

**⚠ WARNING**

Handling the laser sensor improperly can lead to eye injury.

To avoid eye injury, Keep the following:

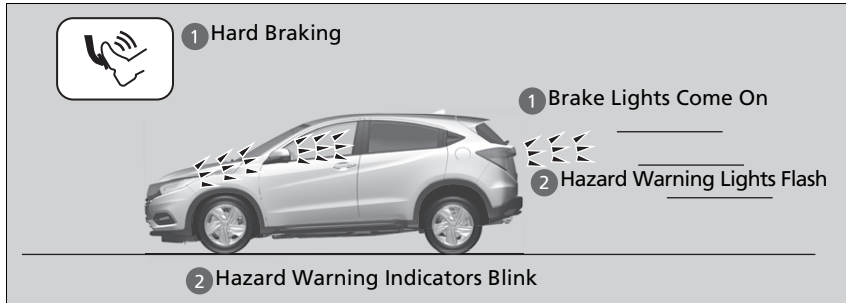
- Do not take the sensor apart from the unit.
- Never look at the sensor within a 100 mm distance using an optical device, such as a magnified glass, microscopes, and an object lens.

Except Latin American models

## Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

### ■ When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

### » Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

## When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.

### Continuously variable transmission models

3. Change the shift position to **P**.

### Manual transmission models

3. Move the shift lever to **R** or **1**.

### All models

4. Turn off the engine.
  - ▶ The electric parking brake indicator goes off in about 15 seconds.

Always confirm the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

### » Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

### » When Stopped

#### NOTICE

#### Continuously variable transmission models

The following can damage the transmission:

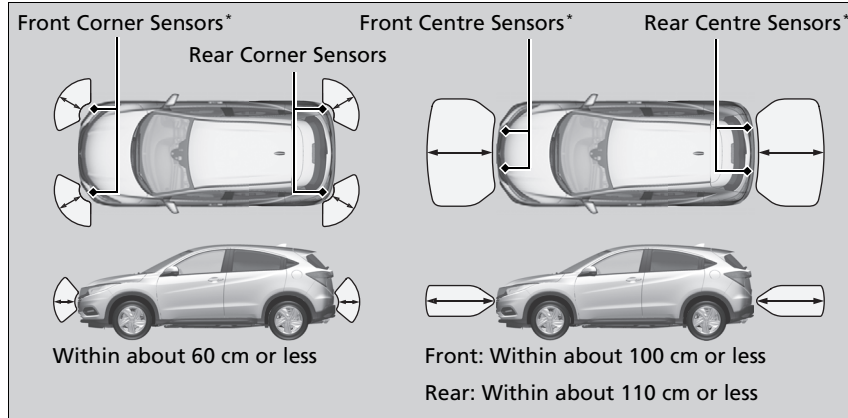
- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

## Parking Sensor System\*

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, audio/information screen\* and multi-information display\* let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

### ■ The sensor location and range



### Models without parking sensor system button

The rear corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **R**.

### ⚠ Parking Sensor System\*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

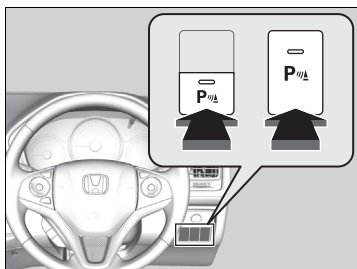
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

\* Not available on all models

#### Models with parking sensor system button

##### ■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner and front centre sensors\* start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in any position other than **P** or **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The front corner\*, rear corner and rear centre\* sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

#### ▶▶ Parking sensor system on and off




When you turn the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

##### Models without multi-information display

The indicator in the button blinks and the beeper sounds, if there is a problem with the parking sensor system.

Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator blinks repeatedly even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.

# ■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the bumper and obstacle		Indicator*	Audio/information screen* Multi-information display*
	Corner sensors	Centre sensors*		
Moderate	—	Front*: About 100-60 cm Rear *: About 110-60 cm	Blinks in yellow* <sup>1</sup>	<div>Models with display audio system</div>  <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p>
Short	About 60-45 cm	About 60-45 cm	Blinks in amber	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Blinks in red	<div>Models with colour audio system</div>  <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p> <div>Models with multi-information display</div>  <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p>

\*1: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

\*2:Australian, New Zealand and Vietnamese models

\*3:Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian and Myanmarese models

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Turning off All Rear Sensors\*

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
3. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button blinks.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
  - The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

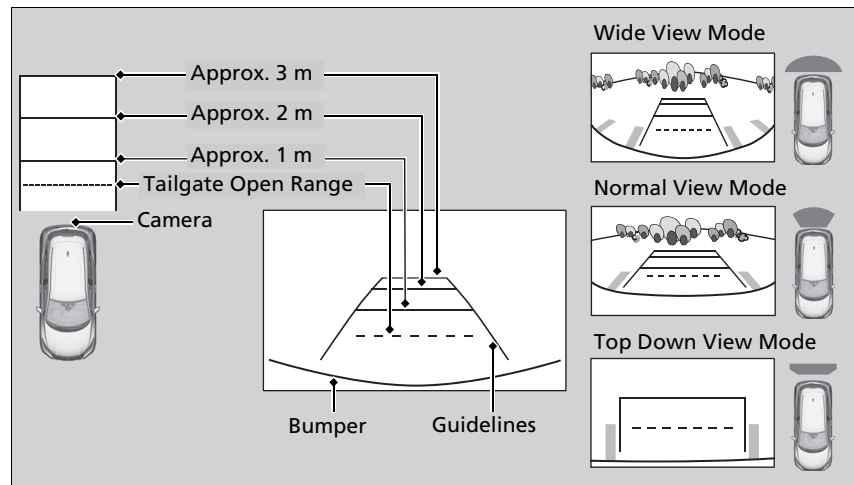
## ▣ Turning off All Rear Sensors\*

When you shift to **[R]**, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

## About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into **R**.

### Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



\* Not available on all models

### About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

### Models with display audio system

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

#### Customized Features P. 348

#### Fixed Guideline

**On:** Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into **R**.

**Off:** Guidelines do not appear.

#### Dynamic Guideline

**On:** Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

**Off:** Guidelines do not move.

Continued



You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen.

**Models with display audio system**

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



: Wide view mode



: Normal view mode



: Top down view mode

**Models with colour audio system**

Press the **LIST/SELECT** selector knob to switch the mode.

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into **[R]**.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the engine, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you turn the ignition switch to ON **[II]**\*<sup>1</sup> and put the transmission into **[R]**.

**Models with colour audio system**

- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of **[R]**, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into **[R]**.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Fuel Information

### Fuel recommendation

#### Except Thai and Indonesian models

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

#### Thai models

**Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher**

#### Indonesian models

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 90 or higher**

#### Pakistan models

Your vehicle is designed to operate on unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 87 or higher may be used temporarily.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

#### Thai models

Use of lower octane petrol/gasohol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

#### Except Pakistan and Thai models

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

#### 1.5 L engine models

**Fuel tank capacity: 40 L**

#### 1.8 L engine models

**Fuel tank capacity: 50 L**

### Refueling

#### Thai models

Immediately after refueling, especially when you have switched to another type of fuel, the engine and fuel system may go into a compensating period for fuel performance. It will be required to drive moderately at a constant speed for about 10 minutes, without rapid acceleration when traffic allows. In this period, you may notice engine knocking.

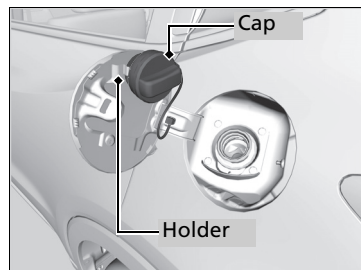
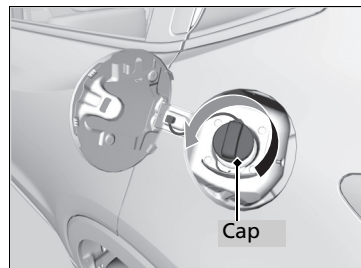
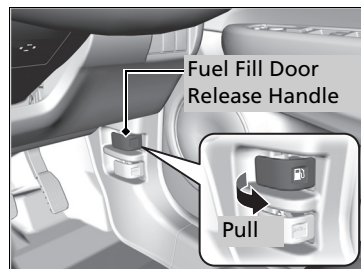
### Fuel Information

#### NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

## How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the dashboard at the driver's side.
  - The fuel fill door opens.
4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the filler nozzle fully.
  - When the tank is full, the fuel nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
  - Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

### How to Refuel

## ⚠ WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

## Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO<sub>2</sub> emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

### Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle according to the maintenance schedule in the Service Book that came with your vehicle.

On vehicles without Service Book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owners manual. If necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

#### 🔧 Maintenance Schedule P. 507

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.

#### 🔧 Recommended Engine Oil P. 513

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

### 🔧 Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Kilometres driven	÷	Litres of fuel	=	Kilometres per Litre		

#### Middle Eastern GCC country models

You can improve the mileage and reduce the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions of your vehicle by following these tips:

- Operate your vehicle correctly.
- Regularly maintain your vehicle.
- Maintain proper tyre pressure.
- Avoid carrying excessive loads.
- Adopt efficient driving techniques, such as driving at lower speeds, reducing idling time, and avoiding aggressive driving.



# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



## **Before Performing Maintenance**

Inspection and Maintenance .....	504
Safety When Performing Maintenance .....	505
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance	
Service .....	506

## **Maintenance Schedule .....**

Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without	
Service Book) .....	510

## **Maintenance Under the Bonnet**

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet .....	511
Opening the Bonnet .....	512
Recommended Engine Oil .....	513

Oil Check .....	516
Adding Engine Oil .....	518
Engine Coolant .....	519
Transmission Fluid .....	523
Brake/Clutch * Fluid .....	524
Refilling Window Washer Fluid .....	525
Fuel Filter .....	525
<b>Replacing Light Bulbs .....</b>	<b>526</b>
<b>Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades .....</b>	<b>539</b>
Checking Tyres .....	543
Wear Indicators .....	544

Tyre Service Life .....	544
Tyre and Wheel Replacement .....	545
Tyre Rotation .....	546
Snow Traction Devices .....	547

## **Battery .....**

### **Remote Transmitter Care**

Replacing the Button Battery .....	552
------------------------------------	-----

### **Heating\* and Cooling System\*/Climate Control System\* Maintenance .....**

#### **Cleaning**

Interior Care .....	557
Exterior Care .....	559

### **Accessories and Modifications .....**

\* Not available on all models

## Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 507

### Types of Inspection and Maintenance

#### ■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

#### ■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  - **Brake/Clutch\* Fluid** P. 524
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 543
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 526
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 539

## Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

### Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  - Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  - Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

### Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

#### Models with Auto Idle Stop system

- Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

#### ⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.



## Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

---

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

# Maintenance Schedule

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except Australian, New Zealand, and South African models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000 months	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
Replace engine oil* <sup>1</sup>	Normal	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	Severe* <sup>4</sup>	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace engine oil filter* <sup>1</sup>	Normal	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
	Severe* <sup>4</sup>	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
Add genuine injector cleaner agent* <sup>5</sup>	Direct injection models	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance	Except E85	Every 120,000 km* <sup>2</sup>									
	E85	Every 40,000 km									
Replace fuel filter* <sup>3</sup>					•				•		

\*1: Only severe schedule is required in some countries: refer to the local warranty booklet that came with your vehicle.

\*2: Sensory Method: Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

\*3: Refer to page 525 for replacement information under driving conditions.

\*4: Refer to page 509 for replacement information under severe conditions.

\*5: Macau models

Regular use of injector cleaner may be required, it will depend on the quality of the fuel used. Consult your dealer for details.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.		km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace spark plugs	Nickel type	Every 40,000 km										
	Iridium type	Every 100,000 km										
	Iridium type for E85	Every 60,000 km										
Inspect drive belts			•		•		•		•		•	
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years										
Replace transmission fluid	MT	Normal	Every 120,000 km or 6 years									
		Severe* <sup>1</sup>			•			•			•	
	CVT			•		•		•		•		•
Replace rear differential fluid*			•				•				•	
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km or 6 months										
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years										
Replace dust and pollen filter			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Check expiry date for Temporary Repair Kit bottle*		Every year										
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 10,000 km										
Visually inspect the following items:												
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots		Every 10,000 km or 6 months										
Suspension components												
Driveshaft boots												
Battery electrolyte level* <sup>2</sup>												
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Exhaust system												
Fuel lines and connections												

\*1: Refer to page 509 for replacement information under severe conditions.

\*2: GCC country models.

\* Not available on all models

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid	B and D

#### ⌘ Maintenance Schedule

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:

- A. Less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.
- B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
- C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
- D. Towing trailer, loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
- E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

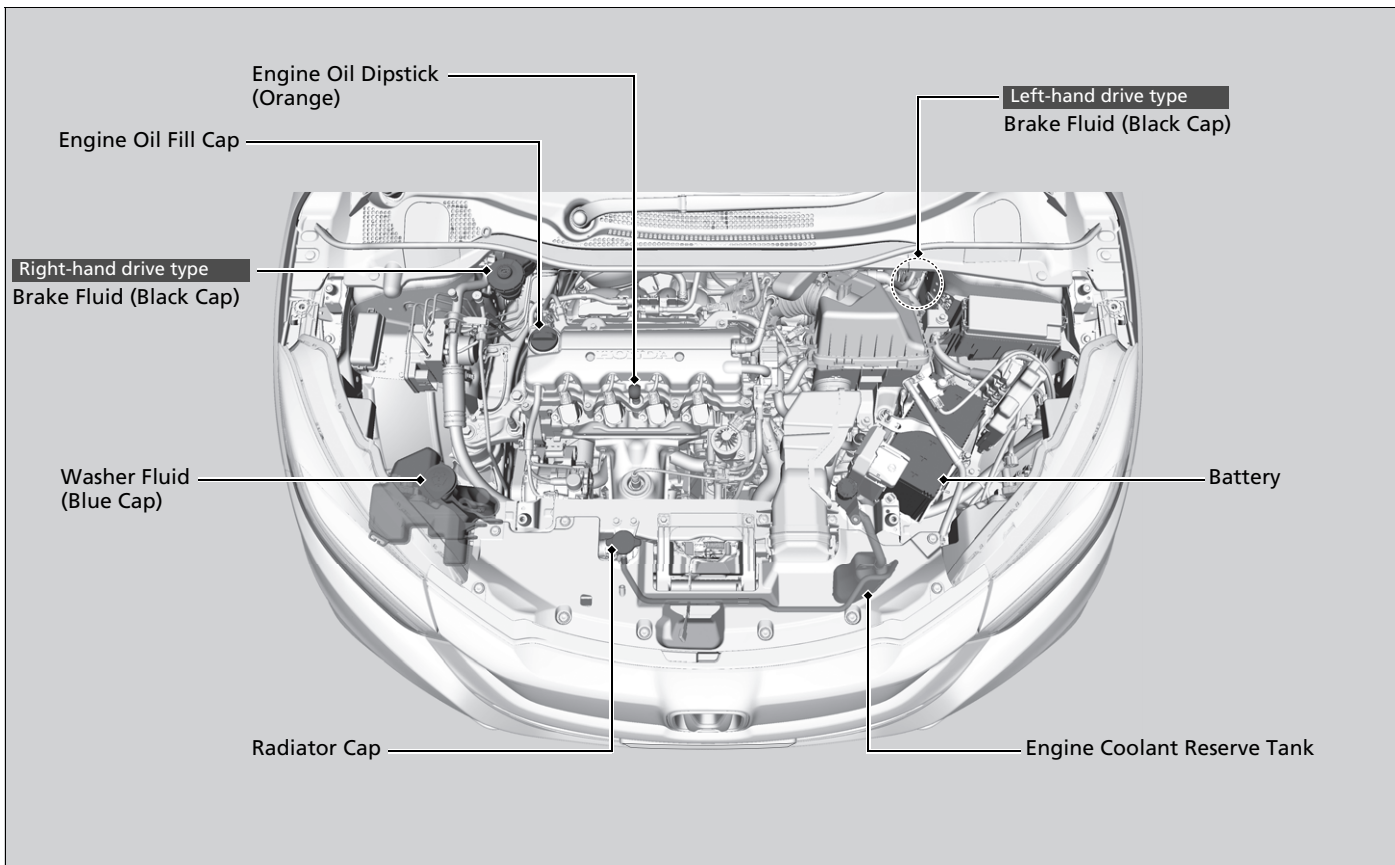
# Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

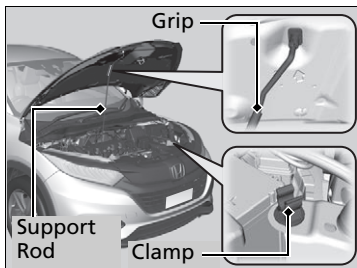
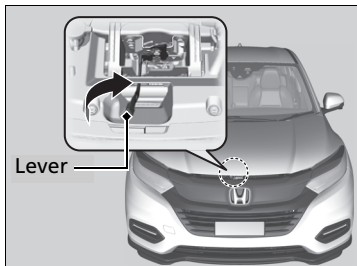
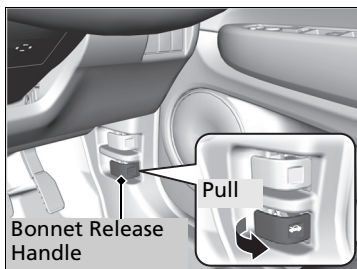
Except Australian, New Zealand, and South African models

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
	20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)		
	40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)		
	60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)		
	80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)		
	100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)		
	120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)		
	140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)		
	160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)		
	180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)		
	200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)		

## Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



## Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.  
► The bonnet will pop up slightly.
3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

### ►► Opening the Bonnet

#### NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

#### Models with Auto Idle Stop system

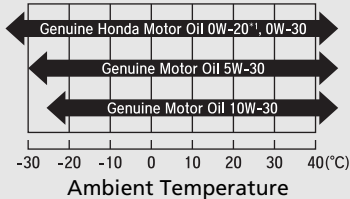
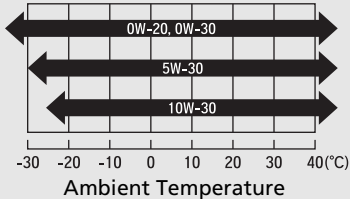
Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

# Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine’s performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

1.8 L engine models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Genuine Honda Motor Oil</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil</li><li>ACEA A5/B5</li></ul>
	

\*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Recommended Engine Oil

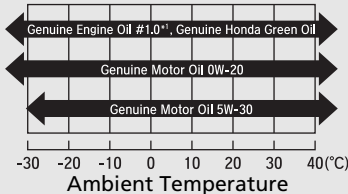
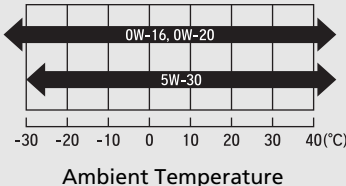
Engine Oil Additives

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.



1.5 L engine models

Singaporean, Hong Kong, Macau, and New Zealand models

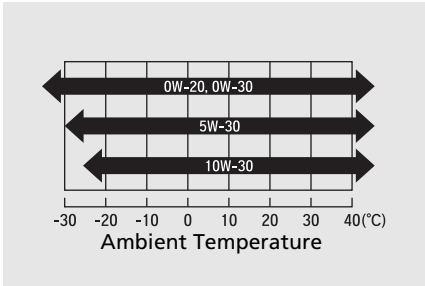
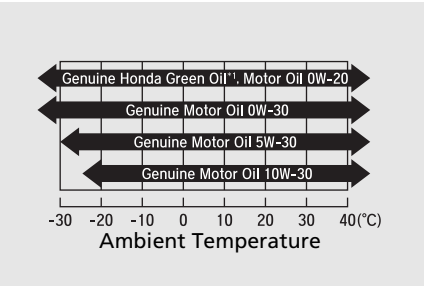
Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil																					
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Genuine Honda Engine Oil #1.0*1</li><li>Genuine Honda Green Oil</li><li>Genuine Honda Motor Oil</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil</li><li>ACEA A5/B5</li></ul>																					
 <p>A horizontal bar chart showing the temperature range for four types of Genuine Engine Oil. The x-axis is labeled 'Ambient Temperature' and ranges from -30 to 40 in increments of 10. The y-axis lists the oil types. The ranges are: Genuine Engine Oil #1.0*1 and Genuine Honda Green Oil (-30 to 40); Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 (-30 to 40); Genuine Motor Oil 5W-30 (-25 to 40).</p> <table><tr><th>Oil Type</th><th>Min Temp (°C)</th><th>Max Temp (°C)</th></tr><tr><td>Genuine Engine Oil #1.0*1, Genuine Honda Green Oil</td><td>-30</td><td>40</td></tr><tr><td>Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20</td><td>-30</td><td>40</td></tr><tr><td>Genuine Motor Oil 5W-30</td><td>-25</td><td>40</td></tr></table>	Oil Type	Min Temp (°C)	Max Temp (°C)	Genuine Engine Oil #1.0*1, Genuine Honda Green Oil	-30	40	Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20	-30	40	Genuine Motor Oil 5W-30	-25	40	 <p>A horizontal bar chart showing the temperature range for two types of Commercial Engine Oil. The x-axis is labeled 'Ambient Temperature' and ranges from -30 to 40 in increments of 10. The y-axis lists the oil types. The ranges are: 0W-16, 0W-20 (-30 to 40); 5W-30 (-25 to 40).</p> <table><tr><th>Oil Type</th><th>Min Temp (°C)</th><th>Max Temp (°C)</th></tr><tr><td>0W-16, 0W-20</td><td>-30</td><td>40</td></tr><tr><td>5W-30</td><td>-25</td><td>40</td></tr></table>	Oil Type	Min Temp (°C)	Max Temp (°C)	0W-16, 0W-20	-30	40	5W-30	-25	40
Oil Type	Min Temp (°C)	Max Temp (°C)																				
Genuine Engine Oil #1.0*1, Genuine Honda Green Oil	-30	40																				
Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20	-30	40																				
Genuine Motor Oil 5W-30	-25	40																				
Oil Type	Min Temp (°C)	Max Temp (°C)																				
0W-16, 0W-20	-30	40																				
5W-30	-25	40																				

\*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

1.5 L engine models

Except Singaporean, Hong Kong, Macau, and New Zealand models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Genuine Honda Green Oil*1</li><li>Genuine Honda Motor Oil</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil</li><li>ACEA A5/B5</li></ul>



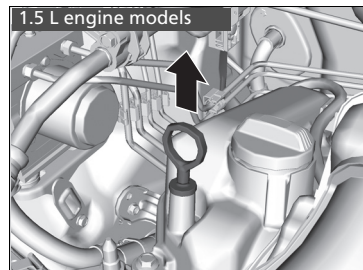
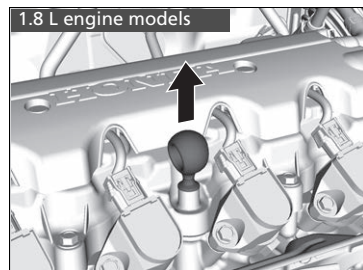
\*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

## Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

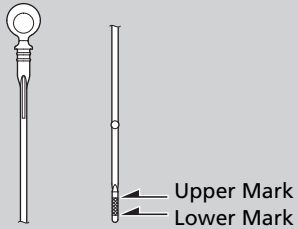
### Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

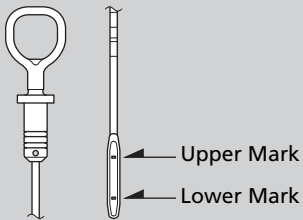
The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km.

Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.

1.8 L engine models

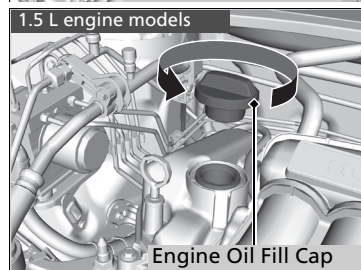
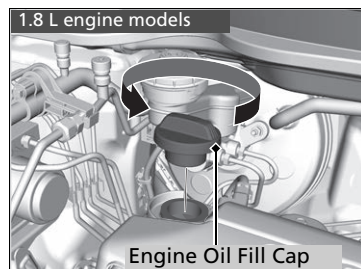


1.5 L engine models



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

## Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

### ►► Adding Engine Oil

#### NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

## Engine Coolant

### Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

### Engine Coolant

#### **WARNING**

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

**Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.**

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

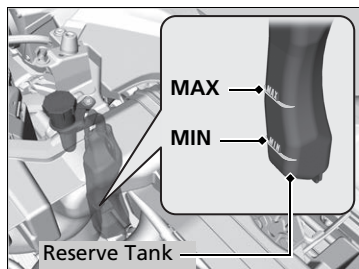
If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

*Continued*

## ■ Reserve Tank

### Models without Auto Idle Stop system



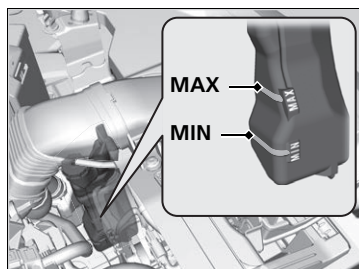
1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.

2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.

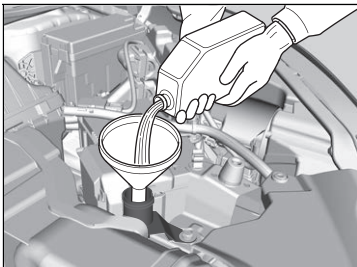
► If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

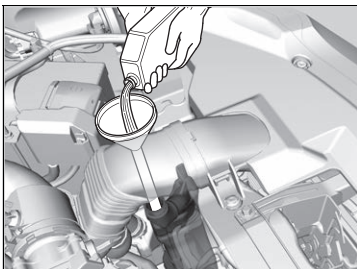
### Models with Auto Idle Stop system



Models without Auto Idle Stop system

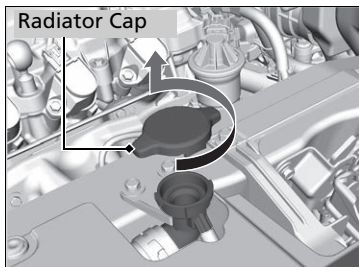


Models with Auto Idle Stop system





## Radiator



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anti-clockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anti-clockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

### » Radiator

#### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

## Transmission Fluid

### Continuously variable transmission models

#### Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

##### Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2 Transmission Fluid

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.  
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission fluid.

🔧 **Maintenance Schedule** P. 507

### Manual transmission models

#### Manual Transmission Fluid

##### Specified fluid: Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF)

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.  
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change manual transmission fluid.

🔧 **Maintenance Schedule** P. 507

#### Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

##### NOTICE

**Do not mix Honda HCF-2 transmission fluid with other transmission fluids.**

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 transmission fluid may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 transmission fluid is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

#### Manual Transmission Fluid

If Honda MTF is not available, you may use the API certificated SAE 0W-20 or 5W-20 viscosity motor oil as a temporary measure.

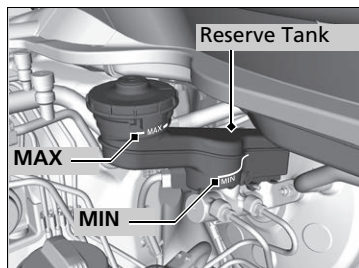
Replace with MTF as soon as possible. Motor oil does not contain the proper additives for the transmission and continued use can cause decreased shifting performance and lead to transmission damage.

## Brake/Clutch \* Fluid

**Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4**

Use the same fluid for both the brakes and clutch.

### Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

#### Manual transmission models

The brake fluid reserve tank is also used for your vehicle's clutch fluid. As long as you keep the brake fluid level as instructed above, there is no need for checking the clutch fluid level.

#### ►► Brake/Clutch \* Fluid

##### NOTICE

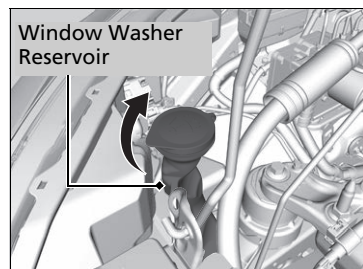
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

## Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.



If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

## Fuel Filter

Replace the fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

### Except Australian, New Zealand, and South African models

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 40,000 km, or two years, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

### Australian, New Zealand, and South African models

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 45,000 km, or three years, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

### All models

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

### ❏ Refilling Window Washer Fluid

#### NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

## Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

### Models with halogen headlights

**High beam headlight:** 60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)

**Low beam headlight:** 55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)

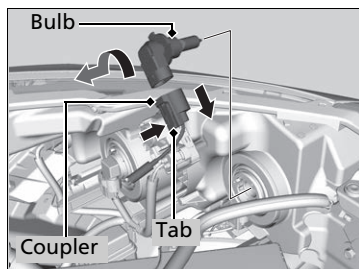
### Models with LED headlights

**High beam headlight:** LED type

**Low beam headlight:** LED type

## High Beam Headlights

### Models with halogen headlights



1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

### Headlight Bulbs

#### Models with halogen headlights

##### NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

#### All models

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

#### Models with halogen headlights

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

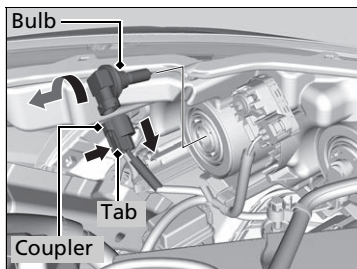
### High Beam Headlights

#### Models with LED headlights

High beam headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Low Beam Headlights

### Models with halogen headlights



1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

### Low Beam Headlights

#### Models with LED headlights

Low beam headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

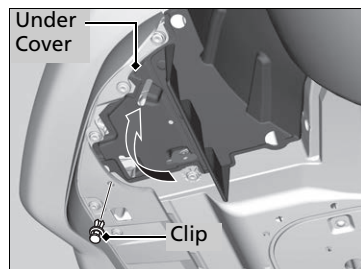
## Front Fog Light Bulbs\*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Front Fog Light: 35 W (H8 for halogen bulb type)\***

**Front Fog Light: LED type\***

**Models with halogen front fog lights**



1. Remove the clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, and push up the under cover.

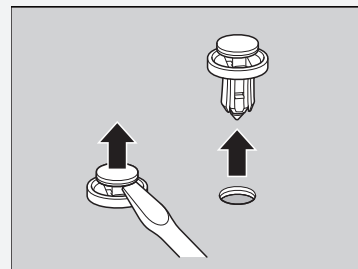
### ►► Front Fog Light Bulbs\*

**Models with LED front fog lights**

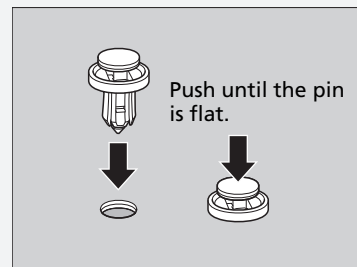
Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

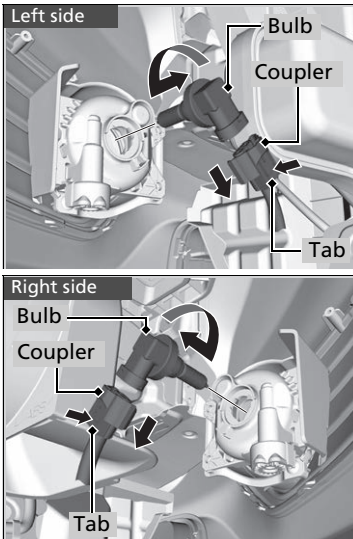
**Models with halogen front fog lights**

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the centre pin to remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the centre pin raised, and push until it is flat.





2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb to the left on left side and to the right on right side to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it to the right on left side and to the left on right side.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

#### ► Front Fog Light Bulbs\*

##### Models with halogen front fog lights

##### NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

\* Not available on all models



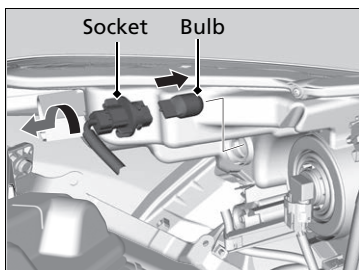
## Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Front Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)\***

**Front Turn Signal Light: LED type\***

### Models with halogen headlights



1. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
2. Pull the bulb straight out of its holder.
3. Insert a new bulb.

### ►► Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

#### Models with LED headlights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Position Lights\*

---

Position lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Position/Daytime Running Lights\*

---

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

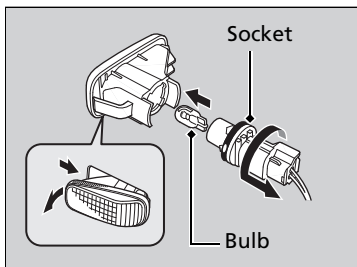
\* Not available on all models

## Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Light Bulbs

### Fender type

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

#### Side Turn Signal Light: 5 W (Amber)



1. Push the front of the side turn signal assembly towards the rear of the vehicle until it pops out of the body.
2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

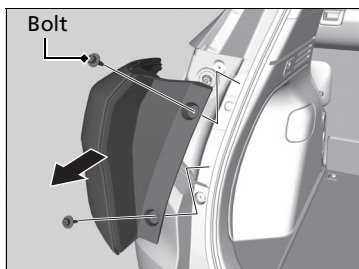
### Door mirror type

Door mirror side turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

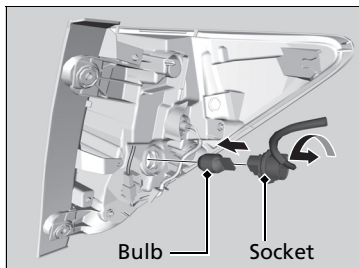
## Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)**



1. Use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the bolts.
2. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



3. Turn the socket to the left and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
4. Insert a new bulb.
5. Slide the light assembly onto the guide on the body.

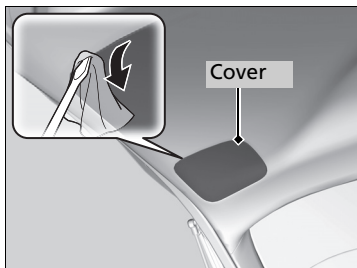
## Brake Lights\*, Taillights\* and Brake/Taillights\*

Brake lights, taillights and brake/taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

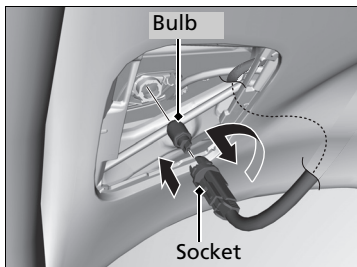
## Taillights\* and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Taillight\*: LED**  
**Back-Up Light: 16 W**



1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver.
  - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

### ⌘ Taillights\* and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## High-Mount Brake Light

---

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Rear Licence Plate Lights

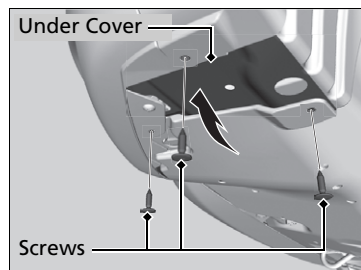
---

Rear licence plate lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

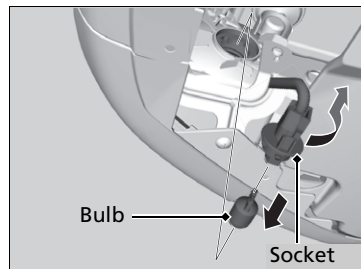
## Rear Fog Light Bulb \*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Rear Fog Light: 21 W**



1. Remove the screws using a Phillips-head screwdriver, then push up the under cover.



2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.

3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

## Other Light Bulbs

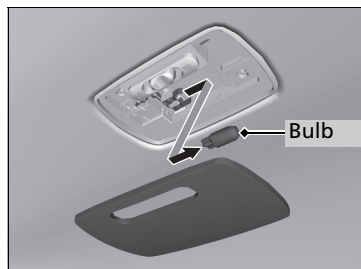
### ■ Ceiling Light Bulb\*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Ceiling Light: 8 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



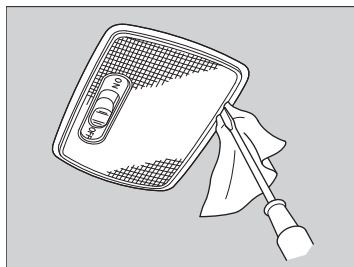
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

\* Not available on all models

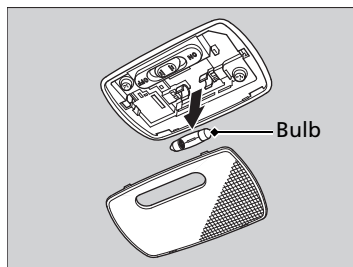
### ■ Malaysian models

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Ceiling Light: 8 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

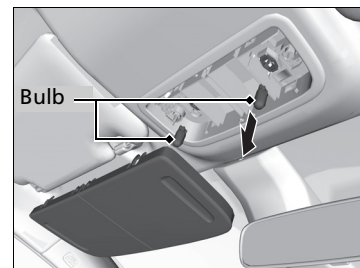
### ■ Map Light Bulbs\*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Map Light: 8 W**



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge between the lenses using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the lens.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



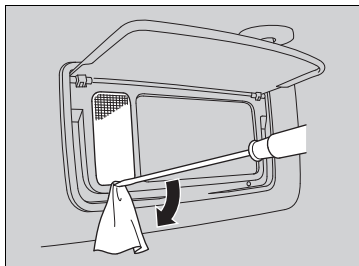
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.



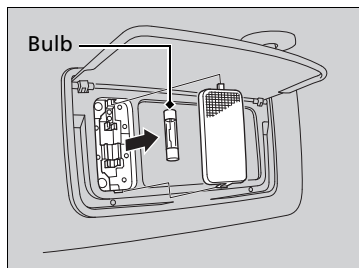
### ■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs\*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Vanity Mirror Light: 2 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

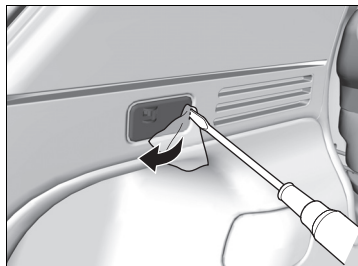


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

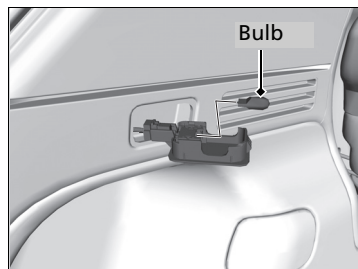
### ■ Luggage Area Light Bulb\*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Luggage Area Light: 5 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the light using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the light assembly.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

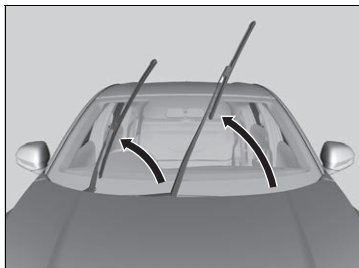


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

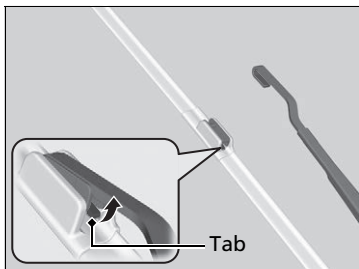
## Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

## Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

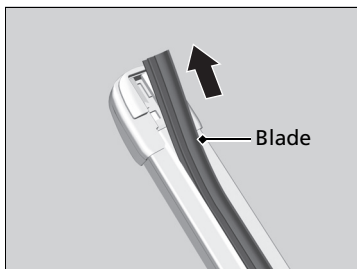


2. Press and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

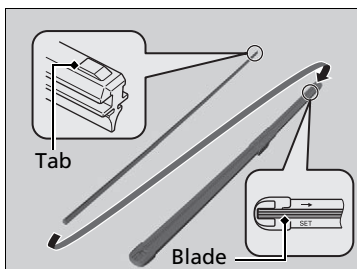
### Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

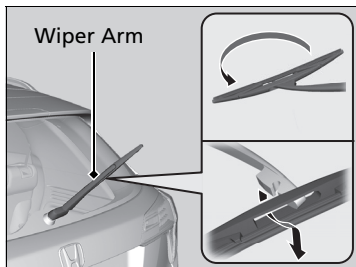


3. Slide the wiper blade out of the holder by pulling the tabbed end out.

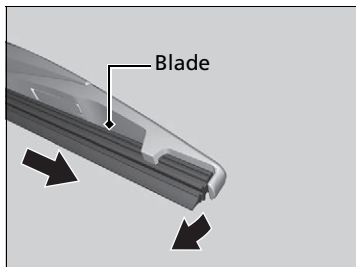


4. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.  
► The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.
5. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm securely.
6. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

## Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.



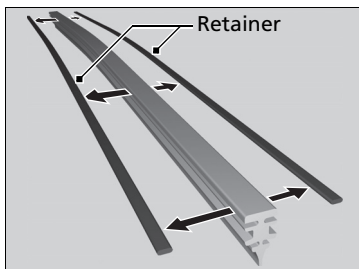
3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.

### Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

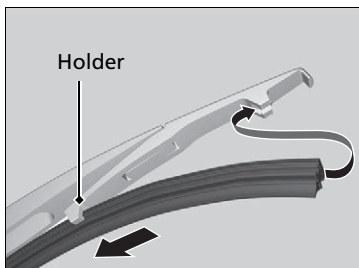
#### NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window.

*Continued*



4. Remove the retainers from the wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.



5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.  
► Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

## Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare\*. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1-0.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1-2 psi) per month.

### ■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems. Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

➤ **Wear Indicators** P. 544

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

\* Not available on all models

### ☒ Checking Tyres

## ⚠ WARNING

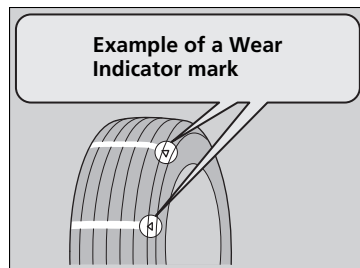
Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30-40 kPa (0.3-0.4 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 4-6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

## Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre.

**Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

## Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare\*, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

### » Checking Tyres

#### Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

➤ **Deflation Warning System Calibration**  
P. 470

#### Models with TPMS

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS.

➤ **TPMS Calibration** P. 473

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

## Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

### ⚠ Tyre and Wheel Replacement

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

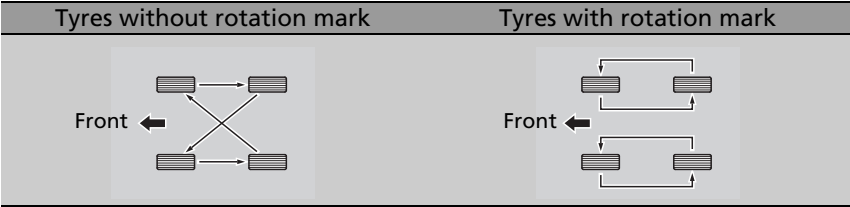


# Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

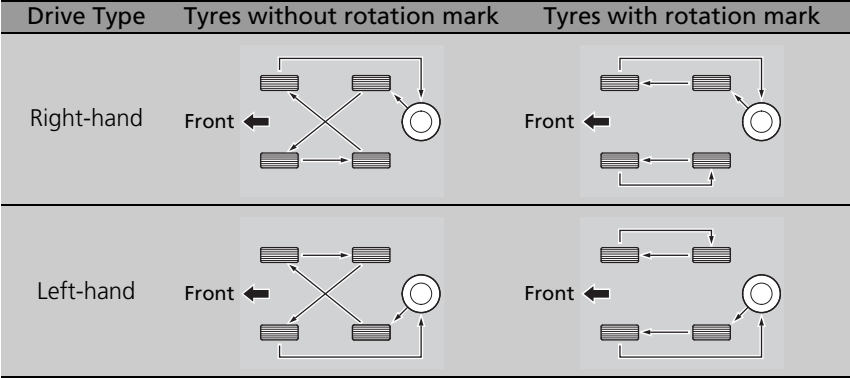
## Your Vehicle's Tyre Rotation Pattern

Rotate the tyres as shown here.



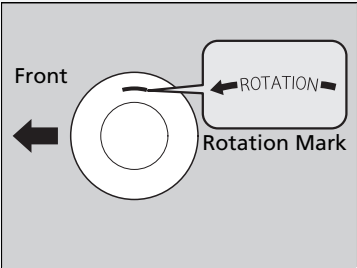
### Models with a full-size spare tyre

Rotate the tyres, including a spare, as shown here.



### Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

### Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

► **Deflation Warning System Calibration**  
P. 470

### Models with TPMS

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the TPMS.

► **TPMS Calibration** P. 473

## Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

### ❧ Snow Traction Devices

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

#### **NOTICE**

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

*Continued*

For tyre chains:

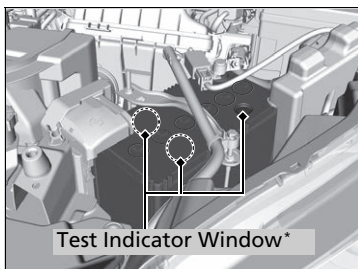
- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
<b>215/60R16</b>	<b>RUD-matic classic 48492</b>
<b>215/55R17</b>	<b>RUD-matic classic 48493</b>
<b>225/50R18</b>	<b>(Not available)</b>

\*1 : Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

## Checking the Battery



### On the battery without test indicator

Check the battery condition monthly and check the terminals for corrosion. Check the battery condition by looking at the fluid level. The upper and lower level marks are shown on the battery case. If the fluid level is below the lower mark, contact a dealer.

### Models with multi-information display

The battery condition is monitored by the sensor on the negative terminal. If there is a problem with the sensor, the warning message on the multi-information display will let you know. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

### All models

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.
  - **Clock** P. 156

### On the battery with test indicator

Check the battery condition monthly. Look at the test indicator window and check the terminals for corrosion.

### Battery

## ⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

## ⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

**KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN**

## Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative ⊖ cable first, and reconnect it last.

### » Battery

#### Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Consult a dealer for more information.

#### Models with test indicator window on the battery

The test indicator's colour information is on the battery.

The location of the test indicator window may vary depending on the model.

#### Models with Auto Idle Stop system

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop.

Using a battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

## Battery Label



### ▶▶ Battery Label

#### **DANGER**

- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

## Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

### Replacing the Button Battery

#### **⚠ WARNING**

##### **CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD**

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

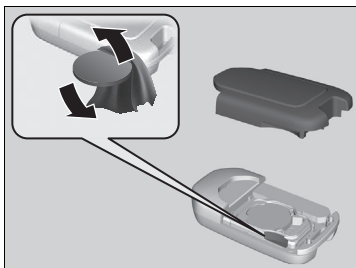
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

##### **NOTICE**

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

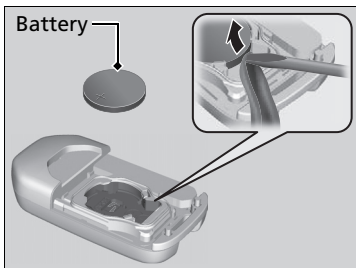
Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

### ■ Retractable Key\*



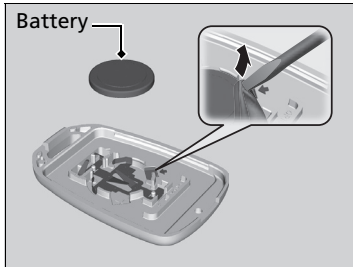
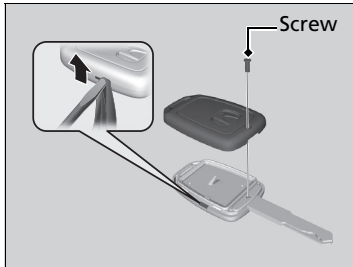
#### **Battery type: CR2032**

1. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.  
▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the retractable key.



2. Remove the button battery with the small flat-tip screwdriver.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

## ■ Ignition Keys with Remote Transmitter\*



### Battery type: CR1620

1. Unscrew the cover with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.
2. Open the remote transmitter.
  - Wrap the small flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the transmitter.
3. Remove the button battery with the small flat-tip screwdriver.
4. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

\* Not available on all models

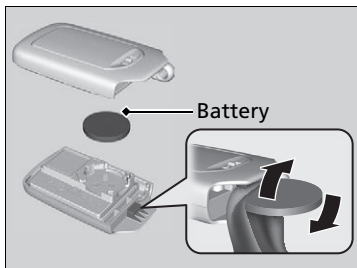


## ■ Keyless Remote \*



**Battery type: CR2032**

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.

► Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.

► Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

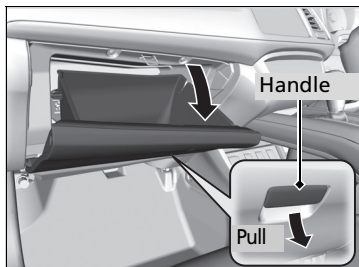
## Dust and Pollen Filter

### ■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

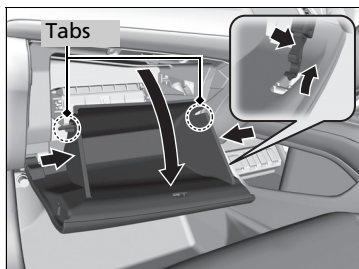
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 507

### ■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.



2. Push the stop on the driver's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.
3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
4. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

### ❏ Dust and Pollen Filter

Using an air freshener may reduce the deodorizing effect of the dust and pollen filter, and may reduce its life.

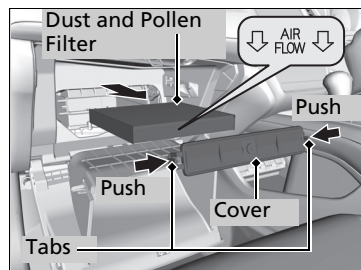
If the airflow from the heating\* and cooling system\*/climate control system\* deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

#### Except New Zealand models with 1.5 L engine

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

#### New Zealand models with 1.5 L engine

The allerfree high retention deodorization filter collects pollen and dust, has allergen treatment ability and reduces an odour of exhaust gas in the air.



5. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.
6. Remove the filter from the case.
7. Install a new filter in the case.
  - Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

#### » Dust and Pollen Filter

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

## Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

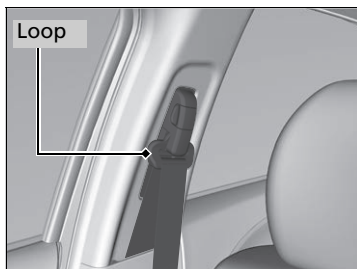
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



### Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles. Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

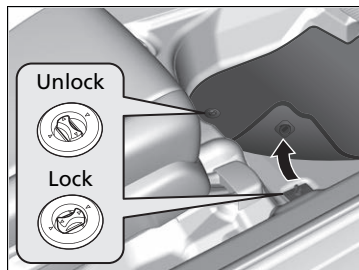
## ■ Cleaning the Windows

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

### ■ Super UV Cut/IR Cut Glass\*

The front side windows are laminated with UV- and/or IR-cut film. When cleaning the interior side of the windows, make sure to use a soft damp cloth.

## ■ Floor Mats\*



The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchors, which keep it from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

**Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.**

## ■ Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

## ► Cleaning the Windows

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

### Models with Super UV Cut/IR Cut Glass

To ensure the longevity of the UV- and/or IR-cut film, avoid:

- Opening and closing the windows when they are covered with dirt and other debris.
- Using a glass cleaner containing polishing compounds, wax, or detergents.

## ► Floor Mats\*

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

## ► Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

## Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

### ■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

### ■ Using an Automated Car Wash

- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- Turn off the automatic intermittent wipers\*.

### ■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

### ■ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



\* Not available on all models

## ■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

## ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

### ■ Water repellent glass\*

The front side windows are fitted with water repellent agent glasses that disperse water into droplets. To clean the front side windows, wash off with water, or wipe with a soft damp cloth.

Using a glass cleaner may temporarily prevent the water repellent glasses from dispersing water. Rinsing the glasses with water can make them water repellent again. If you find that the glass has stopped dispersing water, consult a dealer.

## » Applying Wax

### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

## » Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

## » Cleaning the Window

### Models with water repellent glass

To make the water-repellent effect last longer, do the following:

- Avoid opening and closing the front side windows when the windows are covered with dirt.
- Avoid using a glass cleaner with polishing compounds, wax, or detergent.
- Avoid scraping off frosts on the windows using a metallic tool.
- Dirt off the windows before using an automated car wash.

## ■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels\*

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

## ■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## ■ Hydrophilic Mirror\*

Your vehicle's door mirror surface is coated with hydrophilic film. Follow the next steps when the mirrors become less hydrophilic.

1. Rinse the door mirrors with water and remove dirt.
2. Wipe the mirrors with a clean damp cloth.
  - ▶ If you cannot remove dirt, use the genuine window cleaner, or neutral household detergent, and rinse with enough water.
3. Expose the mirrors to the sun for five to nine hours.

\* Not available on all models

### ▶▶ Hydrophilic Mirror\*

#### NOTICE

To keep the hydrophilicity of the mirrors,

- Do not apply wax or water repellent agent on the mirror surface.
- Do not wipe the mirrors with a gritty cloth or abrasive cleanser.



## Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  - ❏ **Fuses** P. 600
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

### » Accessories and Modifications

## **WARNING**

**Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.**

**Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.**

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

## Modifications

---

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.



# Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

## Tools

Types of Tools..... 566

## If a Tyre Goes Flat

Changing a Flat Tyre\* ..... 568

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre\* .... 575

## Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine ..... 586

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak..... 587

Emergency Engine Stop ..... 588

**Jump Starting**..... 589

**Shift Lever Does Not Move** ..... 592

## Overheating

How to Handle Overheating..... 593

## Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes

On ..... 595

If the Charging System Indicator Comes

On ..... 595

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes

On or Blinks ..... 596

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes

On ..... 596

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System

Indicator Comes On ..... 597

If the Electric Parking Brake System

Indicator Comes On ..... 598

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning

System (TPMS) Indicator\* Comes On or

Blinks..... 599

## Fuses

Fuse Locations ..... 600

Inspecting and Changing Fuses..... 607

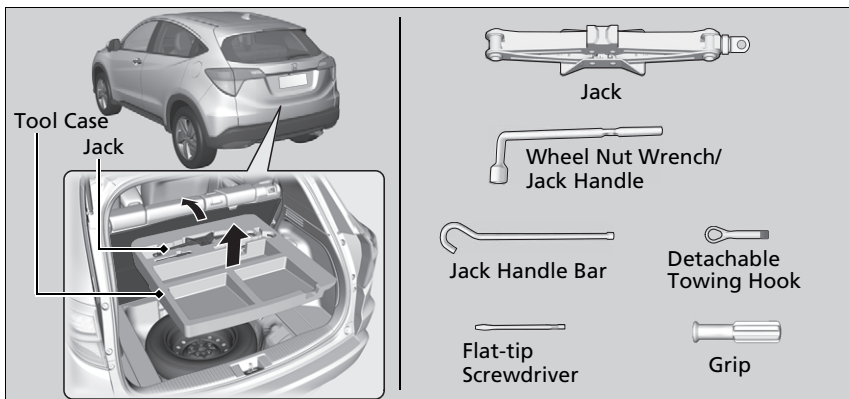
**Emergency Towing**..... 608

**When You Cannot Open the Tailgate**..... 611

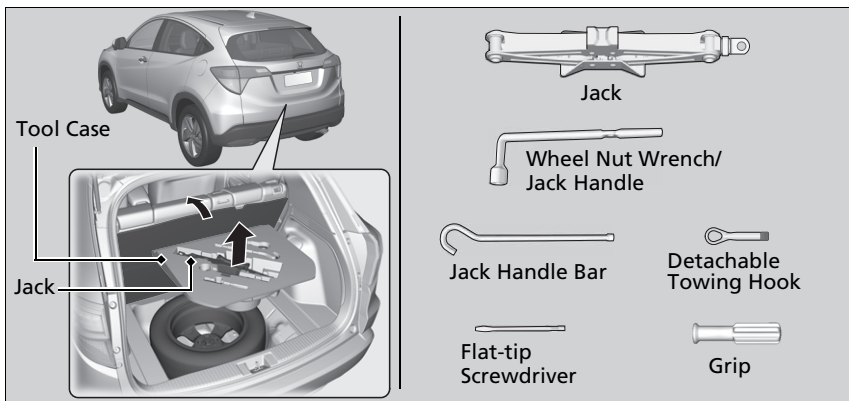
\* Not available on all models

## Types of Tools

### Models with a compact spare tyre



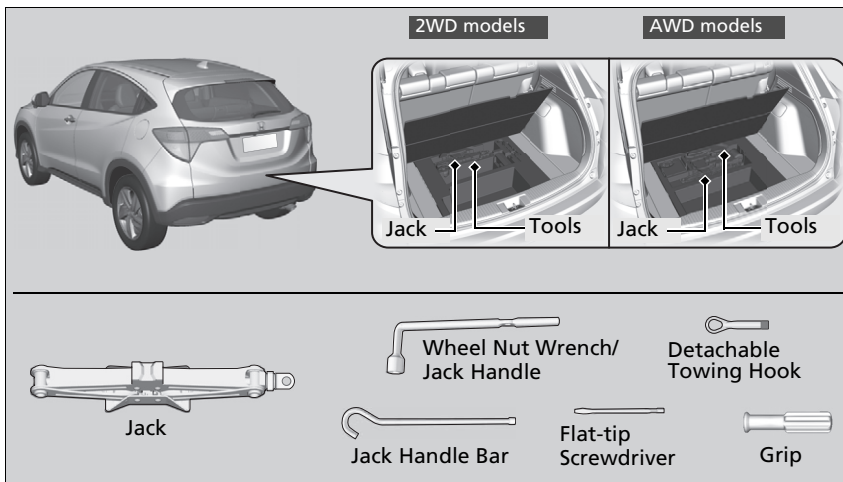
### Models with a full-size spare tyre



### Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

Models with tyre repair kit



# If a Tyre Goes Flat

## Changing a Flat Tyre\*

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre\*/full-size spare tyre\*. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.

### Continuously variable transmission models

2. Move the shift lever to **P**.

### Manual transmission models

2. Move the shift lever to **R**.

### All models

3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*<sup>1</sup>.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### Changing a Flat Tyre\*

Follow compact spare\* precautions:

Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.

Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

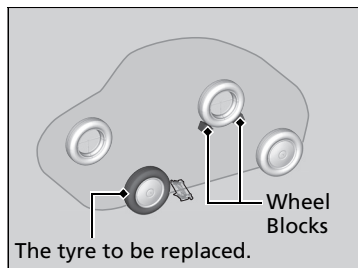
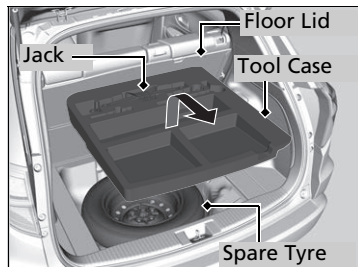
Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the full-size tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.

The compact spare tyre is smaller than the full-size tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

## ■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



1. Open the luggage area floor lid.
2. Take the tool case out of the luggage area.
3. Take the wheel nut wrench, jack handle bar and jack out of the tool case.
4. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.
5. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

## ✕ Changing a Flat Tyre \*

**WARNING:** The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

The shape of the tool case varies by model.

### NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.



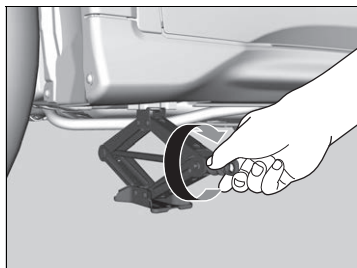
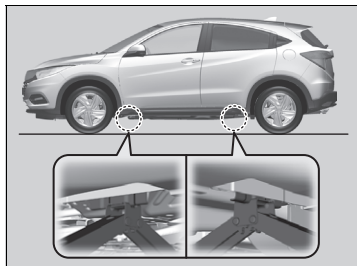


- 6.** Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



- 7.** Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

## How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

► Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

## How to Set Up the Jack

### ⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

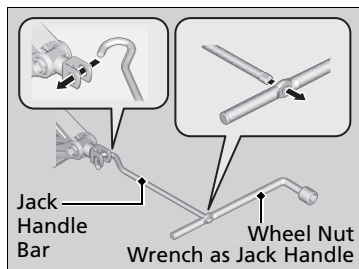
**WARNING:** The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

#### For some countries

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.

1.	2.	3.

1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

#### ► How to Set Up the Jack

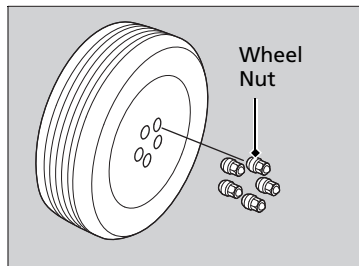
Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

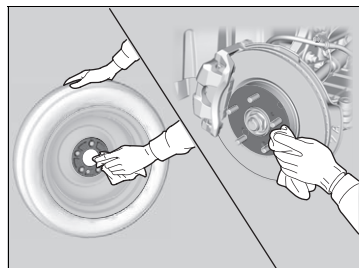
The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

## Replacing the Flat Tyre



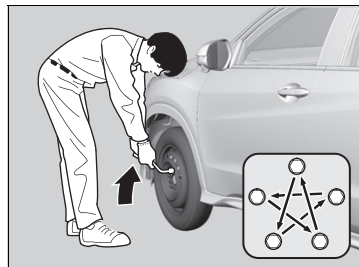
1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.

3. Mount the spare tyre.

4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, and stop rotating.



5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

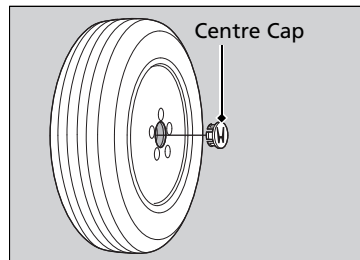
### Wheel nut torque:

108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

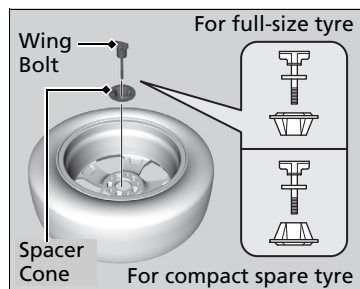
## Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

## ■ Storing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the centre cap.




### Models with a compact spare tyre

2. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt.

### All models

3. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.
4. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.
5. Securely put the jack and wheel nut wrench back in the tool case.
6. Store the case in the luggage area.

## ■ Deflation Warning System\*/TPMS\* and the Spare Tyre

If you replace a flat tyre with the compact spare tyre,  indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometres, the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on, but this is normal.

Calibrate the deflation warning system/TPMS when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

► **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 470

► **TPMS Calibration** P. 473

\* Not available on all models

## ►► Storing the Flat Tyre

### ⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

## Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre \*

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

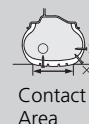
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, and non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Move the shift lever to **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

### Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre\*

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm.
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



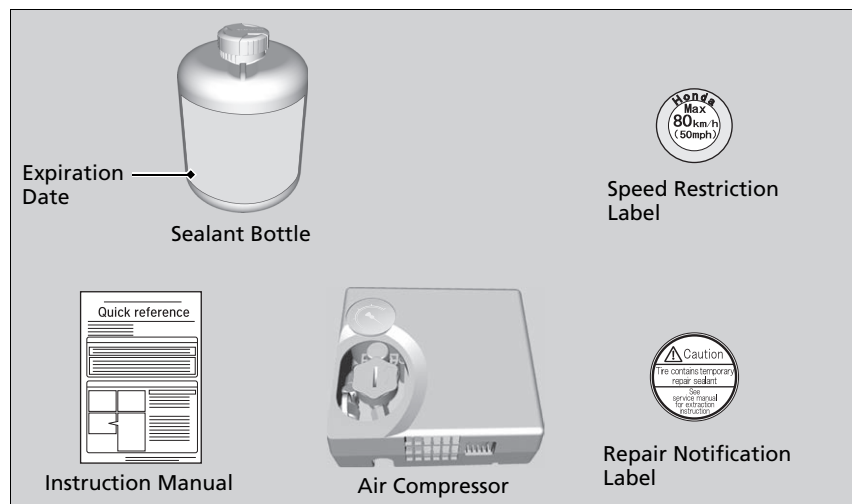
When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 4 mm	Yes
Larger than 4 mm	No

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

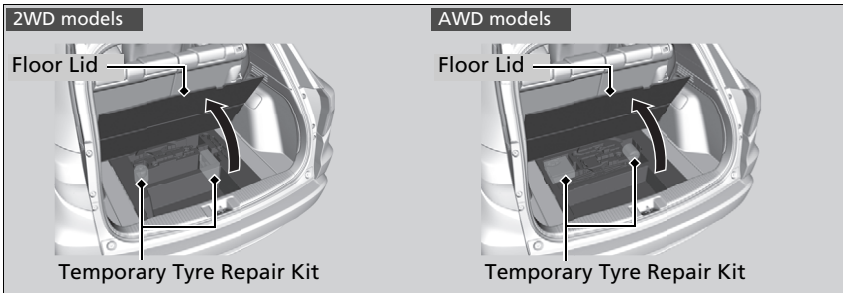
\* Not available on all models

## ■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre



## ►► Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

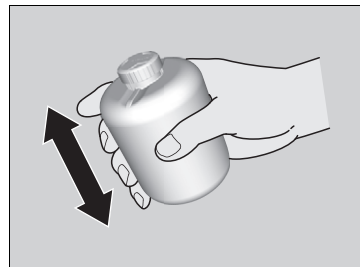
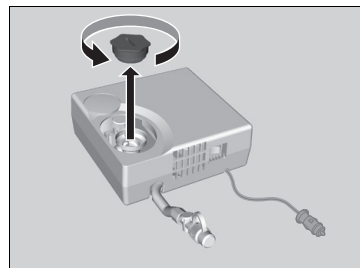
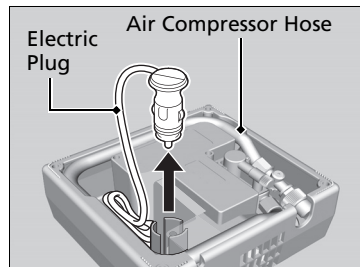
When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.



1. Open the luggage area floor lid.
2. Take the kit out of the case.
3. Place the kit face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.



## ■ Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Remove the air compressor hose and the electric plug.

2. Remove the air compressor cap.

3. Shake the bottle well.

## ►► Injecting Sealant and Air

### ⚠ WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

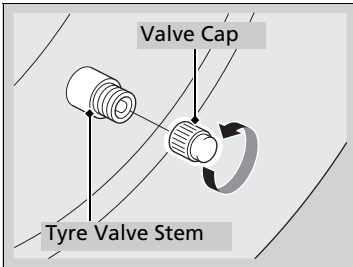
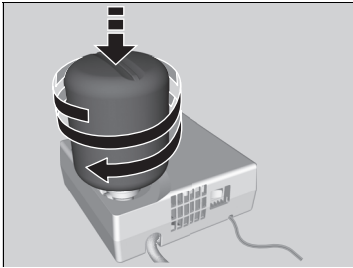
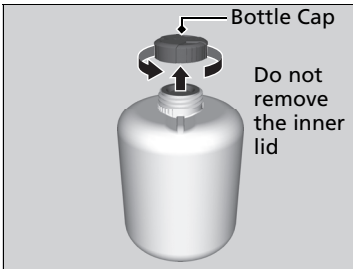
If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

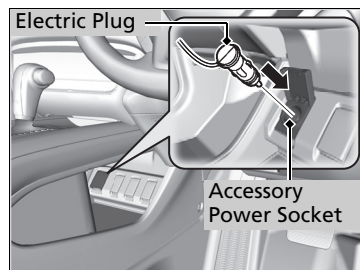
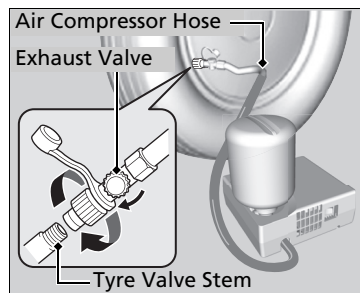
Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children. Do not shake the bottle after the filler tube is installed. If you shake the bottle after connecting the tube with the bottle, it may spill sealant.

In low temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.

The sealant can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe away any spills immediately.



4. Remove the bottle cap from the bottle adapter.
  - Do not remove the inner lid.
5. Screw the bottle into the compressor.
  - Screw the bottle into the compressor until it is tight.
6. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.



7. Screw the air compressor hose onto the tyre valve stem.

- Make sure the exhaust valve is closed.
- Make sure the switch is turned off.

8. Insert the electric plug into the accessory power socket.

- Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

➤ **Accessory Power Socket(s)** P. 240

9. Turn the power system on.

➤ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 92

#### ►► Injecting Sealant and Air

### ⚠ WARNING

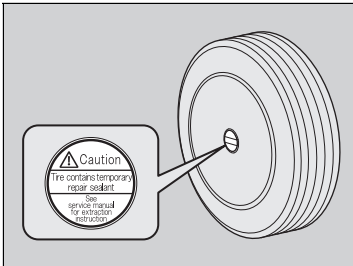
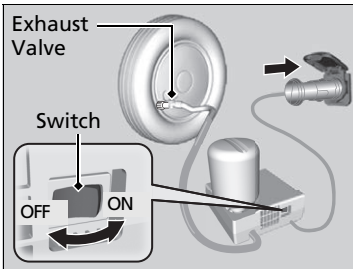
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Do not remove the empty bottle from the air compressor after the sealant is injected.

Bring the used bottle to a Honda dealer without removing it from the air compressor.

Make sure the air compressor is turned off when attaching the air compressor hose.



**10.** Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre.

- The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
- When the sealant injection is complete, continue to add air.

**11.** Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.

Front: 210 kPa (30 psi)/Rear: 200 kPa (29 psi)

**12.** Turn off the air compressor.

- Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
- If overinflated, adjust the exhaust valve to slowly remove air from the tyre. When removing air, be careful not to let the injected sealant spill out.

**13.** Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.

**14.** Remove the air compressor hose.

- Be careful not to let the sealant spill out. Wipe away any spills immediately using a cloth.

**15.** Store the temporary tyre repair kit in the tailgate.

- Do not remove the bottle from the air compressor.

**16.** Apply the repair notification label to the flat surface of the wheel.

- The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

#### ► Injecting Sealant and Air

##### NOTICE

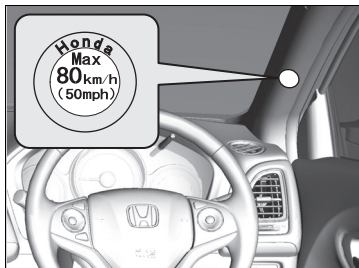
Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tyre is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory socket.

## ■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



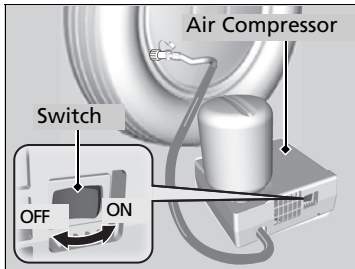
1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
  - Do not exceed 80 km/h.
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.
4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
  - Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

## ►► Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

### ⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.



5. If the air pressure is

- Less than 130 kPa (19 psi): Do not add air and continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

► **Emergency Towing** P. 608

- Front: 210 kPa (30 psi)/rear: 200 kPa (29 psi) or more:  
Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
- Greater than 130 kPa (19 psi), but less than required air pressure: Inflate the tyre to the required air pressure.

► **Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre**

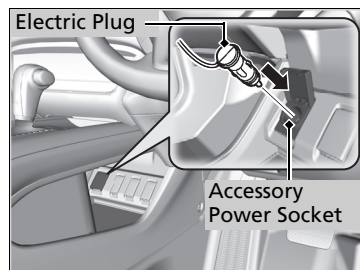
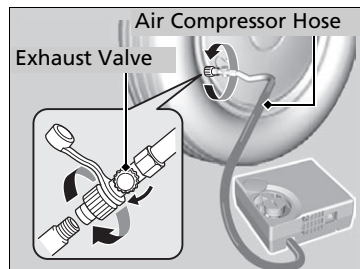
P. 584

And repeat steps 2 to 4 until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.

6. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

## ■ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



1. Open the luggage area floor lid.
2. Take the kit out of the case.
3. Place the kit face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
4. Remove the valve cap.
5. Screw the air compressor hose onto the tyre valve stem.
  - Make sure the exhaust valve is closed.
6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
  - Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
7. Turn the power system on.
  - **Accessory Power Socket(s)** P. 240
  - **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 92

## ► Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

### ⚠ WARNING

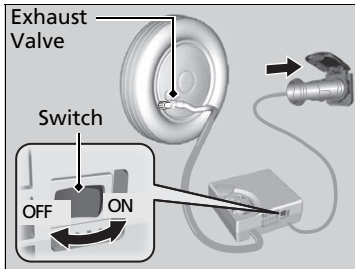
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

### NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory socket.



8. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
  - The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
  - Keep the power system on while injecting air.
9. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.  
Front: 210 kPa (30 psi)/Rear: 200 kPa (29 psi)
10. Turn off the air compressor.
  - Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
  - If overinflated, adjust the exhaust valve to slowly remove air from the tyre.  
When removing air, be careful not to let the injected sealant spill out.
11. Turn the power system off.
12. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.
13. Remove the air compressor hose from the valve.
14. Reinstall the valve cap.
15. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

#### ►► Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

Make sure to turn the air compressor off when checking the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.



# Engine Does Not Start

## Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

⌕ Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

➤ **Jump Starting** P. 589

Starter condition	Checklist
<b>Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly.</b> The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	<div>Models with keyless access system</div> <div><b>Check for a message on the multi-information display*.</b><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>If the <b>To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button</b> message appears<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ <b>If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 587</li></ul></li><li>▶ Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ <b>ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range</b> P. 195</li></ul></li></ul></div> <div><b>Check the brightness of the interior lights.</b> Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all ➤ <b>Battery</b> P. 549</li><li>If the interior lights come on normally ➤ <b>Fuses</b> P. 600</li></ul></div> <div><b>The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start.</b> There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.</div>
	<div><b>Review the engine start procedure.</b> Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 435, 438</li></ul></div> <div><b>Check the immobilizer system indicator.</b> When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ <b>Immobilizer System</b> P. 186</li></ul></div> <div><b>Check the fuel level.</b> There should be enough fuel in the tank.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ <b>Fuel Gauge</b> P. 138, 142</li></ul></div> <div><b>Check the fuse.</b> Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ <b>Inspecting and Changing Fuses</b> P. 607</li></ul></div> <div><b>If the problem continues:</b><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ <b>Emergency Towing</b> P. 608</li></ul></div>

Models with keyless access system

## If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

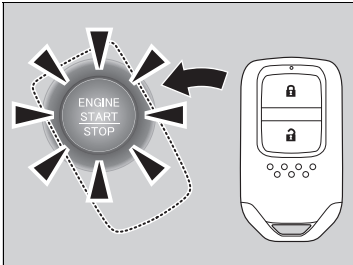
If the beeper sounds, the indicator on the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start.

Models with multi-information display

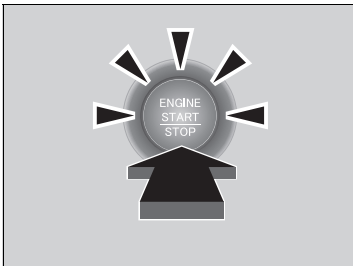
The **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the multi-information display.

All models

Start the engine as follows:



1. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.  
 ► The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.  
 ► If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to **ACCESSORY**.

Models with keyless access system

## Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.

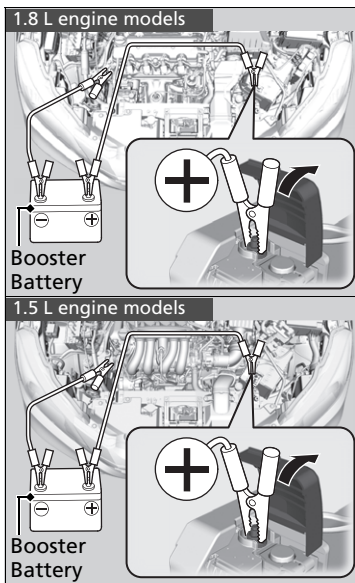
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, move the shift lever to **P** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

### Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.

## Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



1. Open the fuse box cover on the positive  $\oplus$  terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
  - Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
  - Connect when using the automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.

## Jump Starting

### ⚠ WARNING

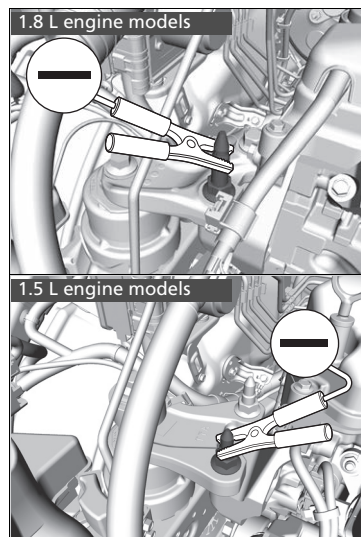
A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

### NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If the jumper cable is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase engine's revolution slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

#### ►► Jump Starting

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

## ■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's stud bolt.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.

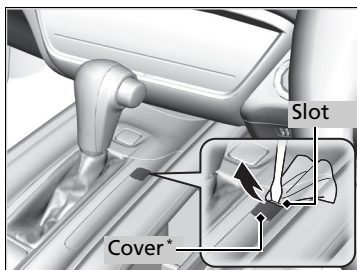
Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

# Shift Lever Does Not Move

## Continuously variable transmission models

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

## Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.

### Models without keyless access system

2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

### Models with keyless access system

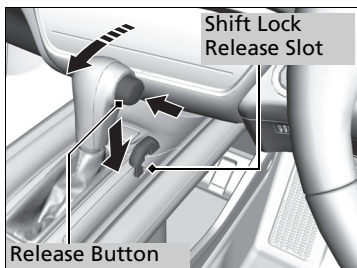
2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.

### Models with shift lock release slot cover

3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.

### All models

4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into **N**.
  - The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.



## How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The high temperature indicator (red) comes on or the engine suddenly loses power.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

### ■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
  - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.
  - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the bonnet.

### ▣ How to Handle Overheating

#### **WARNING**

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

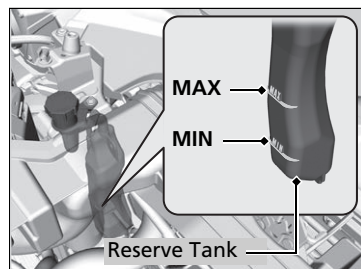
Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

#### **NOTICE**

Continuing to drive with the high temperature indicator on may damage the engine.



## ■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the high temperature indicator goes off.

► If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.

2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.

► If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

► If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

## ■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the high temperature indicator.

If the high temperature indicator is off, resume driving. If it stays on, contact a dealer for repairs.

## ► How to Handle Overheating

### ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

**Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.**

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

### If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



#### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

#### ■ What to do as soon as the indicator comes on

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

#### ■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

🔧 **Oil Check** P. 516

3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.

- ▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.
- ▶ The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

### If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



#### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

#### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the heating\* and cooling system\*/climate control system\*, rear demister, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

#### ⚠ If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

##### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

#### ⚠ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

\* Not available on all models

## If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on if there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

### ►► If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Press the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

### ►► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

## If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On

---



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.

If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## If the Electric Parking Brake System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when there is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Avoid using the parking brake and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### ■ What to do when the electric parking brake indicator comes on or blinks at the same time

Release the parking brake.

🔧 **Parking Brake** P. 477

- If the electric parking brake indicator remains on or blinks even after releasing the parking brake, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and call a dealer.

► Prevents your vehicle does move,

**Continuously variable transmission models**

move the shift lever to **P**.

**Manual transmission models**

move the shift lever to **1** or **R**.

- If only the electric parking brake indicator goes off, immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### ►► If the Electric Parking Brake System Indicator Comes On

If you apply parking brake, it may not release.

If the electric parking brake indicator also turns on, the parking brake is still applied.

When the electric parking brake indicator blinks at the same time as the electric parking brake system indicator, the system must be checked. The parking brake may not operate under these conditions.

## If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System (TPMS) Indicator\* Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on/blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system/TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system/TPMS or the compact spare tyre\* is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- Calibrate the deflation warning system/TPMS after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

🔧 **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 470

🔧 **TPMS Calibration** P. 473

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator to blink, change the tyre to a full-size tyre.

The indicator goes off after driving for a few kilometres.

- Calibrate the deflation warning system/TPMS after a full-size tyre is reinstalled.

🔧 **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 470

🔧 **TPMS Calibration** P. 473

🔧 If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System (TPMS) Indicator\* Comes On or Blinks

### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

\* Not available on all models

## Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]\*<sup>1</sup> and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

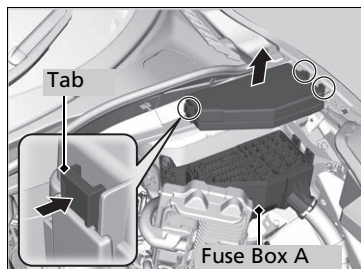
### Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Models with fuse location marks

New Zealand, Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models

#### Fuse Box A

Located near the brake fluid reserve tank. Push the tabs to open the box. Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



#### Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Wiper	(30 A)
2	—	—	—
3		Stop Main	30 A
4		Capacitor	(30 A)
5		Headlight Low Beam Main	20 A
6		—	(20 A)
7		Injector	(20 A)
8		IGP	15 A
9		IG Coil	15 A
10		Drive By Wire	15 A
11		—	(30 A)
12		Main Fan	30 A
13		Starter SW	(30 A)
14		MG Clutch	7.5 A
15		Battery Sensor	(7.5 A)
16		Front Fog Lights	(10 A)
17		EOP	(10 A)
18		Horn	10 A
19		Small Lights	10 A
20		—	(10 A)
21		Back Up	10 A
22		Audio	(10 A)
23		Sub Fan	(30 A)
24		—	(30 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
25		IGP2 Sub	(7.5 A)
26		FI Sub Relay	(7.5 A)
27		Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A
28		Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
29		Starter	(7.5 A)
30	—	—	—
31		Stop	10 A
32		Hazard	10 A
33		Daytime Running Lights	(10 A)

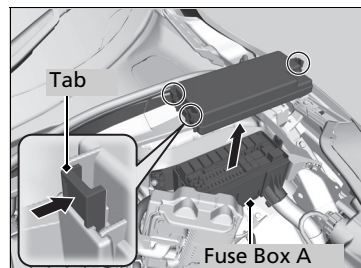
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

# Models with fuse location marks

Except New Zealand, Singaporean,  
Hong Kong and Macau models

## Fuse Box A

Located near the brake fluid reserve tank.  
Push the tabs to open the box.  
Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box  
cover. Locate the fuse in question by the  
fuse number and box cover number.



## Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Headlight Low Beam Main	20 A
2		Driver's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
3		Hazard	10 A
4		DBW	15 A
5		Wiper*	(30 A)
6		Stop	10 A
7		IGP	15 A
8		IG Coil	15 A
9		Daytime Running Lights*	(10 A)
10		–	(20 A)
11		–	(30 A)
12		Main Fan	30 A
13		Starter SW*	(30 A)
14		MG Clutch	7.5 A
15		Battery Sensor*	(7.5 A)
16		Small Lights	10 A
17		Driver's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
18		Horn	10 A
19		Front Fog Lights*	(10 A)
20		–	(10 A)
21		Back Up	10 A
22		Audio	(10 A)
23		Sub Fan	(30 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
24		–	(30 A)
25		Starter*	(7.5 A)
26		ST MG*	(7.5 A)
27	–	–	–
28	–	–	–
29		–	(30 A)
30		FI Sub Relay	(7.5 A)
31		IGP2 Sub	(7.5 A)
32		Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
33		Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A

\* Not available on all models

Continued



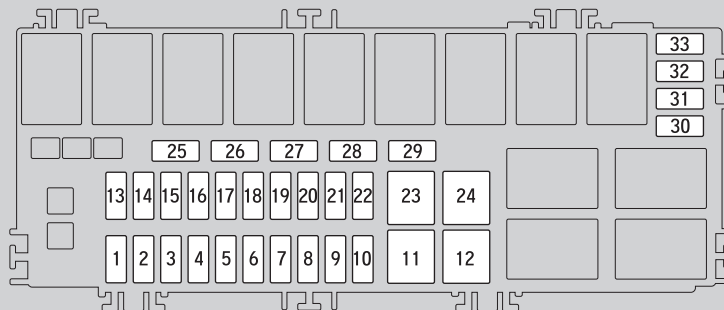
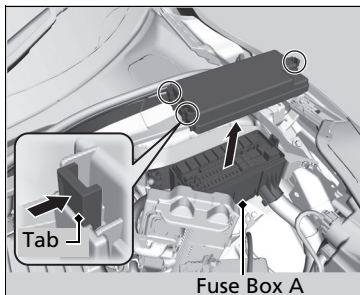
Models without fuse location marks

■ Fuse Box A

Located near the brake fluid reserve tank. Push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

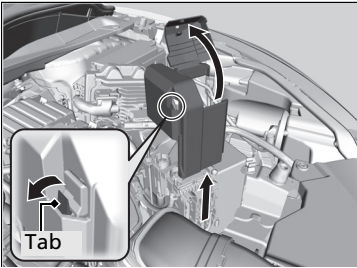
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Headlight Low Beam Main	20 A
2	—	—
3	Hazard	10 A
4	DBW	15 A
5	Wiper*	(30 A)
6	Stop	10 A
7	IGP	15 A
8	IG Coil	15 A
9	—	—
10	—	—
11	—	—
12	Main Fan	30 A
13	Starter SW*	(30 A)
14	MG Clutch	7.5 A
15	Battery Sensor*	(7.5 A)
16	Small Lights	10 A
17	—	—
18	Horn	10 A
19	Front Fog Lights	10 A
20	—	—
21	Back Up	10 A
22	Audio	10 A
23	Sub Fan	30 A
24	—	—
25	Starter*	(7.5 A)

	Circuit Protected	Amps
26	ST MG*	(7.5 A)
27	—	—
28	—	—
29	—	—
30	FI Sub Relay	7.5 A
31	IGP2 Sub	7.5 A
32	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
33	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A

\* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Fuse Box B

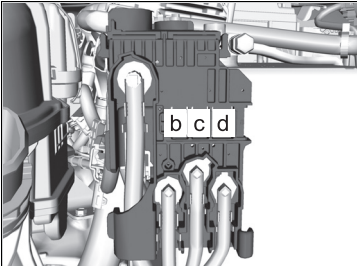
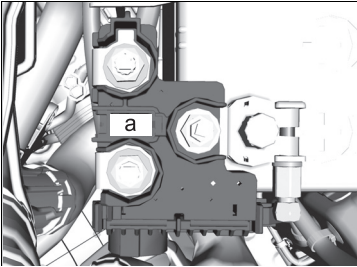


Pull up the cover on the ⊕ terminal, then remove it while pulling out the tab as shown.

Replacement of the engine compartment fuses should be done by a dealer.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

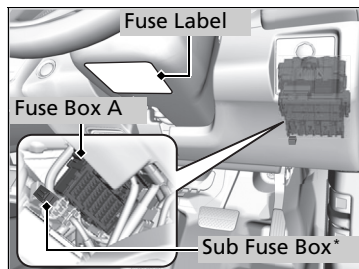
		Circuit Protected	Amps
a		Battery Main	100 A
b		RB Main 1	70 A
c		RB Main 2	80 A
d		CAP Main*	80 A



Handling the Unexpected

## Interior Fuse Box

### Fuse Box A



Located behind the instrument panel.  
Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

### Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Door Lock	20 A
2	—	—
3	Keyless Access System*	(10 A)
4	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
5	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
6	Driver's Door Unlock*	(10 A)
7	Driver's Door Lock*	(10 A)
8	Driver's Power Window	20 A

\* Not available on all models

	Circuit Protected	Amps
9	Passenger's Power Window	20 A
10	Rear Left Power Window	20 A
11	Rear Right Power Window	20 A
12	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
14	Rear Fog Light*	(10 A)
15	Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
16	STS*	(7.5 A)
17	Sunshade*	(20 A)
18	Panoramic Glass Roof*	(20 A)
19	Seat Heaters*	(20 A)
20	Daytime Running Lights* <sup>1</sup>	(10 A)
	—* <sup>2</sup>	(20 A)
21	Multi-purpose Camera* <sup>1</sup>	(10 A)
	—* <sup>2</sup>	(20 A)
22	Washer	15 A
23	Rear Wiper Main*	(10 A)
24	A/C	7.5 A
25	Daytime Running Lights*	(7.5 A)
26	Starter*	(7.5 A)
27	ABS/VA	7.5 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
28	SRS	10 A
29	Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
30	ACG	10 A
31	Relay	10 A
32	Fuel Pump	15 A
33	SRS2*	(7.5 A)
34	Meter	7.5 A
35	Mission SOL	7.5 A
36	Accessory Power Socket (Console Panel)	20 A
37	ACC	(7.5 A)
38	—	(7.5 A)
39	Option	10 A
40	Rear Wiper	10 A
41	—	—
42	—	—

\*1: 1.8 L engine models and Indonesian 15E+

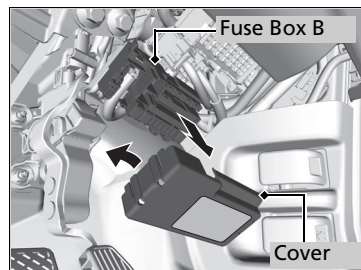
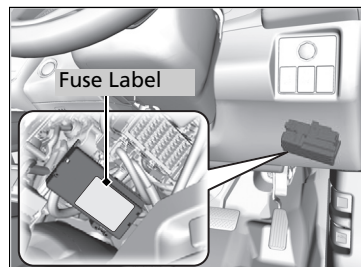
\*2: 1.5 L engine models except Indonesian 15E+

### Sub Fuse Box\*

	Circuit Protected	Amps
a	Driver's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
b	Driver's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)

Continued

## ■ Fuse Box B



Remove the cover.

## ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

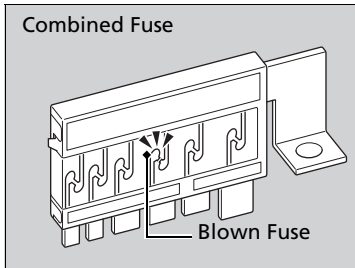
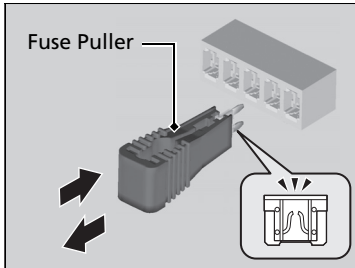
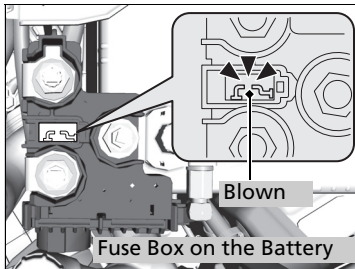
	Circuit Protected	Amps
	Electric Power Steering (EPS)	70 A
	IG Main	30 A <sup>*1</sup> 50 A <sup>*2</sup>
1	Fuse Box Main 2	50 A
	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	Fuse Box Main	30 A
	Fuse Box Main 3 <sup>*</sup>	40 A
	Rear Demister	30 A
	Left Electric Parking Brake	30 A
2	IG Main2 <sup>*</sup>	30 A <sup>*</sup>
	Heater Motor	40 A
	Right Electric Parking Brake	30 A
	ABS/VSA FSR	30 A
3	Driver's Power Seat Main <sup>*</sup>	(40 A)
4	—	—
5	AWD <sup>*</sup>	(20 A)
6	—	(10 A)
7	Accessory Power Socket (Luggage Area) <sup>*</sup>	(20 A)
8	—	(7.5 A)
9	Interior Lights	7.5 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
10	Accessory Power Socket (Rearward of the Centre Console) <sup>*</sup>	(20 A)
11	—	—
12	ACC Keylock <sup>*</sup>	(7.5 A) <sup>*</sup>
13	Heated Door Mirror <sup>*</sup>	(10 A)
14	A/C Blower <sup>*</sup>	(7.5 A)
15	Front Wiper <sup>*</sup>	30 A <sup>*</sup>

\*1: Models with keyless access system

\*2: Models without keyless access system

## Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Check the fuses on the battery in the engine compartment.
  - If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.
3. Remove the fuse box cover.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
  - If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.
5. Check the large fuse in the vehicle interior.
  - If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Inspecting and Changing Fuses

#### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a new one of the same specified amperage.

Confirm the specified amperage using the charts on **Fuse Locations**.

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

## All models

### ■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

**This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

## 2WD models

### ■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

## » Emergency Towing

### NOTICE

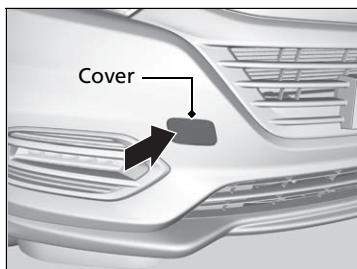
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous, since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flat bed equipment.

🔧 **Parking Brake** P. 477

■ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:



1. Check the ground underneath the vehicle around where the transmission housing is for a fluid leak.
  - ▶ If you find a leak, call a professional towing service and have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
2. Push the left side of the cover to remove it.
  - ▶ The detachable towing hook mounts on the anchor in the front bumper.

■ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

Towing a vehicle is prohibited by law in some countries. Check and follow the legal requirements of the country you are driving before towing your vehicle.

If you cannot follow the exact procedure, do not tow your vehicle with the front wheels on the ground.

If you cannot turn on the engine, you may experience the following while your vehicle is being towed.

- Braking may become difficult since the brake system's power assist is disabled.
- Steering wheel becomes heavy as the power steering system is disabled.

**Manual transmission models**

- Turning the ignition switch to LOCK [0]\*<sup>1</sup> locks the steering wheel.

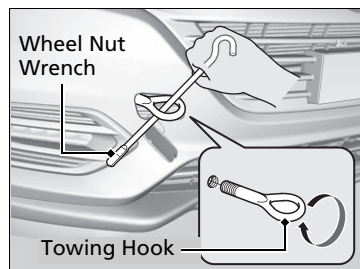
With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 80 km, and keep the speed below 55 km/h.

Going down a long slope heats up the brakes. This may prevent the brakes from working properly. If your vehicle needs to be towed on an incline, call a professional towing service.

Make sure to use the properly-designed and attached towing equipment.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.





3. Take the towing hook and the wheel nut wrench out of the luggage area.
4. Screw the towing hook into the hole, and tighten it with the wheel nut wrench securely.
5. Hook the towing device to the towing hook.
6. Start the engine.
  - ▶ If it is difficult to turn on the engine, put the ignition switch in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**\*1.

**Manual transmission models**

7. Shift to **N**.

**Continuously variable transmission models**

7. Depress the brake pedal.
8. Shift to **D** and hold for five seconds, then to **N**.

**All models**

9. Release the parking brake.

▶▶ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

**NOTICE**

**Continuously variable transmission models**

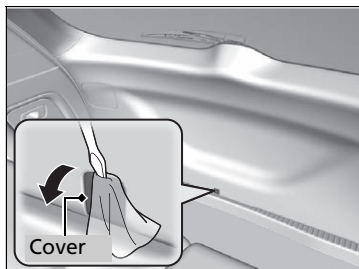
If you cannot shift the transmission or turn on the engine, will damage the transmission. Your vehicle must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

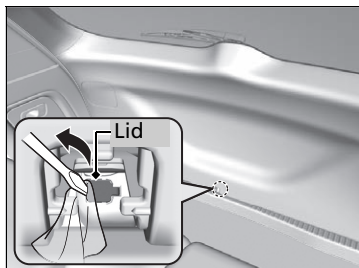
# When You Cannot Open the Tailgate

## What to Do When Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1. Wrap a cloth around the flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the cover as shown in the image, and open it.



2. Wrap a cloth around the flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the lid as shown in the image, and open the lid.

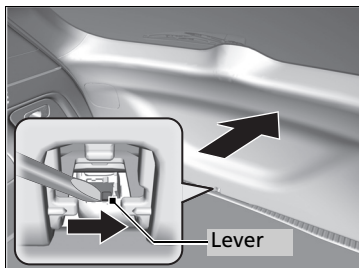
## When You Cannot Open the Tailgate

Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have your vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

*Continued*



3. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while sliding the lever to the right.

# Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

<b>Specifications .....</b>	<b>614</b>
<b>Identification Numbers</b>	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number .....	620
<b>Utility Compliance*</b>	
Devices that Emit Radio Waves .....	621
Environmental Protection Regulation....	624

## 1.5 L engine models

### Vehicle Specifications

Model <sup>*1</sup>	HR-V
Model <sup>*2</sup>	Honda HR-V
Model <sup>*3</sup>	VEZEL
Curb Weight <sup>*4</sup>	1,215 kg <sup>*2</sup>
Curb Weight <sup>*5</sup>	1,223 – 1,231 kg <sup>*2</sup>
	1,188 – 1,194 kg <sup>*3</sup>
	1,220 kg <sup>*7</sup>
	1,187 – 1,214 kg <sup>*8</sup>
	1,191 – 1,200 kg <sup>*9</sup>
Maximum Permissible Weight <sup>*4</sup>	1,184 – 1,270 kg <sup>*10</sup>
	1,760 kg <sup>*2</sup>
Maximum Permissible Weight <sup>*5</sup>	1,760 kg <sup>*2, *3, *8, *9</sup>
	1,863 kg <sup>*7</sup>
	1,600 kg <sup>*10, *11</sup>
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	1,658 kg <sup>*10, *12</sup>
	Front 998 kg <sup>*6</sup>
	886 kg <sup>*10, *11</sup>
	882 kg <sup>*10, *12</sup>
	Rear 865 kg <sup>*6</sup>
	734 kg <sup>*10, *11</sup>
	776 kg <sup>*10, *12</sup>

\*1: Except Indonesian, Hong Kong and Macau models

\*2: Indonesian models

\*3: Hong Kong and Macau models

\*4: Manual transmission models

\*5: Continuously variable transmission models

\*6: South African models

\*7: African models

\*8: Bruneian, Fijian, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepalese and Pakistani models

\*9: Singaporean models

\*10: New Zealand models

\*11: 2WD

\*12: AWD

### Engine Specifications

Type	DOHC <sup>*3, *4</sup> SOHC <sup>*5</sup>
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm <sup>*3</sup> 73.0 x 89.4 mm <sup>*6</sup>
Displacement	1,498 cm <sup>3</sup> <sup>*3</sup>
	1,496 cm <sup>3</sup> <sup>*4</sup>
	1,497 cm <sup>3</sup> <sup>*5</sup>
Compression Ratio	11.5 : 1 <sup>*3, *4</sup>
	10.3 : 1 <sup>*5</sup>
Spark Plugs	NGK <sup>*1</sup> FR6F-11K
	NGK <sup>*2</sup> DIFR6D13
	NGK <sup>*3, *4</sup> DILZKAR7C11S
	DENSO <sup>*2</sup> DK20PR-D13
	DENSO <sup>*3, *4</sup> DXE22HCR11S

\*1: Indonesian models

\*2: Except Indonesian, New Zealand, Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models

\*3: New Zealand models

\*4: Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models

\*5: Except New Zealand, Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models

\*6: Except New Zealand models

### Fuel

Fuel: Type	<b>Except Indonesian models</b>
	Unleaded petrol, Research octane number of 91 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	<b>Indonesian models</b>
	Unleaded petrol, Research octane number of 90 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L

### Battery

Capacity/Type	32AH(5)/40AH(20) <sup>*1</sup>
	36AH(5)/47AH(20) <sup>*2, *3</sup>
	36AH(5)/45AH(20) <sup>*2, *3</sup>

\*1: Except Indonesian, New Zealand, Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models

\*2: Indonesian models

\*3: New Zealand, Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models

Idle Stop:

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

### Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.0 L
---------------	-------

## ■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)* <sup>1</sup>	55W (H11)
Headlights (High Beam)* <sup>1</sup>	60W (HB3)
Headlights (High/Low Beam)* <sup>2</sup>	LED
Position Lights*	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights*	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)* <sup>1</sup>
	LED* <sup>2</sup>
Front Fog Lights*	35W (H8)* <sup>3</sup>
	LED* <sup>4</sup>
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)*	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Front Fenders)*	5W (Amber)
Brake/Tailights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16W
Rear Licence Plate Lights	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map lights*	8W
Ceiling Light*	8W
Front Map Lights*	LED
Rear Map Lights*	LED
Vanity Mirror Lights*	2W
Luggage Area Light*	5W

\*1: Models without LED headlights

\*2: Models with LED headlights

\*3: Models without LED front fog lights

\*4: Models with LED front fog lights

## ■ Brake/Clutch\* Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

## ■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid\*

Specified	Honda HCF-2 Transmission Fluid	
Capacity	Change	3.4 L* <sup>1</sup>
		3.9 L* <sup>2</sup>

\*1: 2WD

\*2: AWD

## ■ Manual Transmission Fluid\*

Specified	Honda Manual Transmission Fluid	
Capacity	Change	1.9 L

## ■ Engine Oil

Recommended	New Zealand, Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Honda Engine Oil #1.0</li> <li>• Honda Green Oil</li> <li>• Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-16, 0W-20, 5W-30</li> <li>• API service SM or higher grade or ACEA A5/B5 0W-16, 0W-20, 5W-30</li> </ul>	
Capacity	Except New Zealand, Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Honda Green Oil</li> <li>• Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30</li> <li>• API service SM or higher grade or ACEA A5/B5 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30</li> </ul>	
Change	3.1 L* <sup>1</sup> 3.4 L* <sup>2</sup>	
	Change including filter	
Capacity	3.3 L* <sup>1</sup> 3.6 L* <sup>2</sup>	
	Change including filter	

\*1: New Zealand, Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models

\*2: Except New Zealand, Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models

## ■ Rear Differential Fluid \*

Specified	DPSF-II
Capacity	Change 1.247 L

## ■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	3.63 L <sup>*1</sup>
	4.00 L <sup>*2, *5</sup>
	4.63 L <sup>*3, *4</sup>
	4.14 L <sup>*2, *6</sup>
	(change including the remaining 0.475 L <sup>*1</sup> /0.5 L <sup>*2, *3, *4</sup> in the reserve tank)

\*1: New Zealand, Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models

\*2: Indonesian models

\*3: African models

\*4: Bruneian, Fijian, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepalese and Pakistani models

\*5: Manual transmission models

\*6: Continuously variable transmission models

## ■ Tyre

Regular	Size	215/60R16 95H 215/55R17 94V
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Compact Spare *	Size	T135/90D16 102M
	Pressure	420 (4.2 [60]) kPa (kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> [psi])
Spare * (Full-size tyre)	Size	215/60R16 95H 215/55R17 94V
	Pressure	Same as the regular tyre. See the label on driver's doorjamb.
	Regular	16 x 7J <sup>*1</sup> 17 x 7J <sup>*2</sup>
	Wheel Size	Compact Spare* 16 x 4T Spare * 16 x 7J <sup>*1</sup> (Full-size tyre) 17 x 7J <sup>*2</sup>

For the tyre size and pressure information, see the label on driver's doorjamb.

\*1: Models with 215/60R16

\*2: Models with 215/55R17

## ■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

## ■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	405-455g

## ■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,334 mm <sup>*1</sup>
	4,310 mm <sup>*2</sup>
	4,335 mm <sup>*3</sup>
	4,347 mm <sup>*4</sup>
	4,330 mm <sup>*5</sup>
Width	1,772 mm <sup>*1, *4</sup>
	1,770 mm <sup>*2, *3, *5</sup>
Height	1,580 mm <sup>*1</sup>
	1,605 mm <sup>*2, *3, *4, *5</sup>
Wheelbase	2,610 mm <sup>*1, *2, *3, *5</sup>
	2,602 mm <sup>*4</sup>
Track	Front 1,535 mm <sup>*1, *2, *3, *5</sup>
	Rear 1,538 mm <sup>*4</sup>

\*1: Indonesian models

\*2: Bruneian, Fijian, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Bhutanese, Nepalese and Pakistani models

\*3: Singaporean, Hong Kong and Macau models

\*4: African models

\*5: New Zealand models

## ■ Max. Towing Weight\*<sup>1</sup>

Trailer with brakes	800 kg
Trailer without brakes	500 kg
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	70 kg

\*1: South African models

## 1.8 L engine models

### ■ Vehicle Specifications

Model <sup>*1</sup>	HR-V
Model <sup>*2</sup>	Honda HR-V
Curb Weight	1,317 kg <sup>*2</sup>
	1,250 – 1,297 kg <sup>*4</sup>
	1,274 kg <sup>*5</sup>
	1,256 – 1,267 kg <sup>*6</sup>
	1,254 – 1,319 kg <sup>*7</sup>
	1,255 – 1,290 kg <sup>*8</sup>
	1,249 – 1,302 kg <sup>*9</sup>
	1,259 – 1,273 kg <sup>*10</sup>
	1,264 – 1,322 kg <sup>*11</sup>
	1,257 – 1,316 kg <sup>*12</sup>
	1,262 – 1,312 kg <sup>*13</sup>
Maximum Permissible Weight	1,760 kg <sup>*2</sup>
	1,795 kg <sup>*4, *6, *9, *10, *11, *12, *13</sup>
	1,863 kg <sup>*5, *7</sup>
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight <sup>*3, *7</sup>	Front 998 kg
	Rear 865 kg

\*1: Except Indonesian models

\*2: Indonesian models

\*3: South African models

\*4: Thai models

\*5: African models with right-hand drive type

\*6: Latin American models

\*7: Australian and New Zealand models

\*8: Malaysian models

\*9: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian and Myanmar models

\*10: Taiwanese models

\*11: Middle Eastern models

\*12: African models with left-hand drive type

\*13: Vietnamese models

### ■ Engine Specifications

Type	SOHC
Bore x Stroke	81.0 x 87.3 mm
Displacement	1,799 cm <sup>3</sup>
Compression Ratio	10.6 : 1 <sup>*1</sup>
	9.7 : 1 <sup>*2</sup>
Max. Power <sup>*5</sup>	105 kW (XXX HP)/6,500 rpm
Max. Torque <sup>*5</sup>	172 N·m (17.5 kgf·m)/4,300 rpm
Max. Speed <sup>*5</sup>	193 km/h
Spark Plugs	NGK <sup>*3</sup> SILZKR7C11S
	NGK <sup>*4</sup> SILZKR7C11DS

\*1: Except Indonesian models

\*2: Indonesian models

\*3: Except Thai models

\*4: Thai models

\*5: GCC country

### ■ Fuel

Fuel: Type	Except Thai and Indonesian models
	Unleaded petrol, Research octane number of 91 or higher
	Thai models
	Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), Research octane number of 91 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	Indonesian models
	Unleaded petrol, Research octane number of 90 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	50 L

### ■ Battery

Capacity/Type	36AH(5)/47AH(20) <sup>*1</sup>
	36AH(5)/45AH(20) <sup>*2</sup>

\*1: Except Taiwanese models

\*2: Indonesian and Taiwanese models

### ■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.0 L
---------------	-------



## ■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)* <sup>1</sup>	55W (H11)
Headlights (High Beam)* <sup>1</sup>	60W (HB3)
Headlights (High/Low Beam)* <sup>2</sup>	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)* <sup>1</sup>
	LED* <sup>2</sup>
Front Fog Lights*	35W (H8)* <sup>3</sup>
	LED* <sup>4</sup>
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)*	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Front Fenders)*	5W (Amber)
Brake/Taillights*	LED
Brake Lights*	LED
Taillights*	LED
Taillights (on tailgate)*	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16W
Rear Fog Light*	21W
Rear Licence Plate Lights	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map lights* <sup>4</sup>	8W
Ceiling Light* <sup>4</sup>	8W
Front Map Lights* <sup>5</sup>	LED
Rear Map Lights* <sup>5</sup>	LED
Vanity Mirror Lights*	2W
Luggage Area Light*	5W

\*1: Models without LED headlights

\*2: Models with LED headlights

\*3: Models without LED front fog lights

\*4: Models with LED front fog lights

\*5: Models without panoramic glass roof and sunshade

\*6: Models with panoramic glass roof and sunshade

## ■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

## ■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HCF-2 Transmission Fluid
Capacity	Change 3.5 L

## ■ Engine Oil

Recommended	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30</li> <li>API service SM or higher grade or ACEA A5/B5 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30</li> </ul>
	Change 3.5 L
Capacity	Change including filter 3.7 L

## ■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
	5.39 L* <sup>1</sup>
	5.08 L* <sup>2</sup>
Capacity	5.24 L* <sup>3</sup>
	5.32 L* <sup>4</sup>
	(change including the remaining 0.5 L in the reserve tank)

\*1: Australian, New Zealand, African and Latin American models

\*2: Except Australian, New Zealand, African, Latin American, Taiwanese and Vietnamese models

\*3: Taiwanese and Vietnamese models

\*4: GCC country, Yemeni, Lebanese, Jordanian and Iraqi models

## ■ Tyre

Regular	Size	215/60R16 95H 215/55R17 94V 225/50R18 95V
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Compact Spare*	Size	T135/90D16 102M
	Pressure kPa (kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> [psi])	420 (4.2 [60])
Spare* (Full-size tyre)	Size	215/60R16 95H 215/55R17 94V
	Pressure	Same as the regular tyre. See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Wheel Size	Regular	16 x 7J <sup>*1</sup>
		17 x 7J <sup>*2</sup>
		18 x 7 1/2J <sup>*3</sup>
	Compact Spare*	16 x 4T
	Spare* (Full-size tyre)	16 x 7J <sup>*1</sup> 17 x 7J <sup>*2</sup>

For the tyre size and pressure information, see the label on driver's doorjamb.

\*1: Models with 215/60R16

\*2: Models with 215/55R17

\*3: Models with 225/50R18

## ■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

## ■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	405-455g

## ■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,294 mm <sup>*2, *3, *7, *8, *12</sup>
	4,347 mm <sup>*5</sup>
	4,334 mm <sup>*1, *6, *11, *12</sup>
	4,348 mm <sup>*9, *10, *14</sup>
	4,346 mm <sup>*2, *6, *13</sup>
	4,343 mm <sup>*12, *15</sup>
Width	4,360 mm <sup>*4, *13</sup>
	1,772 mm <sup>*1, *4, *5, *6, *8, *9, *10, *11, *12</sup>
	1,772.4 mm <sup>*2, *3, *7, *12</sup>
	1,789.6 mm <sup>*2, *13</sup>
Height	1,790 mm <sup>*4, *6, *13</sup>
	1,580 mm <sup>*1</sup>
Wheelbase	1,605 mm <sup>*2, *3, *4, *5, *6, *7, *8, *9, *10, *11</sup>
	2,610 mm <sup>*1, *3, *4, *6, *7, *8, *9, *10, *11</sup>
Track	2,602 mm <sup>*2, *5</sup>
	Front 1,535 mm <sup>*1, *3, *4, *6, *7, *8, *9, *10, *11</sup>
	Rear 1,538 mm <sup>*2, *5</sup>
	Rear 1,540 mm

\*1: Indonesian models

\*2: Thai models

\*3: Latin American models

\*4: Australian and New Zealand models

\*5: African models with right-hand drive type

\*6: Malaysian models

\*7: Philippine, Cambodian, Laotian and Myanmar models

\*8: Taiwanese models

\*9: Middle Eastern models

\*10: African models with left-hand drive type

\*11: Vietnamese models

\*12: Except RS model

\*13: RS model

\*14: Australian and New Zealand models without paddle shifter

\*15: Australian and New Zealand models with paddle shifter

## ■ Max. Towing Weight\*<sup>1</sup>

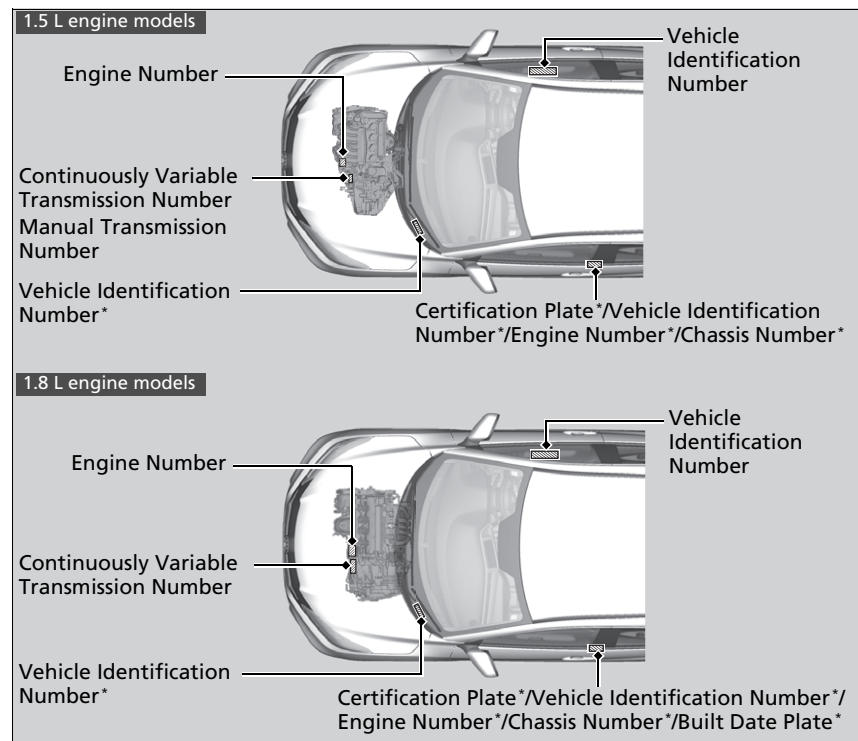
Trailer with brakes	800 kg
Trailer without brakes	500 kg
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	70 kg

\*1: Australian, New Zealand and South African models

\* Not available on all models

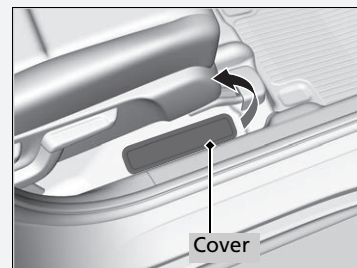
## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.



### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.









### Identification Numbers

#### Australian and New Zealand models












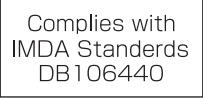
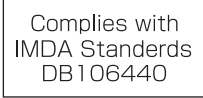
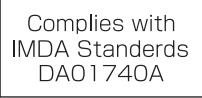






The built date is the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.



## Devices that Emit Radio Waves

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

	Remote Transmitter*	Immobilizer System
South African models	 TA-2013/1128 APPROVED	 TA-2013/998 APPROVED
U.A.E. models	 REGISTERED No: ER0122948/13 DEALER No: DA0046049/10	 REGISTERED No: ER0108496/13 DEALER No: DA0046049/10
Singaporean models	Complies with IMDA Standards DA01740A	Complies with IMDA Standards DA01740A
Botswanan models	BTA BOCRA/TA/2017/1524	BTA BOCRA/TA/2017/1523
Zambian models	 <b>ZICTA</b> ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2014/10/44	 <b>ZICTA</b> ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2014/10/45
Nigerian models	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

\* Not available on all models

	Keyless remote	Keyless Access System* Power control unit	ENGINE START/STOP switch
South African models	 TA-2013/830 APPROVED  TA-2013/832 APPROVED	 TA-2013/830 APPROVED  TA-2013/832 APPROVED	 TA-2014/1738 APPROVED
U.A.E. models	 TRA REGISTERED No: ER49244/16 DEALER No: DA36975/14	 TRA REGISTERED No: ER43576/15 DEALER No: DA0039841/10	 TRA REGISTERED No: ER35377/14 DEALER No: 0034163/10
Vietnamese models	 ICT Continental V4x	 ICT Continental 40527612	 ICT HONDAVN A00092011
Singaporean models	 Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440	 Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440	 Complies with IMDA Standards DA01740A
Botswanan models	 BTA BOCRA/TA/2014/944	 BTA BOCRA/TA/2014/939	 BTA BOCRA/TA/2017/2009
Zambian models	 ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2013/9/2	 ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2013/9/3	 ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2015/3/5
Nigerian models	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission		

Hands-Free Telephone System*	
South African models	<b>Models with colour audio system</b> 
	<b>Models with display audio system</b> 
Singaporean models	Complies with IMDA Standards DB03074

\* Not available on all models

#### ►► Devices that Emit Radio Waves

##### Taiwanese models

The Regulations by Ministry of Transport for the Control of Low Power Equipment:

The regulation of Article 12:

Without permission granted by the DGT, any company, enterprise, or user is not allowed to change frequency, enhance transmitting power or alter original characteristic as well as performance to a approved low power radio- frequency devices.

The regulation of Article 14:

The low power radio-frequency devices shall not influence aircraft security and interfere legal communications; If found, the user shall cease operating immediately until no interference is achieved. The said legal communications means radio communications is operated in compliance with the Telecommunications Act. The low power radio-frequency devices must be susceptible with the interference from legal communications or ISM radio wave radiated devices.

## Environmental Protection Regulation

---

Taiwanese models

### NOTICE

Used batteries to be disposed of shall be collected in conformity with the regulations of Environmental Protection Administration.



## Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode ..... 449

## A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) ..... 484

Accessories and Modifications ..... 562

Accessory Power Socket(s) ..... 240

### Adding

Coolant ..... 519

Engine Oil ..... 518

Washer ..... 525

Additives, Engine Oil ..... 513

### Adjusting

Armrest ..... 231

Clock ..... 156

Front Seats ..... 222

Head Restraints ..... 225

Headlights ..... 206

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position ..... 227

Mirrors ..... 218

Rear Seats ..... 228

Steering Wheel ..... 217

Temperature ..... 138, 142

Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) ..... 249

Changing the Mode ..... 249, 251

Defrosting the Windscreen and

Windows ..... 253

Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 555

Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ..... 252

Sensors ..... 260

Using Automatic Climate Control ..... 249

### Air Conditioning System (Heating and

Cooling System) ..... 245

Cooling ..... 248

Defrosting the Windscreen and

Windows ..... 248

Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 555

Heating ..... 247

Air Pressure ..... 543, 616, 619

Airbags ..... 54

After a Collision ..... 56

Airbag Care ..... 66

Event Data Recorder ..... 1

Front Airbags (SRS) ..... 56

Indicator ..... 64, 105

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator ..... 65

Sensors ..... 54

Side Airbags ..... 61

Side Curtain Airbags ..... 63

All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System ..... 476

AM/FM Radio ..... 270, 293, 316

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 484

Indicator ..... 104

Armrest ..... 231

Audio Remote Controls ..... 266

Audio System ..... 262

Adjusting the Sound ..... 269, 291, 314

Auxiliary Input Jack ..... 265

Error Messages ..... 335

General Information ..... 337

HDMI™ Port ..... 264

iPod ..... 277, 299, 321

MP3/WMA/

AAC ..... 273, 280, 296, 302, 318, 324

Recommended CDs ..... 337

Recommended Devices ..... 339

Remote Controls ..... 266

USB Flash Drives ..... 339

USB Port ..... 263

Audio/Information Screen ..... 287, 309

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking ..... 178

Auto High-Beam ..... 207

Auto High-Beam Indicator ..... 118

Auto Idle Stop ..... 453

Indicator ..... 123

OFF Button ..... 453

System Indicator ..... 123

Automatic Brake Hold ..... 481

Indicator ..... 100, 481

### Automatic Brake Hold System

Indicator ..... 100, 481

Auxiliary Input Jack ..... 265

Average Fuel Economy ..... 137, 141

Average Speed ..... 142

AWD (All-Wheel Drive) ..... 476



## B

- Battery** ..... 549
    - Charging System Indicator ..... 101, 595
    - Jump Starting ..... 589
    - Maintenance (Checking the Battery) ..... 549
  - Belts (Seat)** ..... 41
  - Beverage Holders** ..... 236
  - Bluetooth® Audio** ..... 284, 305, 327
  - Booster Seats (For Children)** ..... 90
  - Brake System** ..... 477
    - Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 484
    - Automatic Brake Hold ..... 481
    - Brake Assist System ..... 485
    - Fluid ..... 524
    - Foot Brake ..... 480
    - Indicator ..... 96, 97, 596
    - Parking Brake ..... 477
  - Brake System Indicator (Amber)** ..... 97
  - Brake System Indicator (Red)** ..... 96, 596
  - Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)** ..... 214
  - Built-in Key** ..... 162
  - Bulb Replacement** ..... 526
    - Back-Up Lights ..... 534
    - Brake Lights/Taillights ..... 534
    - Ceiling Light ..... 537
    - Front Fog Lights ..... 528
    - Front Turn Signal Lights ..... 530
    - Headlights ..... 526
    - High-Mount Brake Light ..... 535
    - Luggage Area Light ..... 538
    - Position Lights ..... 531
    - Position/Daytime Running Lights ..... 531
    - Rear Fog Light ..... 536
    - Rear Licence Plate Lights ..... 535
    - Rear Turn Signal Lights ..... 533
    - Side Turn Signal Lights ..... 532
    - Taillights ..... 534
  - Bulb Specifications** ..... 615, 618
- ## C
- Carbon Monoxide Gas** ..... 92
  - Carrying Luggage** ..... 425, 427
  - CD Player** ..... 273, 296, 318
  - Changing Bulbs** ..... 526
  - Charging System Indicator** ..... 101, 595
  - Child Restraint System** ..... 67
    - Booster Seats ..... 90
    - Child Restraint System for Infants ..... 71
    - Child Restraint System for Small Children ..... 73
    - Installing a Child Restraint System
      - with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt ..... 82
    - Larger Children ..... 89
    - Rear-facing Child Restraint System ..... 71
    - Selecting a Child Restraint System ..... 74
    - Using a Tether ..... 86, 87
  - Child Safety** ..... 67
    - Childproof Door Locks ..... 177
  - Childproof Door Locks** ..... 177
  - City-Brake Active System** ..... 486
    - Indicator ..... 121, 122
  - Cleaning the Exterior** ..... 559
  - Cleaning the Interior** ..... 557
  - Climate Control System** ..... 249
    - Changing the Mode ..... 249, 251
    - Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows ..... 253
    - Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 555
    - Recirculation and Fresh Air Mode ..... 252
    - Sensors ..... 260
    - Using Automatic Climate Control ..... 249
  - Clock** ..... 156
  - Coat Hook(s)** ..... 242
  - Compact Spare Tyre** ..... 568, 616, 619
  - Console Compartment** ..... 235
  - Continuously Variable Transmission** ..... 444
    - 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode ..... 449
    - Creeping ..... 444
    - Fluid ..... 523
    - Kickdown ..... 444
    - Operating the Shift Lever ..... 446, 448
    - Shift Lever Does Not Move ..... 592
    - Shifting ..... 445, 447
  - Controls** ..... 155
  - Coolant (Engine)** ..... 519
    - Adding to the Radiator ..... 522
    - Adding to the Reserve Tank ..... 520
    - Overheating ..... 593
  - Creeping**
    - (Continuously Variable Transmission) ... 444
  - Cruise Control** ..... 458
    - Indicator ..... 114

Cup Holders .....	236
Customized Features .....	143, 341, 348
Customizing the Auto Door Locking/ Unlocking Setting .....	179

## D

Daytime Running Lights .....	209
Dead Battery .....	589
Deflation Warning System .....	470
Calibration .....	470
Indicator .....	109, 599
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows .....	248, 253
Devices that Emit Radio Waves .....	621
Dimming .....	
Headlights .....	200
Rearview Mirror .....	218
Dipstick (Engine Oil) .....	516
Directional Signals (Turn Signals) .....	199
Display Button .....	309
Display Setup .....	292, 315
Door Mirrors .....	219
Doors .....	161
Auto Door Locking .....	178
Auto Door Unlocking .....	178
Door and Tailgate Open Indicator .....	40, 107
Keys .....	161
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside .....	174

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside .....	165
Lockout Prevention System .....	173
Driving .....	423
Braking .....	477
Continuously Variable Transmission .....	444
Cruise Control .....	458
Shifting Gear .....	445, 447, 451
Starting the Engine .....	435, 438
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	555

## E

Eco Assist System .....	11
ECON Button .....	457
Elapsed Time .....	141
Electric Parking Brake .....	
Indicator .....	99
Electric Parking Brake System .....	
Indicator .....	99, 598
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System .....	
Indicator .....	108, 597
Emergency .....	608
Emergency Stop Signal .....	491
Engine .....	
Coolant .....	519
Jump Starting .....	589
Oil .....	513
Starting .....	435, 438
Switch Buzzer .....	194

Engine Coolant .....	519
Adding to the Radiator .....	522
Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	520
Overheating .....	593
Engine Oil .....	513
Adding .....	518
Checking .....	516
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	98, 595
Recommended Engine Oil .....	513
Engine Start/Stop Button .....	195
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System .....	108, 597
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) .....	92
Exterior Care (Cleaning) .....	559
Exterior Mirrors .....	219

## F

Features .....	261
Filter .....	
Dust and Pollen .....	555
Flat Tyre .....	568
Floor Mats .....	558
Fluids .....	
Brake .....	524
Clutch .....	524
Continuously Variable Transmission .....	523
Engine Coolant .....	519
Manual Transmission .....	523
Windscreen Washer .....	525

FM/AM Radio .....	270, 293, 316
Fog Light Indicator .....	111
Folding Down the Rear Seats .....	229
Foot Brake .....	480
Forward Collision Warning .....	461
Indicator .....	119
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	56
Front Seats .....	222
Adjusting .....	222
Fuel .....	499
Economy .....	501
Gauge .....	138, 142
Instant Fuel Economy .....	137, 142
Low Fuel Indicator .....	104
Range .....	137, 141
Recommendation .....	499
Refueling .....	499
Fuel Fill Cap .....	27, 500
Fuel Fill Door .....	27, 500
Fuel Gauge .....	138, 142
Fuses .....	600
Inspecting and Changing .....	607
Locations .....	600

## G

Gauges .....	135
Gear Shift Lever Positions	
Continuously Variable	
Transmission .....	445, 447
Manual Transmission .....	451
Glass (care) .....	558, 560
Glove Box .....	235

## H

Halogen Bulbs .....	526, 529
Hands-Free Telephone (HFT)	
System .....	361, 384, 405
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and	
Call History .....	396, 416
Call History .....	376
HFT Buttons .....	361, 384, 405
HFT Menus .....	363, 386, 408
HFT Status Display .....	362, 385, 406
Making a Call .....	379, 399, 419
Options During a Call .....	383, 404, 422
Phone Setup .....	367, 390, 411
Receiving a Call .....	382, 403, 422
Ring Tone .....	394, 415
Speed Dial .....	377, 397, 417
Hazard Warning Button .....	4, 5
HDMI™ Port .....	264
Head Restraints .....	225

Headlights .....	200
Adjuster .....	206
Aiming .....	526, 527, 528, 530
Auto High-Beam .....	207
Automatic Operation .....	201
Dimming .....	200
Operating .....	200
Heating and Cooling System .....	245
Cooling .....	248
Defrosting the Windscreen and	
Windows .....	248
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	555
Heating .....	247
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone) ...	361, 384, 405
High-Beam Indicator .....	111
Hill Start Assist System .....	437, 441
Honda TRK .....	575
Hydrophilic Mirror .....	561

## I

Identification Numbers .....	620
Vehicle Identification .....	620
Ignition Switch .....	194
Ignition Switch and Power Mode	
Comparison .....	198
Illumination Control .....	214
Knob .....	214
Immobilizer System .....	186
Indicator .....	112

<b>Indicators</b> .....	96
All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System.....	118
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	104
Auto High-Beam.....	118
Auto Idle Stop.....	123
Auto Idle Stop System.....	123
Automatic Brake Hold.....	100, 481
Automatic Brake Hold System .....	100, 481
Brake Depressing .....	116, 117
Brake System (Amber).....	97
Brake System (Red) .....	96
Charging System.....	101
City-Brake Active System (CTBA) .....	121, 122
CRUISE CONTROL .....	114, 459
CRUISE MAIN.....	114, 458, 459
Door and Tailgate Open.....	40, 107
ECON Mode .....	114, 457
Electric Parking Brake.....	99
Electric Parking Brake System .....	99, 598
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System .....	108, 597
Fog Light .....	111
Forward Collision Warning .....	119
High-Beam.....	111
Immobilizer System .....	112
Keyless Access System.....	114
Lane Departure Warning.....	120
Light Control .....	114
Lights On .....	111
Low Fuel .....	104
Low Oil Pressure .....	98

Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System.....	109, 599
Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS .....	110, 599
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	101
Passenger Front Airbag On/Off .....	105
Rotate Wheel .....	115
Seat Belt Reminder .....	103
Security System Alarm .....	113
Shift Lever Position .....	101
Shift to Park .....	115
Starter System .....	115
Supplemental Restraint System .....	105
System Message .....	108
Transmission.....	102
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning .....	111
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System.....	106
VSA OFF .....	106
<b>Instant Fuel Economy</b> .....	137, 142
<b>Instrument Panel</b> .....	95
Brightness Control.....	214
<b>Interior Lights</b> .....	232
<b>Interior Rearview Mirror</b> .....	218
<b>IR Cut Glass</b> .....	558

## J

<b>Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)</b> .....	571
<b>Jump Starting</b> .....	589

## K

<b>Key Number Tag</b> .....	163
<b>Keyless Access System</b> .....	165
<b>Keyless Lockout Prevention</b> .....	173
<b>Keys</b> .....	161
Lockout Prevention.....	173
Number Tag .....	163
Rear Door Won't Open.....	177
Remote Transmitter .....	170
Types and Functions.....	161
Won't Turn .....	30
<b>Kickdown</b> (Continuously Variable Transmission) ...	444

## L

<b>Lane Departure Warning</b> .....	465
Button.....	466
Indicator.....	120
<b>Light Switches</b> .....	200
<b>Lights</b> .....	200, 526
Auto High-Beam Indicator .....	118
Automatic.....	201
Bulb Replacement .....	526
Daytime Running Lights.....	209
Fog Lights .....	204
High-Beam Indicator.....	111
Interior .....	232
Lights On Indicator .....	111
Turn Signals .....	199

Load Limit .....	427
Locking/Unlocking .....	161
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking .....	178
Childproof Door Locks .....	177
From Inside .....	174
From Outside .....	165
Keys .....	161
Using a Key .....	172
Lockout Prevention System .....	173
Low Battery Charge .....	595
Low Fuel Indicator .....	104
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength .....	164
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	98, 595
Lower Anchorages .....	78
Lubricant Specifications Chart .....	615, 618
Luggage (Load Limit) .....	427
Luggage Area	
Light Bulb .....	538

## M

Maintenance .....	503
Battery .....	549
Brake Fluid .....	524
Cleaning .....	557
Climate Control .....	555
Clutch Fluid .....	524
Coolant .....	519
Oil .....	516
Precautions .....	504
Radiator .....	522

Remote Transmitter .....	552
Replacing Light Bulbs .....	526
Safety .....	505
Transmission Fluid .....	523
Tyres .....	543
Under the Bonnet .....	511
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	101, 596
Manual Transmission .....	451
Map Lights .....	233
Maximum Loaded Vehicle	
Weight .....	427, 614, 617
Maximum Permissible	
Weight .....	427, 614, 617
Meters, Gauges .....	135
Mirrors .....	218
Adjusting .....	218
Door .....	219
Exterior .....	219
Interior Rearview .....	218
Prism Under Mirror .....	221
Modifications (and Accessories) .....	562
MP3 .....	273, 280, 296, 302, 318, 324
Multi-Information Display .....	139
Multi-View Rear Camera .....	497

## N

Numbers (Identification) .....	620
--------------------------------	-----

## O

Odometer .....	137, 141
Off-road Guidelines .....	433
Oil (Engine) .....	513
Adding .....	518
Checking .....	516
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	98, 595
Recommended Engine Oil .....	513
Viscosity .....	513
Opening/Closing	
Bonnet .....	512
Power Windows .....	188
Tailgate .....	183
Outside Temperature Display .....	138, 142
Overheating .....	593

## P

Paddle Shifters	
(7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) .....	449
Panoramic Roof .....	191
Parking Brake .....	477
Parking Sensor System .....	493
Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator .....	65
Passing Indicators .....	111, 200

<b>Petrol</b> .....	27, 499
Economy.....	501
Gauge .....	138, 142
Information.....	499
Instant Fuel Economy.....	137, 142
Low Fuel Indicator.....	104
Refueling .....	499
<b>Plasmacluster</b> .....	255
<b>Playing Bluetooth® Audio</b> .....	284, 305, 327
<b>Power Windows</b> .....	188
<b>Precautions While Driving</b> .....	442
Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle.....	442
Rain .....	442
<b>Pregnant Women</b> .....	51
<b>Puncture (Tyre)</b> .....	568

## R

<b>Radiator</b> .....	522
<b>Radio (AM/FM)</b> .....	270, 293, 316
<b>Radio (FM/AM)</b> .....	270, 293, 316
<b>Radio Data System (RDS)</b> .....	295
<b>Range</b> .....	137, 141
<b>RDS (Radio Data System)</b> .....	295
<b>REAL TIME AWD with Intelligent Control System</b> .....	476
<b>Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button</b> .....	216
<b>Rear Seats (Folding Down)</b> .....	229
<b>Rearview Mirror</b> .....	218

<b>Refueling</b> .....	499
Fuel Gauge.....	138, 142
Low Fuel Indicator .....	104
Petrol .....	499, 614, 617
<b>Regulations</b> .....	621
<b>Remote Transmitter</b> .....	170
<b>Replacement</b>	
Battery .....	552
Bulbs .....	526
Fuses .....	600
Tyres .....	545
Wiper Blade Rubber.....	539
<b>Resetting a Trip Meter</b> .....	137, 141
<b>Retractable keys</b> .....	162
<b>Reverse Tilt Door Mirror</b> .....	219

## S

<b>Safe Driving</b> .....	35
<b>Safety Check</b> .....	40
<b>Safety Labels</b> .....	93
<b>Safety Message</b> .....	0
<b>Seat Belts</b> .....	41
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor.....	49
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners.....	46
Checking.....	52
Fastening.....	47
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt .....	82
Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt.....	47
Pregnant Women .....	51

Reminder .....	44
Warning Indicator .....	44, 103
<b>Seat Heaters</b> .....	244
<b>Seats</b> .....	222
Adjusting .....	222
Front Seats.....	222
Rear Seats .....	228
<b>Security System</b> .....	186
Immobilizer System Indicator.....	112
Security System Alarm Indicator.....	113
<b>SEL/RESET Button</b> .....	140
<b>SEL/RESET Knob</b> .....	136
<b>Selecting a Child Restraint System</b> .....	74
<b>Selector Knob (Audio)</b> .....	268, 286
<b>Setting the Clock</b> .....	156
<b>Shift Lever</b> .....	26, 445, 447, 451
Operation.....	26, 446, 448, 451
Releasing.....	592
Won't Move.....	592
<b>Shift Lever Position Indicator</b> ..	101, 446, 448
<b>Shifting</b>	
Continuously Variable Transmission.....	445, 447
Manual Transmission.....	451
<b>Shoulder Anchor</b> .....	49
<b>Side Airbags</b> .....	61
<b>Side Curtain Airbags</b> .....	63
<b>Spare Tyre</b> .....	568, 616, 619
<b>Spark Plugs</b> .....	614, 617
<b>Specifications</b> .....	614
<b>Specified Fuel</b> .....	499, 614, 617

Speedometer.....	135
SRS Airbags (Airbags) .....	56
Start/Stop Button .....	195
Starting Assist Brake Function .....	456
Starting the Engine .....	435, 438
Does Not Start .....	586
Engine Switch Buzzer.....	194
Jump Starting .....	589
Steering Wheel	
Adjusting.....	217
Stopping.....	492
Sunshade.....	192
Super UV Cut Glass .....	558
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) .....	56
Switches (Around the Steering	
Wheel) .....	4, 5, 6, 194
System Message Indicator .....	108

## T

Tachometer.....	135
Tailgate .....	183
Temperature	
Outside Temperature Display .....	138, 142
Temperature Sensor .....	138, 142, 260
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) .....	575
Time (Setting) .....	156
Tonneau Cover.....	243
Tools .....	566

Towing a Trailer .....	428
Equipment and Accessories .....	430
Load Limits.....	428
Towing Your Vehicle	
Emergency .....	608
TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring	
System) .....	473
Transmission .....	445, 447, 451
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode.....	449
Continuously Variable .....	445, 447
Fluid.....	523
Manual .....	451
Shift Lever Position Indicator....	101, 446, 448
Trip Meter .....	137, 141
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) .....	575
Troubleshooting.....	565
Blown Fuse.....	600
Brake Pedal Vibrates.....	30
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door....	32, 33
Emergency Towing.....	608
Engine Won't Start.....	586
Noise When Braking.....	32
Overheating .....	593
Puncture/Flat Tyre.....	568
Rear Door Won't Open.....	31
Shift Lever Won't Move.....	592
Warning Indicators .....	96
Turn Signals .....	199
Indicators (Instrument Panel) .....	111

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

(TPMS).....	473
Indicator .....	110, 599
Tyres.....	543
Air Pressure.....	543, 616, 619
Checking and Maintaining .....	543
Inspection .....	543
Puncture (Flat Tyre) .....	568
Rotation.....	546
Spare Tyre.....	568, 616, 619
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) .....	575
Tyre Chains.....	547
Wear Indicators.....	544
Winter .....	547

## U

Unlocking the Doors from the Inside .....	174
Unlocking the Doors from the Outside ..	165
USB Flash Drives .....	339
USB Port.....	263
Using the Keyless Access System .....	165
Using the Panoramic Roof Switch.....	193

## V

Vanity Mirrors .....	9
Vehicle Identification Numbers .....	620
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) .....	468
Off Button .....	469
Off Indicator .....	106
System Indicator .....	106
Ventilation .....	245, 249, 252
Viscosity (Oil) .....	513, 615, 618
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) .....	468

## W

Warning and Information	
Messages .....	124, 125
Warning Indicator On/Blinking .....	595
Warning Labels .....	93
Water Repellent Glass .....	560
Watts .....	615, 618
Wear Indicators (Tyre) .....	544
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) .....	572
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate ....	611
Window Washers	
Adding/Refilling Fluid .....	525
Switch .....	210
Windows (Opening and Closing) .....	188

## Windscreen

Cleaning .....	558, 560
Defrosting/Defogging .....	248, 253
Washer Fluid .....	525
Wiper Blades .....	539
Wipers and Washers .....	210
Winter Tyres .....	547
Tyre Chains .....	547
Wipers and Washers .....	210
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades .....	539
WMA .....	273, 280, 296, 302, 318, 324
Worn Tyres .....	543







